

UNIVERSITY OF OKLAHOMA

GRADUATE COLLEGE

A PEDAGOGICAL GUIDE TO AND ANALYSIS OF SIXTY TROMBONE QUARTETS

A DOCUMENT

SUBMITTED TO THE GRADUATE FACULTY

in partial fulfillment of the requirements for the

Degree of

DOCTOR OF MUSICAL ARTS

By

CALVERT REED SWITZER

Norman, Oklahoma

2025

A PEDAGOGICAL GUIDE TO AND ANALYSIS OF SIXTY TROMBONE QUARTETS

A DOCUMENT APPROVED FOR THE
SCHOOL OF MUSIC

BY THE COMMITTEE CONSISTING OF

Dr. Christopher Baumgartner, Chair

Mr. Brian Dobbins

Dr. Nathan Dougherty

Dr. Vivian Luong

Dr. Allison Palmer

Acknowledgements

To my dad and mom, Jamie and Trina Switzer, for their unyielding support and encouragement over the past nine years. This document would not have been possible without both of you.

To my Lord and Savior, Jesus Christ, who in addition to saving me in 2020, has blessed me with innumerable opportunities, experiences, and gifts. Without Your grace, strength, and faithfulness, this document would not have been possible.

“Whatever you do, do you work heartily, as for the Lord rather than for men.” – Colossians 3:23

I would also like to thank my trombone professor, Mr. William Lang and my Chair, Dr. Christopher Baumgartner, for their help with this document.

Table of Contents

List of Tables	ix
List of Figures.....	x
Abstract.....	xi
Chapter 1: Introduction and Review of Literature.....	1
Background	1
<i>An Overview of Chamber Music</i>	<i>3</i>
<i>Brief History of the Trombone Quartet.....</i>	<i>3</i>
<i>Thoughts on the Trombone Quartet Repertoire</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>The Merit of Chamber Music, Specifically the Trombone Quartet.....</i>	<i>9</i>
<i>Review of Existing Trombone, Euphonium, and Tuba Solo Resources</i>	<i>11</i>
Need for the Study	13
Purpose	15
Limitations of the Study	17
<i>Composer Diversity and Representation</i>	<i>18</i>
Chapter 2: Methodology and Database Construction	20
Methodology	20
Selection Criteria	22
Database Construction	26
<i>Criteria Explanation/Description</i>	<i>26</i>
Database Template.....	36
Chapter 3: Level 1 Works.....	37
<i>Suite for Trombones – Carrol M. Butts.....</i>	<i>37</i>
<i>Rondo for Trombone Quartet – Joel Cohen.....</i>	<i>43</i>
<i>Now is the Month of Maying – Thomas Morley/arr. Richard Myers</i>	<i>47</i>
Chapter 4: Level 2 Works	52
<i>Valse de Concert – Vladislav Blazhevich/arr. Frank Cofield.....</i>	<i>52</i>
<i>Achieved is the Glorious Work – Franz Joseph Haydn/arr. Donald G. Miller.....</i>	<i>57</i>
<i>Equale No. 3 – Felix Mendelssohn/arr. Gustave Wittmann and Glenn Smith.....</i>	<i>62</i>

<i>Scarborough Fair</i> – Traditional/arr. Bill Reichenbach.....	68
<i>Adagio</i> from Symphony No. 3 – Camille Saint-Saëns/arr. Kenneth Murley.....	72
<i>Suite of Lieder for Four Trombones</i> – Franz Schubert/arr. Lewis Rowell	77
<i>A Kensington Portrait for Trombone Quartet</i> – Jared Spears.....	84
<i>Sonata à 4</i> – Daniel Speer/arr. Donald G. Miller.....	88
<i>A Study in Texture</i> – Paul Tanner.....	93

Chapter 4: Level 3 Works 98

<i>Choral pour 4 Trombones ou Violoncellos</i> - André Amellér	98
<i>Two Pieces for Trombone Quartet</i> - Alexander Arutunian.....	102
<i>Excerpts from “The Damnation of Faust”</i> – Hector Berlioz/arr. Allen Ostrander.....	107
<i>Two Madrigals for Trombone Quartet</i> – Gordon Jacob	115
<i>Suite for 4 Trombones</i> – James W. Langley	120
<i>In Memoriam for Trombone Quartet</i> – Raymond Premru.....	129
<i>Two Bagatelles for Four Trombones</i> – Alfred Reed.....	134
<i>Scherzo and Dirge for Four Trombones</i> – Robert L. Sanders	139
<i>Three Miniatures, Op. 29</i> – David Uber	143

Chapter 5: Level 4 Works 149

<i>Suite for Trombone Quartet</i> – Peter Atherton.....	149
<i>Quartet for Trombones</i> – Leslie Bassett	156
<i>Drei Equali für vier Posaunen, WoO 30</i> – Ludwig van Beethoven/arr. Keith Brown.....	162
<i>Adagio</i> from Symphony No. 7 – Anton Bruckner/arr. Jay K. Friedman	169
<i>Three Motets</i> – Anton Bruckner/arr. Ralph Sauer	175
<i>Suite of Three Cities for Four Trombones</i> – Roger Chapman	183
<i>Suite pour Quatour de Trombones</i> – Désiré Dondeyne.....	189
<i>Scherzo e Corale per Quattro Trombone</i> – Frigyes Hidas	194
<i>Suite for Four Trombones</i> – Gordon Jacob.....	198
<i>Recitative and Fugue for Trombone Quartet</i> – Patrick McCarty.....	204
<i>Suite voor vier bazuinen in ut</i> – Arthur Meulemans	210
<i>6 Pieces for 4 Trombones</i> – Vaclav Nelhybel.....	218
<i>Suite for Trombone Quartet, Op. 82</i> – Flor Peeters	225
<i>Chaconne and March for Trombone Quartet</i> – William Presser.....	230
<i>Burlesque for Trombone Quartet</i> – Alan Raph.....	236
<i>Concert Piece for Four Trombones</i> – Fisher Tull.....	240

Chapter 6: Level 5 Works 247

<i>Trombone Quartet, Op. 117 – Derek Bourgeois</i>	247
<i>Cinq Pièces a Quatre – Roger Boutry</i>	252
<i>Trois Pieces pour Quatuor de Trombones – Eugene Bozza</i>	260
<i>Quatuor de Forme Liturgique pour Quatre Trombones – Jacques Charpentier</i>	266
<i>Trois Chansons – Claude Debussy/arr. Michael Levin</i>	273
<i>Quatre Pieces pour Quatuor de Trombones – Jean-Michel Defaye</i>	279
<i>Quatuor pour Trombones – Pierre-Max Dubois</i>	285
<i>Myths and Legends – Eric Ewazen</i>	292
<i>Quartet '74 for Trombones – Malcolm Forsyth</i>	301
<i>Trombone Quartet – Arthur Frackenpohl</i>	310
<i>Suite for Four Trombones – David Gow</i>	317
<i>Suite für vier Posaunen – Alfred Hornoff</i>	324
<i>Suite for Four Trombones – George Hyde</i>	329
<i>Three Movements for Four Trombones – James Kazik</i>	338
<i>5 Impromptus for 4 Trombones – Jan Koetsier</i>	343
<i>'Round Midnight – Thelonious Monk/arr. Slide Hampton</i>	354
<i>Chorale et Variations pour 4 Trombones – Jean-Pierre Müller</i>	359
<i>5 Sketches for 4 Trombones – Buxton Orr</i>	367
<i>Trombone Quartet No. 1 “Densities” – Anthony Plog</i>	377
<i>Tissington Variations for Four Trombones – Raymond Premru</i>	388
<i>Bolos – Folke Rabe & Jan Bark</i>	393
<i>Trombone Quartet – Walter Ross</i>	402
<i>Suita na 4 Puzony – Kazimierz Serocki</i>	409

Chapter 7: Conclusion 420

Summary of Findings	420
<i>Difficulty Level</i>	420
<i>Instrumentation</i>	426
<i>Mutes and Extended Techniques</i>	430
Suggestions for Future Study	435
<i>New Works and Composer Diversity/Representation</i>	435
<i>Trombone Quartet with Rhythm Section</i>	436
<i>Search for High-Quality, Accessible Repertoire</i>	436

<i>Theoretical Analysis of the Sixty Trombone Quartets from this Study</i>	437
Bibliography	439
<i>Articles, Books, and Magazines</i>	439
<i>Dissertations</i>	440
<i>Musical Scores</i>	441
<i>Websites and Databases</i>	444
<i>Discography.....</i>	454
<i>Lectures, Liner Notes, and Videos</i>	457
Appendix A: Online Database	459

List of Tables

Table 1: Existing Trombone, Euphonium, and Tuba Solo Resources.....	12
Table 2: Pedagogical Sources and Dissertations in Publication Order	20
Table 3: Non-Pedagogical Text (or Dissertation) Corroborating Sources	21
Table 4: Trombone Quartets by Number and Location of Citations.....	23
Table 5: Content for Difficulty Levels Minus Rhythm and Texture	29
Table 6: Grade Four Trombone Quartets	421
Table 7: Grade 5 Trombone Quartets.....	422
Table 8: Works Requiring Bass Trombone	427
Table 9: Works with a “Straight” Tenor Trombone Recommendation	429
Table 10: Works with Mutes	431
Table 11: Works with Extended Techniques	434

List of Figures

Figure 1: “Scientific Pitch Notation” from <i>The Musician’s Guide to Music Theory and Analysis</i>	33
Figure 2: “Helmholtz Pitch Notation” from <i>The New Harvard Dictionary of Music</i>	33
Figure 3: “Other Symbols” from <i>Bolos</i> by Folke Rabe and Jan Bark	397

Abstract

The staple of trombone chamber music is the trombone quartet; some authors have even described it as *the* trombone ensemble. However, no resources are solely dedicated to the ensemble's repertoire, whether it be demographic information, piece descriptions, a standardized grading system, or a combination of these items. Many standard pedagogical texts merely list recommended quartets by title, composer, and publisher without providing any other details; authors also rarely assign a difficulty level to any of the works within their lists. Since instructors often claim the importance and value of chamber music, the works they select serve as both the textbook and curriculum in applied studio instruction. Given the limited information published on trombone quartet music, there remains a clear gap within low brass instructional resources available to teachers.

The purpose of this study was to analyze and assign a difficulty (grade) level to sixty trombone quartets selected from a variety of sources written by trombone pedagogues (Denis Wick, Edward Kleinhammer, Buddy Baker, Marta Jean Hofacre, and Robin Gregory, etc.) and compile them into an annotated database. Each entry consists of three parts: (1) the work's demographic information (composer, arranger, title, movements, duration, publisher, availability, range, clefs, mutes, etc.); (2) a piece description (i.e., a written commentary and analysis); and (3) an assigned difficulty level. As instructors continue looking for new repertoire, this pedagogical resource will assist instructors with making informed decisions, so that their selections can align with their curriculum and simultaneously challenge students while remaining accessible. The document also is accessible to students, so that they can be active in their own repertoire selection (via an online database).

Chapter 1: Introduction and Review of Literature

Background

In the final analysis, the trombone player should be a musician first and second a performer on their instrument.

– Edward Kleinhammer, *The Art of Trombone Playing*

As with horns, *the* trombone ensemble is the quartet...

– Mary Rasmussen, *A Teacher's Guide to the Literature of Brass Instruments*

My first genuine exposure to the trombone quartet occurred when I began work on my master's degree at the University of Kansas in 2020 amidst the Covid-19 pandemic. The quartet was comprised of myself (a new M.M. student), two new D.M.A candidates, and a fifth-year senior. My professor often referred to us as the "Grad-ish" quartet. During the Fall 2020 semester, our ensemble worked on pieces composed by Ludwig van Beethoven, Thelonious Monk, and Saskia Apon. Through the various challenges these pieces presented, we grew individually and as a group. The next semester (Spring 2021), the ensemble continued to rehearse. We successfully worked on Suite for Trombone Quartet, Op. 82 by Flor Peeters, among other pieces; however, our professor handed the ensemble Suite pour Quatour de Trombones by Désiré Dondeyne. This group rarely met outside our normal 8:00 a.m. Wednesday morning rehearsal time, but this piece was so challenging, we had to make an exception. Despite this extra work, the Dondeyne was much too difficult for the "Grad-ish" quartet because we had not played together long enough, and some members did not have the skill or motivation to learn the piece. Overall, it proved to be a frustrating experience for me as a musician.

The group remained intact for my second year, with a third, new D.M.A candidate replacing the fifth-year senior; the ensemble was finally a true graduate quartet. We experienced some growing pains typical of the beginning of a new school year; however, everything was different. The two returning members and I had now played together for a year, and the new member was fitting in nicely. We worked on pieces by Benedetto Marcello, Malcolm Forsyth, Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart, and Neal Hefti, among other composers; we also sight-read works by Leslie Bassett, Patrick McCarty, and Alfred Reed. Following the conclusion of our Fall 2021 performances, our professor handed out Suite pour Quatuor de Trombones by Désiré Dondeyne to the ensemble again. I specifically remember thinking “Here we go again” because the piece had gone so poorly the previous year. Regardless, we somewhat begrudgingly looked at the piece before the semester’s conclusion; however, something was different. The various movements began to sound like music, and we did not have to stop every couple of measures because someone got lost. This group went on to perform Dondeyne’s Suite multiple times, including on our bass trombonist’s D.M.A recital and a full recital consisting of the Dondeyne, Bozza, and Hornoff quartets. Thanks to this piece, I have numerous memories I still cherish about this group as it remains one of the best experiences of my music career.

The dichotomy of my experience with Dondeyne’s Suite during back-to-back academic years—ensemble members with different experience levels, varied time playing together—is quite fascinating to me because of the drastically different results. The first year, this repertoire selection almost derailed the quartet; yet it spurred the quartet onto greater successes the second year. This personal account is one example of why making informed decisions concerning repertoire (e.g., ability level, musical maturity, ensemble configuration) is so important and serves as the impetus behind this project.

An Overview of Chamber Music

Chamber music has long been an essential component of the instrumental repertoire, but the label has carried different connotations across periods of music history. In the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, “musica da camera” (chamber music) meant vocal or instrumental music primarily performed in private venues such as the home. In the eighteenth century, the genre flourished in the domestic sphere via salons; however, it was beginning to transition into a more instrumental genre (e.g., sonatas, trios, quartets).¹ While chamber music experienced a decline in prominence in the nineteenth century, it was still considered highly personal and intellectual.² Christina Bashford writes, “It was only towards the end of the 19th century that the term came predominantly to mean instrumental ensemble in small forces, performed in either a private or public context. By the early 20th century, the term had become specifically associated with the quartets, quintets, and piano trios of Haydn, Mozart, Beethoven, Schubert, and their successors.”³ In the established canon, beginning with the aforementioned composers and others, such as Mendelssohn, Schumann, and Brahms, the trombone is rarely included in chamber music settings.

Brief History of the Trombone Quartet

During the late Renaissance and early Baroque, the trombone was a primary instrument in chamber music, both sacred and secular. Wallace E. Tucker wrote an influential article, “The Trombone Quartet: Its Appearance and Development Throughout History,” for the 1979 ITA Journal detailing the trombone quartet’s history; all the information in this paragraph is from his

¹ Christina Bashford, “Chamber Music,” in *Grove Music Online* (Oxford University Press, 2001–), accessed May 27, 2024, <https://www-oxfordmusiconline-com.ezproxy.lib.ou.edu/grovemusic/display/10.1093/gmo/9781561592630.001.0001/omo-9781561592630-e-0000005379?rskey=HY3RNU&result=1#omo-9781561592630-e-0000005379-div1-0000005379.5>.

² Ibid.

³ Ibid.

article. The first appearances of four trombones in a group were often in supporting or accompaniment roles; according to Wallace, the first documented appearance of four trombones in a supporting role was in 1539 (in Venice for the wedding between Leonora of Toledo and Duke Cosimo I), and the second documented appearance was in 1565 (in Austria for the wedding between Prince Francesco and Giovanna, Queen of Austria).⁴ The next seminal moment occurred in 1597 when Giovanni Gabrieli composed *Sacrae Symphoniae*. Of the sixteen works it contains, four have specific instrument designations such as Canzona XVI, which combines four trombones with cornetto or violin. In 1607, Monteverdi included four trombones in his opera, *Orfeo*. Wallace writes, “To accompany the descent of Orfeo into the underworld, Monteverdi used the trombone for mood and special effect rather than support of vocal parts, drawing on the somber color and thick texture available from the trombones for musical association from afterdeath.”⁵ The first work that specifically called for trombone quartet, *Canzona*, was composed by Biagio Marini in 1626;⁶ it contains examples of both the vocal homophonic and polyphonic styles utilized by Monteverdi.⁷ Daniel Speer also composed a trombone quartet, during his time as Kantor in Goppingen (1675–1690). His *Sonata for Four Trombones* primarily contained diatonic lines utilizing stepwise motion, skips, and occasional leaps in a mixture of homophonic and polyphonic textures⁸ This piece in conjunction with his [Speer] writings on music, such as *Grund-richtiger Unterricht der musicalischen Kunst (Instruction in the Correct Fundamentals of Musical Art)*, influenced German Baroque trombone writing for over a

⁴ Wallace E. Tucker, “The Trombone Quartet: Its Appearance and Development Throughout History,” *ITA Journal* 7, no. 1 (January 1979): 2.

⁵ Ibid.

⁶ Ibid.

⁷ Ibid.

⁸ Ibid, 3.

century.⁹ Following these historic compositions in the seventeenth century, the instrument seemingly diminished in popularity for approximately 150 years.

The trombone experienced a renaissance and the quartet, specifically, underwent a revival in the late eighteenth and early nineteenth centuries. Robert Parker writes:

The trombone quartet genre experienced a second growth in popularity in the nineteenth century, nearly a century and a half after the first trombone quartets were composed. This renewed growth stemmed from the general increase in the trombone's inclusion in the symphony orchestra.¹⁰

Beethoven wrote his *Drei Equali* in 1812, which was performed at his funeral; it remains a standard of the repertoire. Unfortunately, after Beethoven, the trombone quartet primarily appeared in the orchestra via music composed by Richard Wagner, Giuseppe Verdi, and Richard Strauss;¹¹ few significant works were written for the trombone quartet as a chamber ensemble for the remainder of the nineteenth century. The public perception—which appeared to view the trombone quartet as a casual or secondary ensemble—continued to persist well into the 1950s.¹² Parker writes, “Despite prominent use of groups of trombones within the orchestra, the trombone quartet as a chamber ensemble was seldom heard and received no significant repertoire from composers.”¹³ While these generalized statements provide some context for the trombone quartet's history, less prominent works often receive minimal attention from scholars. An often-forgotten landmark composition is *Suite voor vier bazuinen in ut* (*Suite for Four Trombones in C*) written by Arthur Meulemans in 1942. According to Jan Dewilde, the reason for this could be that “... it is unclear whether he [Meulemans] had a specific ensemble in mind while composing.

⁹ “Georg Daniel Speer,” Authors, Sofiaphilharmonic.com, accessed March 29, 2025, <https://sofiaphilharmonic.com/en/authors/georg-daniel-speer-en/>.

¹⁰ Robert Carlisle Parker, “A Performance Guide for Trombone Quartet: An Application of Pedagogical Concepts and Techniques for Developing Ensembles” (DMA Essay, University of Iowa, 2018), 8.

¹¹ Tucker, 5-6.

¹² Parker, 11.

¹³ Parker, 10.

To increase the chances of performance of his suite, he also provided the option to execute the piece with four cellos.”¹⁴ However, it is one of the few works for trombone quartet composed in the 1940s, alongside *Scherzo and Dirge* by Robert L. Sanders (1948) and *Suite pour Quatour de Trombones* by Désiré Dondeyne (1949).

Following World War II, compositions for trombone—specifically quartets—increased significantly for two reasons. The first reason was due to public school growth and the need for low brass ensembles that facilitated one-per-part playing.¹⁵ This growth in compositional output for trombone ensemble and, more broadly, low-brass ensembles mirrored that of works for the wind band, which increased significantly in America during the mid-twentieth century. The quality of literature for wind band at the public school and collegiate level became an ever-growing concern for band directors across the country.¹⁶ Directors such as William D. Revelli and Bernard Fitzgerald both advocated in the late 1940s for more prominent composers to compose for wind band and for the universities to be accountable for the development of the genre.¹⁷ In his book, *The New Winds of Change: The Evolution of the Contemporary American Wind Band/Ensemble and Its Music*, Battisti lists eighteen compositions written between 1949 and 1957 that were pivotal works in this development; some works found on his list are *Ballad for Band* (Morton Gould), *Suite of Old American Dances* (Robert Russell Bennett), *Symphony in*

¹⁴ Arthur Meulemans, *Suite voor vier bazuinen in ut*, ed. Jan Dewilde (Musikproduktion Höflich, 2020).

¹⁵ Bruce Nathan Keeling, “The Trombone Quartet: A Brief Historical Overview and a Discussion of Selected, Original Published Twentieth Century Quartets,” (DMA Document, University of Oklahoma, 1991), 24.

¹⁶ Frank L. Battisti, *The New Winds of Change: The Evolution of the Contemporary American Wind Band/Ensemble and Its Music* (Meredith Music Publications, 2018), 60.

¹⁷ Battisti, 60-61. Other works included in this list are: *La Fiesta Mexicana* (H. Owen Reed), *A Solemn Music* (Virgil Thompson), *Symphonic Songs* (Robert Russell Bennett), *Tunbridge Fair* (Walter Piston), *Psalm for Band* (Vincent Persichetti), *Pageant* (Vincent Persichetti), *Music for a Festival* (Gordon Jacob), *George Washington Bridge* (William Schumann), *West Point Suite* (Darius Milhaud), *Fanfare and Allegro* (Clifton Williams), and *Symphonic Suite* (Clifton Williams).

B-flat (Paul Hindemith), *Canzona* (Peter Mennin), *Divertimento for Band* (Vincent Persichetti), *Symphony No. 6 for Band, Op. 69* (Vincent Persichetti).¹⁸

The second reason for the expansion of works for trombone quartet was an overall increase in compositions by influential twentieth-century composers.¹⁹ While the Paris Conservatory is often recognized for its influence on the production of trombone solo repertoire,²⁰ it also greatly contributed to the expansion of trombone quartet repertoire in the 1950s and 1960s.²¹ For example, *Quatre Pieces pour Quatuor de Trombones* by Jean-Michel Defaye (1954), *Quatuor pour trombones* by Pierre Max Dubois (1962), and *Trois Pieces pour Quatuor de Trombones* by Eugene Bozza (1964) were all products of the Paris Conservatory model. Parallel to the French output, composers such as Alfred Hornoff (1953), Kazimierz Serocki (1953), Leslie Bassett (1954), Flor Peeters (1959), Patrick McCarty (1960), Raymond Premru (1961, 1972), Vaclav Nelhybel (1966), David Gow (1967), Gordon Jacob (1968), and Arthur Frackenpohl (1968) also began writing music for the chamber ensemble in the 1950s and 1960s. Many of these works are now generally considered staples of the repertoire, with some rivalling the prominence associated with the previously mentioned French compositions.

As the genre and ensemble continued their development and started to gain national and international prominence in the late twentieth century and the early twenty-first century, more prominent composers began writing music for it. One of the most significant figures is Jan Koetsier, who “can rightly be considered one of the founders of brass chamber music;”²² he

¹⁸ Battisti, 60.

¹⁹ Keeling, 24.

²⁰ J. Mark Thompson and Jeffrey Jon Lemke, *French Music for Low Brass Instruments* (Indiana University Press, 1994). For an informative list of works used as a Paris Conservatory contest piece, refer to Chapter 3 (14–54) and Chapter 5 (77–132). In this pedagogical text, the authors clearly state if a piece was a conservatory contest piece and which year(s) it was utilized.

²¹ Parker, 12.

²² “Jan Koetsier (1991–2006),” ITEA Lifetime Achievement Recipients, ITEA Historian, Research, Drobnakbrass.com, accessed April 14, 2025, <https://redevelop.drobnakbrass.com/conc8/index.php/features/ITEA-Historian/itea-lifetime-achievement-recipients/jan-koetsier>.

wrote his *5 Impromptus for 4 Trombones* in 1970. Other more contemporary composers include Walter Ross (1977), Fisher Tull (1968/1996), Derek Bourgeois (1993), Eric Ewazen (2001), James Kazik (2001), and Anthony Plog (1998/2002). With the increased output of available quality literature, discourse increased proportionally, and pedagogues began providing their analyses, commendations, and critiques on both the ensemble and its repertoire.

Thoughts on the Trombone Quartet Repertoire

Regarding the trombone quartet repertoire, pedagogues have shared conflicting thoughts and arrived at different conclusions about its legitimacy and complexity (or lack thereof) since the 1960s. For example, Mary Rasmussen primarily criticizes it in her 1964 book *Teacher's Guide to the Literature of Brass Instruments*. She states, “As with horns, *the* [italics in original] trombone ensemble is the quartet, although most of the repertoire is very difficult and better suited to college ensembles than to high school or junior high ones.”²³ While this statement has some merit (because a large portion of the repertoire can be viewed as exceptionally difficult), it appears overly simplistic and presents a superficial dichotomy; I would argue more nuance is necessary concerning difficulty, because many challenging works contain approachable movements by more intermediate players. One example is the second movement of Désiré Dondeyne's *Suite pour Quatour de Trombones* (1949), entitled “Andantino.” Also, the repertoire significantly expanded with compositions and arrangements produced between 1964 and 2025. Contrastingly, Robin Gregory (an oboist), in his book published in 1973, provides more praise and generous commentary toward the ensemble and its music. He states: “... there is a considerable body of music, old and new, original and transcribed, for trombone ensembles. Of these, the four-part group [quartet] has the most extensive repertoire, and rightly, for there is no

²³ Mary Rasmussen, *A Teacher's Guide to the Literature of Brass Instruments* (Brass Quarterly, 1964), 22.

more glorious sound than that of a trombone quartet.”²⁴ Either way, both commentaries have merit and provide stimulus for further consideration and necessitate critical evaluation concerning the repertoire.

The Merit of Chamber Music, Specifically the Trombone Quartet

Chamber music at the university level (and K–12 public schools) provides the student trombonist with opportunities for musical, intellectual, and social growth within an organized setting. Musically, learning and performing chamber music can teach numerous skills that may get overlooked in a large ensemble. In the article, “Chamber Music in Secondary Schools,” Sol Schoenbach explains that chamber music addresses, at minimum, intonation, alertness, and awareness.²⁵ For intonation, students “are made sensitive to basic faults, not only in their own playing and instruments but also in their colleagues’ playing. They readily make adjustments.”²⁶ Essentially, their listening skills improve. Concerning alertness, “rhythm and meter comes from within the player and is not superimposed by the stick;”²⁷ their sense of time improves. Finally, awareness propagates the “full musical picture and how a few notes given to each player in turn form a complete design or pattern;”²⁸ their ability to balance and blend improves. Felicity Ann Coltman echoes Schoenbach’s statements in her article, “Enhancing the Music Experience Through Chamber Music.” Coltman states, “After playing together for a while they become aware of one another and of what each one is playing. They are able to feel together and adjust to one another. They start listening to the inner voices and become conscious of where the melody lies. The feeling of phrase and line becomes natural.”²⁹ She also adds that there was “a noticeable

²⁴ Robin Gregory, *The Trombone: The Instrument and its Music* (Praeger Publishers, 1973), 152.

²⁵ Sol Schoenbach, “Chamber Music in Secondary Schools,” *Music Educators Journal* 49, no. 4 (February-March 1963): 73-74.

²⁶ *Ibid.*, 73.

²⁷ *Ibid.*, 74.

²⁸ *Ibid.*, 74.

²⁹ Felicity Ann Coltman, “Enhancing the Music Experience Through Chamber Music,” *American Music Teacher* 33, no. 3 (January 1984): 11.

improvement in sightreading and in the ability to continue if a mistake has been made in the group, or to jump ahead or back to compensate for such an error.”³⁰ These findings highlight the potential impact on musical growth from chamber music study.

From a social standpoint, engaging in chamber music can provide avenues for music making in life following high school or college. Timothy J. McGee writes, “The present-day music teacher has an obligation to his students to educate them for their adult leisure time.”³¹ Colman corroborates this sentiment as well, stating, “Playing in small ensembles is something that is more easily carried into adult life than either large group or solo playing. In fact, it may be the only means for many people, and certainly it is the most pleasurable.”³² Additionally, students can make meaningful relationships with other members of these small ensembles in school and experience a sense of community and belonging.

Often, for trombones, chamber ensembles can be organized heterogeneously (brass trio, quartet, or quintet comprising various instrumentation) or homogeneously (trombone trio, quartet, or quintet). Regardless, trombone pedagogues have shared thoughts similar to those of music educators on the benefits of chamber ensembles as a part of the curriculum in applied study. Denis Wick states (concerning the brass quintet) that “Small ensembles like the brass quintet do offer opportunities of musical expression that bigger groups often deny.”³³ Donald Knaub writes, “Ensemble playing gives the beginning trombonist a new experience in listening to other players and developing a sense of independence and responsibility for an individual part.”³⁴ Finally, in *The Buddy Baker Tenor Trombone Handbook*, Buddy Baker provides a list of opportunities afforded to the trombone student through trombone ensemble performance. Some

³⁰ Ibid, 11.

³¹ Timothy J. McGee, “Emphasis on Chamber Music in the High School,” *Music Educators Journal* 53, no. 3 (November 1966): 16.

³² Colman, 12.

³³ Denis Wick, *Trombone Technique*, rev. ed (Oxford University Press, 1973), 102.

³⁴ Donald Knaub, *Trombone Teaching Technique*, rev. ed. (Accura Music, 1998), 23.

of the most pertinent opportunities afforded by the trombone quartet are that members become acquainted with the literature, learn effective rehearsal techniques, receive opportunities to demonstrate numerous skills (mature sounds, correct fundamental approaches, and leadership skills), produce high-quality music, and share valuable performances and experiences with the audience.³⁵ Ultimately, all three pedagogues provide compelling evidence that chamber music—specifically a homogeneous trombone ensemble, such as the trombone quartet—can be an impactful medium where the student trombonist can develop into a more proficient musician.

While the words written by these scholars and pedagogues appear accurate (in my estimation), and many instructors likely feel similarly, we as educators seem to rarely act on these convictions. Most times, chamber music (in actuality) manifests as an instructor's last priority due to balancing time, other curricular/repertoire choices, and extra-musical responsibilities of teaching. Why does chamber music get simultaneously cast aside and promoted? Why is there no basic curriculum or at least the expectation of one? Is it because there are very few resources that expose available repertoire? Is there a different barrier? Regardless, it is our responsibility as educators to ponder and reflect upon these difficult questions so that we can serve students more effectively and expose them to chamber ensembles, such as the trombone quartet.

Review of Existing Trombone, Euphonium, and Tuba Solo Resources

Even with the increased prominence of the trombone quartet and its repertoire, limited resources remain because the current state of literature concerning low brass instrumental music places heavy emphasis on solo works (both accompanied and unaccompanied). Some resources

³⁵ Buddy Baker, *The Buddy Baker Tenor Trombone Handbook*, ed. Kevin Carroll (International Trombone Association Manuscript Press, 2001), 122.

focus on demographic information such as title, composer, publisher, copyright date, and similar details, while others prioritize descriptive annotations and the inclusion of publisher overviews.

Table 1 highlights some pedagogical books and dissertations but is not an exhaustive list.

Table 1: Existing Trombone, Euphonium, and Tuba Solo Resources

<i>Title</i>	<i>Author/Editor</i>	<i>Year of Publication</i>	<i>Type of Source</i>
<i>Annotated Guide to Bass Trombone Literature</i> ³⁶	Thomas G. Everett	1985	Book
<i>French Music for Low Brass Instruments</i> ³⁷	J. Mark Thompson and Jeffrey Jon Lemke	1994	Book
<i>Solos for the Student Trombonist: An Annotated Bibliography</i> ³⁸	J. Mark Thompson	2004	Book
“Alto Trombone Solo Literature: An Annotated Bibliography” ³⁹	Wilford Kimball	2001	Dissertation
“An Annotated Database of 102 Selected Published Works for Trombone Requiring Multiphonics” ⁴⁰	Michael M. Davidson	2005	Dissertation
<i>Guide to the Tuba Repertoire: The New Tuba Source Book</i> ⁴¹	R. Winston Morris and Daniel Perantoni	2006	Book
<i>Euphonium Music Guide</i> ⁴²	David Werden	2006	Book
<i>Guide to the Euphonium Repertoire: The Euphonium Source Book</i> ⁴³	Lloyd E. Bone Jr. and Eric Paull	2007	Book

³⁶ Thomas Everett, *Annotated Guide to Bass Trombone Literature*, 3rd ed. (The Brass Press, 1985).

³⁷ Thompson and Lemke, *French Music for Low Brass Instruments*.

³⁸ Wilford Kimball, “Alto Trombone Solo Literature: An Annotated Bibliography” (DMA Document, Arizona State University, 2001).

³⁹ J. Mark Thompson, ed., *Solos for the Student Trombonist: An Annotated Bibliography*, 2nd ed. (The Brass Press, 2004).

⁴⁰ Michael McKenney Davidson, “An Annotated Database of 102 Selected Works for Trombone Requiring Multiphonics” (DMA Document, University of Cincinnati, 2005).

⁴¹ R. Winston Morris and Daniel Perantoni, *Guide to the Tuba Repertoire: The New Tuba Source Book* (Indiana University Press, 2006).

⁴² David Werden, *Euphonium Music Guide* (Cimarron Music Press, 2006).

⁴³ Lloyd E. Bone Jr. and Eric Paull, *Guide to Euphonium Repertoire: The Euphonium Source Book* (Indiana University Press, 2007).

The trombone resources—specifically, *Annotated Guide to Bass Trombone Literature* by Thomas Everett and *French Music for Low Brass Instruments* by J. Mark Thompson and Jeffrey Jon Lemke—provide traditional demographic information such as composer, title, publisher, copyright date, and similar details; they also include a three-to-four sentence annotation. In contrast, *Solos for the Student Trombonist: An Annotated Bibliography* edited by J. Mark Thompson emphasizes thorough descriptions and annotations for each work. The three texts for euphonium and tuba all provide information similar to Everett’s book but also include entries on tuba-euphonium quartet music. For quartets, the authors provide the same demographic information as with solo works in addition to a short description of the work. The absence of any databases or annotated bibliographies dedicated to trombone chamber music reveals a deficiency in the instrument’s pedagogy that requires addressing.

Need for the Study

In the standard trombone pedagogical textbooks and bibliographic databases written by individuals such as Denis Wick (*Trombone Technique*), Edward Kleinhammer (*The Art of Trombone Playing*),⁴⁴ Robin Gregory (*The Trombone: The Instrument & Its Music*), Donald Knaub (*Trombone Teaching Techniques*), Buddy Baker (*The Buddy Baker Tenor Trombone Handbook*), Marta Jean Hofacre (*Teaching Collegiate Trombone Or, What I Did Anyway...*),⁴⁵ and Mary Rasmussen (*A Teacher’s Guide to the Literature of Brass Instruments*), trombone-quartet information is limited to the composer and publisher. Marta Jean Hofacre is the only author who provides annotations alongside her entries and does so for twenty-seven trombone quartets in her “Trombone Choir” section of the text. These annotations are relatively informal

⁴⁴ Edward Kleinhammer, *The Art of Trombone Playing* (Summy-Birchard, 1963).

⁴⁵ Marta Jean Hofacre, *Teaching Collegiate Trombone Or, What I Did Anyway* (pub. by author, 2002).

and reflect her subjective experience using these quartets in her trombone choir rather than a more objective analysis. Additionally, this study only includes fourteen works discussed in Hofacre's text. Other standard texts, such as *The Modern Trombone: A Definition of Idioms*⁴⁶ by Stuart Dempster and *The Trombonist's Handbook: A Complete Guide to Playing and Teaching the Trombone*⁴⁷ by Reginald H. Fink, do not mention the trombone quartet or any of its repertoire.

The lack of published, detailed, and analytical information makes selection of any quartet from existing texts complicated for performers and pedagogues. Recordings and publisher-provided score samples can be helpful when selecting repertoire, but these elements are not always readily available to private instructors, K–12 educators, or college/university professors through their libraries and other resources. The inability to accurately attain necessary background information on literature when selecting works for student study can pose a significant challenge for the instructor. Consequently, assigning students music that is too complex can lead to frustration and stifle the learning process; conversely, simplicity can also impede the learning process. Some authors covered specific bodies of the trombone quartet repertoire in their works, such as “An Annotated Bibliography of Original Trombone Quartets Published Between 1992 and 2002”⁴⁸ by Stephen Lee Wilson and “The Trombone Quartet: A Brief Historical Overview and a Discussion of Selected, Original Published Twentieth Century Quartets,” by Bruce Nathan Keeling. Other scholars provided demographic information (composer, title, publisher, copyright date, range, and number of citations via a survey) via piece entries in an annotated bibliography, such as Danny James Hutson's “The Trombone Choir in

⁴⁶ Stuart Dempster, *The Modern Trombone: A Definition of Its Idioms* (University of California Press, 1979).

⁴⁷ Reginald Fink, *The Trombonist's Handbook: A Complete Guide to Playing and Teaching the Trombone* (Accura Music, 1977).

⁴⁸ Stephen Lee Wilson, “An Annotated Bibliography of Original Trombone Quartets Published Between 1992 and 2022” (Dissertation, University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign, 2004).

Colleges and Universities in the United States: Its Organization, Current Practice, and Repertoire.”⁴⁹ While Parker examined trombone quartet pedagogy in his document entitled “A Performance Guide for Trombone Quartet: An Application of Pedagogical Concepts and Techniques for Developing Ensembles,” no resource specifically includes the genre’s repertoire from a *pedagogical* perspective, or as a central component of trombone studio instruction. Stephen Wilson writes in his dissertation, “The lack of resources for trombone quartet becomes evident when examining programs of recitals and recordings of trombone quartets.”⁵⁰ Parker corroborates this gap in scholarship, stating “a comprehensive graded list of the trombone quartet repertoire does not exist”⁵¹ and he suggests such a resource as an avenue for future study. The current study seems necessary to address this deficiency in the trombone pedagogical literature by creating a database that includes both standards and lesser-known works of the repertoire, alongside pedagogical and analytical information, so instructors can more effectively choose appropriate works for student study in the chamber music setting.

Purpose

As a low brass instructor in higher education, selecting repertoire for an instrument and its chamber ensembles is a complex undertaking. The music chosen for study must accurately reflect students’ achievement level while simultaneously challenging them. This concept aligns with Lev Vygotsky’s Zone of Proximal Development. In *Mind in Society*, Vygotsky states that the Zone of Proximal Development is “the distance between the actual developmental level as determined by independent problem solving and the level of potential development through

⁴⁹ Danny James Hutson, “The Trombone Choir in Colleges and Universities in the United States: Its Organization, Current Practice, and Repertoire” (DMA Dissertation, University of Oklahoma, 1992).

⁵⁰ Wilson, 1.

⁵¹ Parker, 104.

problem-solving under adult guidance or in collaboration with more capable peers.”⁵² He also states, that it “permits us to delineate the [student’s] immediate future and his dynamic developmental state, allowing not only for what already has been achieved developmentally but also for what is in the course of maturing.”⁵³ In a *Simply Psychology* article, Sam McLeod simplifies it as “the difference between what a learner can do without help and what he or she can do with guidance and encouragement from a skilled partner.”⁵⁴

As established in the “Review of Existing Trombone, Euphonium, and Tuba Solo Resources” section, there is an extensive array of resources detailing solo works available to assist instructors with selecting appropriate repertoire for instruction and within the zone of proximal development; however, similar resources to assist instructors are not available for like-instrument chamber ensemble repertoire, specifically for trombone trios and quartets. Given that Mary Rasmussen states, “... *the* trombone ensemble is the quartet,”⁵⁵ and recognizing the gap in current scholarship on quartet literature, the purpose of this study is to compile an analytical and pedagogical database of sixty works written, arranged, or transcribed for the trombone quartet. The resource includes information on the composer, arranger (if applicable), publisher, copyright date, copy quality, availability, and work (title, movement(s), instrumentation, difficulty, range, clef(s), mute(s), dedication, technical considerations, and piece description). Recognizing that there exists a large body of possible literature for inclusion, this project constitutes a preliminary effort in cataloging and analyzing this under-researched body of music.

⁵² Lev Vygotsky, *Mind in Society: The Development of Higher Psychological Processes* (Harvard University Press, 1978), 86.

⁵³ Ibid, 87.

⁵⁴ Sam McLeod, “Vygotsky’s Zone of Proximal Development,” *Child Psychology, Simply Psychology*, last modified August 9, 2024, <https://www.simplypsychology.org/zone-of-proximal-development.html>.

⁵⁵ Rasmussen, 22.

Limitations of the Study

In this study, I provide instructors with information for sixty trombone quartets from the repertoire. Each work is classified into one of five author-defined difficulty categories: beginner, intermediate, early-advanced, advanced, and virtuosic. Difficulty categories include corresponding grade levels (see Database Construction in Methodology). Several limitations exist due to the repertoire's vastness and my overall purpose of this project—establishing a preliminary foundation. The first limitation is the number of works included. Hundreds of composers have written works or arranged material for the trombone quartet; therefore, the selections chosen for this resource will not be exhaustive as the focus is on in-depth study rather than broad coverage. Since most pedagogical sources I consulted were written in the late 1960s and early 1970s, there are few works included composed after the year 2000. The second limitation is the absence of trombone quartet and rhythm section compositions. While such works represent a growing part of the repertoire in the early twenty-first century—courtesy of composers such as Michael Davis—these works present unique challenges to trombone students and instructors such as improvisation, additional instrumentation, and scheduling. Of these three variables, additional instrumentation (the rhythm section) was the primary reason these works are not included in this database. The third limitation is the exclusion of quartets featuring a soloist with three or four accompaniment parts, as a delimitation strategy. Works such as *Aria and Dance* by Thom Ritter George, *Être ou ne pas être* by Henri Tomasi, and similar compositions are not included. The only exception is *'Round Midnight* by Thelonius Monk and arranged by Slide Hampton, which contains a short bass trombone feature in its middle section. The fourth limitation is that none of the selected compositions receive an in-depth harmonic analysis common to other published critical analyses, such as those in the *Teaching Music*

Through Performance series.⁵⁶ Form and structure via a Roman-numeral analysis are omitted because the focus of this research is technical/pedagogical rather than theoretical. However, musical elements (e.g., cadences, melodies, sequences, form, and texture) are addressed when they directly impact a piece's playability, describe its musical content, or occur in its significant moments.

Composer Diversity and Representation

In 2025, the topic of composer diversity and representation is accorded significant emphasis in the selection of literature for both instruction and performance. Most of the works included in this database were written by white male composers due to my research method and selection criteria, as outlined in the "Selection Criteria" section of the Methodology. These results stem from most pedagogical sources being written prior to 1975 and the lack of emphasis this topic received at their time of publication; it does not necessarily mean such authors chose to exclude these composers and their compositions with deliberate bias. These findings also do not mean that there have not been or are not notable works written by female composers, composers of color, or LGBTQ+ composers, but that these diverse contributions to the repertoire have occurred primarily after 1970. Some works by such composers include:

- *Dioscouri* by Saskia Apon (2002)*
- *Eerste Trombone Kwartet (First Trombone Quartet)* by Saskia Apon (2002)*
- *Oh, Boys* by Saskia Apon (2002)*
- *Spectrum* by Quincy Hilliard (2021)^
- *Diversions for Trombone Quartet* by Elizabeth Raum (2000)*

⁵⁶ Larry Blocher, Eugene Migliaro Corporon, Ray Cramer, Tim Lautzenheiser, Edward S. Lisk, and Richard Miles, *Teaching Music through Performance in Band*, 2nd ed., ed. Richard Miles, vol. 1 (GIA Publications, 2009).

- *Processional Fanfare for Trombone Quartet* by Elizabeth Raum (2017/2020)*
- *Nocturne* by Barbara York (2019)*
- *Elysian Fields* by David Wilborn (2021)^

The asterisk (*) indicates a female composer, and the caret (^) indicates a composer of color.

With the prominence of works by minority composers increasing, this topic is well-suited for further research.

Chapter 2: Methodology and Database Construction

Methodology

When selecting quartets to be included in this study, the frequency of a work's listing across multiple sources was essential for delimiting to a manageable number. The resources I consulted were selected because many were written by recognized authorities in the trombone field and others dealt with particular subsets of trombone quartet repertoire. Table 2 lists the pedagogical textbooks and dissertations I explored.

Table 2: Pedagogical Sources and Dissertations in Publication Order

<i>Title</i>	<i>Author</i>	<i>Publication Year</i>	<i>Source Type</i>
<i>The Art of Trombone Playing</i>	Edward Kleinhamer	1963	Book
<i>A Teacher's Guide to Brass Music</i>	Mary Rasmussen	1964	Book
<i>Trombone Technique</i>	Denis Wick	1973	Book
<i>The Trombone: The Instrument and Its Music</i>	Robin Gregory	1973	Book
"The Trombone Quartet: A Brief Historical Overview and a Discussion of Selected, Original Published Twentieth Century Quartets"	Bruce Nathan Keeling	1991	Dissertation
"The Trombone Choir in Colleges and Universities in the United States: Its Origin, Current Practice, and Repertoire"	Danny James Hutson	1992	Dissertation
<i>The Buddy Baker Tenor Trombone Handbook</i>	Buddy Baker	2001	Book
<i>Teaching Collegiate Trombone Or, What I Did Anyway</i>	Marta Jean Hofacre	2002	Book
"An Annotated Bibliography of Original Trombone Quartets Published Between 1992 and 2002"	Stephen Lee Wilson	2004	Dissertation
"A Performance Guide for Trombone Quartet: An Application of Pedagogical Concepts and Techniques for Developing Ensembles"	Robert Carlisle Parker	2018	Dissertation

The information in *The Buddy Baker Tenor Trombone Handbook* is a survey from an appendix of Bruce Keeling’s dissertation referenced in Table 2. I decided to attribute it solely to Buddy Baker’s book, as it was my initial source, and Baker only includes Keeling’s name and the survey’s date, omitting its location and the dissertation’s title.

In addition to published writings, I used outside sources to corroborate the lists found in the various pedagogical sources. Table 3 shows these other sources.

Table 3: Non-Pedagogical Text (or Dissertation) Corroborating Sources

<i>Source Title</i>	<i>Author</i>
New York State School Music Association (NYSSMA) Solo and Ensemble Catalog (2022–2026) ⁵⁷	N/A
University Scholastic League (UIL) Prescribed List for Texas (2024–2025) ⁵⁸	N/A
Top 40 Trombone Quartets ⁵⁹	Wilford Kimball
Trombonechat.org ⁶⁰	Various

I selected the two state prescribed music lists (PML) because they are both publicly accessible, offer substantial variety, and are used by numerous educational entities across the US. Robert Carlisle Parker recommended Wilford Kimball’s webpage in his dissertation; given Parker’s respected position in the trombone community, this was deemed a reliable source for corroboration. Finally, I included trombonechat.org to gain the perspective of trombonists from all backgrounds in a non-academic forum. I avoided professional trombone competition literature

⁵⁷ “NYSSMA Solo & Ensemble Catalog,” Contests Catalog, Hickeys.com, last modified July 2022, <https://www.hickeys.com/music/contests/NYSSMA/>.

⁵⁸ “345 Trombone Quartet,” 2023-2024 Prescribed Music List, University Interscholastic League, last modified September 1, 2023, <https://www.uil-texas.org/pml/>.

⁵⁹ Wilford Kimball, “Top 40 Trombone Quartets,” Entertainment, HubPages.com, last modified January 4, 2019, <https://discover.hubpages.com/entertainment/Top-30-Trombone-Quartets>.

⁶⁰ “10 Best Trombone Quartets,” Forums, Trombonechat.org, last modified October 26, 2021, <https://trombonechat.com/viewtopic.php?t=22232>.

lists because the repertoire changes annually, ensembles are often allowed to select a work, and past repertoire listings are not publicly available.

Selection Criteria

To determine the quartets selected for inclusion in this study, each work needed either three or more citations or, if it had only two citations, to meet one of two specifications. Scores with at least three citations across any medium (e.g., pedagogical texts, dissertations, PML) were automatically included for consideration. This total included forty-five works. Given this approach to delimitation, a number of works for quartet remained that are widely recognized as part of the standard repertoire among trombonists. I continued my selection process by including works with only *two* citations that also met one of the following specifications:

1. Receive two citations from two pedagogical texts or state lists (or a combination).
2. Be a composition or transcript composed after 1970 and receive two citations.

The first specification yielded eleven works, and the second yielded four works. I established the first requirement to include diverse works from multiple sources and acknowledge the scholarly contributions of each professional and academic source. I included the second requirement because many of the pedagogical sources were written before or in the early 1970s, resulting in the omission of many recent compositions and transcriptions. Table 4 shows each work along with the composer, arranger, year, and number of citations across the selected resources from most to least cited.

Table 4: Trombone Quartets by Number and Location of Citations

<i>Title</i>	<i>Composer</i>	<i>Arranger</i>	<i>Year</i>	<i>Ped. Sources</i>	<i>Lists & Forums</i>	<i>State Lists</i>	<i>Total</i>
<i>Drei Equale for Four Trombones</i>	Ludwig Van Beethoven	Keith Brown	1812/2000	9	2	2	13
<i>Suite for Four Trombones, Op. 82</i>	Flor Peeters	NA	1959	9	1	1	11
<i>Quatre Pieces</i>	Jean-Michel Defaye	NA	1954	8	1	1	10
<i>Quartet for Trombones</i>	Leslie Bassett	NA	1954	7	1	1	9
<i>Quatour pour Trombones</i>	Pierre Max Dubois	NA	1962	6	1	2	9
<i>Suite for Four Trombones</i>	Gordon Jacob	NA	1968	7	1	1	9
<i>In Memoriam</i>	Raymond Premru	NA	1961	6	2	1	9
<i>Suite for Four Trombones</i>	Kazimierz Serocki	NA	1954	8	1	0	9
<i>Trois Pieces pour Quatour de Trombones</i>	Eugene Bozza	NA	1964	6	1	1	8
<i>Achieved is the Glorious Work</i>	Franz Joseph Haydn	Donald G. Miller	1798/1965	4	2	2	8
<i>Sonata a 4</i>	Daniel Speer	Donald G. Miller	1685/2009	4	2	1	7
<i>Tissington Variations</i>	Raymond Premru	NA	1972	5	2	0	7
<i>Cinq Pieces a Quatre Pour Quatour de Trombones</i>	Roger Boutry	NA	1961	5	1	1	7
<i>Scarborough Fair</i>	Traditional	Bill Reichenbach	1986	2	2	2	6
<i>Recitative and Fugue for Trombone Quartet</i>	Patrick McCarty	NA	1960	4	0	2	6
<i>Trombone Quartet</i>	Arthur Frackenpohl	NA	1968	5	0	1	6
<i>Suite for Four Trombones</i>	Alfred Hornoff	NA	1953	5	1	0	6
<i>Suite</i>	David Gow	NA	1967	5	1	0	6
<i>Suite of Three Cities</i>	Roger Chapman	NA	1960	5	0	1	6
<i>6 Pieces for 4 Trombones</i>	Vaclav Nelhybel	NA	1966	4	1	1	6
<i>Suite for Four Trombones</i>	Desire Dondeyne	NA	1949	5	0	1	6

<i>Title</i>	<i>Composer</i>	<i>Arranger</i>	<i>Year</i>	<i>Ped. Sources</i>	<i>Lists & Forums</i>	<i>State Lists</i>	<i>Total</i>
<i>Quatuor de Forme Liturgique</i>	Jacques Charpentier	NA	1960	5	0	1	6
<i>Scherzo and Dirge for Four Trombones</i>	Robert L. Sanders	NA	1948	5	0	0	5
<i>Concert Piece for Four Trombones</i>	Fisher Tull	NA	1996	3	1	1	5
<i>Two Bagatelles for Four Trombones</i>	Alfred Reed	NA	1983	3	0	2	5
<i>Suite for Trombones</i>	Carol M. Butts	NA	1966	3	0	1	4
<i>A Study in Texture</i>	Paul Tanner	NA	1965	2	0	2	4
<i>Suite for 4 Trombones</i>	James W. Langley	NA	1961/1989	4	0	0	4
<i>Three Motets</i>	Anton Bruckner	Ralph Sauer	1977	1	2	1	4
<i>Valse de Concert</i>	Vladislav Blazhevich	Frank Cofield	1957	3	0	1	4
<i>Bolos</i>	Jan Bark; Folk Rabe	NA	1964	4	0	0	4
<i>Suite for Four Trombones</i>	Arthur Muelemans	NA	1942/2020	4	0	0	4
<i>'Round Midnight</i>	Cootie Williams; Thelonius Monk; Bernie Hanigen	Slide Hampton	1962	3	1	0	4
<i>Adagio from Symphony No. 3 "The Organ Symphony"</i>	Camille Saint-Saens	Kenneth Murley	1886/1959	1	1	1	3
<i>5 Sketches for 4 Trombones</i>	Buxton Orr	NA	1972	2	0	1	3
<i>Suite of Lieder</i>	Franz Schubert	Lewis Rowell	1961	2	0	1	3
<i>Myths and Legends</i>	Eric Ewazen	NA	2001	1	1	1	3
<i>Three Miniatures for Trombone Quartet</i>	David Uber	NA	1967	2	0	1	3
<i>Trombone Quartet</i>	Walter Ross	NA	1977	2	0	1	3
<i>Trombone Quartet, Op. 117</i>	Derek Bourgeois	NA	1993	1	2	0	3
<i>Suite</i>	George Hyde	NA	1970	2	0	1	3
<i>Excerpts from "The Damnation of Faust"</i>	Hector Berlioz	Allen Ostrand	1846/1951	0	1	2	3
<i>Equale No. 3</i>	Felix Mendelssohn	Gustave Wittman;	1967	1	0	2	3

<i>Title</i>	<i>Composer</i>	<i>Arranger</i>	<i>Year</i>	<i>Ped. Sources</i>	<i>Lists & Forums</i>	<i>State Lists</i>	<i>Total</i>
		Glenn Smith					
<i>Suite for Trombone Quartet</i>	Peter Atherton	NA	1967	3	0	0	3
<i>Chorale for Four Trombones</i>	Andre Ameller	NA	1960	3	0	0	3
<i>3 Movements for 4 Trombones</i>	James Kazik	NA	2001	1	1	0	2
<i>Two Pieces for Trombone Quartet</i>	Alexander Arutiunian	NA	1989	0	0	2	2
<i>A Kensington Portrait</i>	Jared Spears	NA	1997	1	0	1	2
<i>Scherzo and Chorale</i>	Hidas Frigyes	NA	1979	2	0	0	2
<i>Burlesque</i>	Alan Raph	NA	No Date	2	0	0	2
<i>Trombone Quartet No. 1 "Densities"</i>	Anthony Plog	NA	2002	1	1	0	2
<i>5 Impromptus for 4 Trombones</i>	Jan Koetsier	NA	1970	1	1	0	2
<i>Chaconne and March</i>	William Presser	NA	1973	1	0	1	2
<i>Quartet '74</i>	Malcolm Forsyth	NA	1978	2	0	0	2
<i>Now is the Month of Maying</i>	Thomas Morley	Richard Myers	1595/1965	1	0	1	2
<i>Adagio from Symphony No. 7</i>	Anton Bruckner	Jay K. Friedman	1885/1967	0	0	2	2
<i>Rondo</i>	Joel Cohen	NA	1961	2	0	0	2
<i>Choral et Variations</i>	Jean-Pierre Müller	NA	1959	2	0	0	2
<i>Trois Chansons</i>	Claude Debussy	Michael Levin	1986	0	2	0	2
<i>Two Madrigals</i>	Gordon Jacob	NA	1990	2	0	0	2

Database Construction

The model for this database is adapted from Michael Davidson's document entitled "An Annotated Database of 102 Selected Published Works for Trombone Requiring Multiphonics." Davidson categorized works by eighteen criteria to offer a comprehensive analysis of each piece and its approachability. Entries in Davidson's database include information on composer, title, publisher, copyright date, availability, copy quality, difficulty, trombone(s) needed, instrumentation, overall range, clefs, mutes, multiphonic type, multiphonic range, intervals, chords listed, dedication, and overview.⁶¹ Of these characteristics, I include thirteen in this study that are identical to Davidson's as "piece description" is analogous to "overview." Additionally, I include information about the arranger (if applicable), movements, duration, technical considerations, and publisher overview/description(s) in literature yielding a total of seventeen criteria. For the "piece description" criterion, I adapted Kimball's prose descriptions from his document entitled "Alto Trombone Solo Literature: An Annotated Bibliography" so that this database includes detailed narrative descriptions for each work, in addition to categorical/demographic information.

Criteria Explanation/Description

Below, I provide a brief description of each criteria/category analyzed and presented as the analysis of each entry in my document.

Composer: This criterion includes the composer's name, beginning with the first name. Their dates and a brief biography (approximately three sentences) are also included for

⁶¹ Davidson, 12-20.

additional context. If the piece does not have an identified composer, information on the work's history is provided.

Arranger: This field includes the arranger's name, beginning with the first name. Dates and a brief biography (three sentences or less) are included for additional context. If the piece does not have an arranger, the category reads "N/A."

Title: This category includes the work's name in the original language and the translated name (if applicable). Specific designations, such as opus numbers, are included if included in the score.

Movements: This item includes the number of movements in the work, their titles, and their metronomic markings. If PMLs require one or multiple movements for adjudicated performance, this is noted.

Duration: This category identifies a work's approximate length in terms of minutes and seconds to help with programming concerns. Each entry includes a time with minutes and seconds separated by a colon (00:00).

Publisher: This criterion includes the publisher's location (city, state, and/or country). It is also notes if the publisher belongs to a publishing house.

Copyright Date: This datapoint details the publication date included in the music and/or from the publisher. If multiple dates are found (e.g., published initially in one year, with a revised edition in another), I list both/all; it reads as "[original date]/[revised date]." The original and transcription/arrangement dates for older works and transcriptions are also included, using the same format.

Copy Quality: This field details how the published work's physical notation appears to the reader, categorizing as either (a) manuscript, (b) engraved, or (c) jazz notation. The

manuscript denotation means the music is handwritten. In contrast, the engraved denotation implies the music is from a large-scale publisher and/or something written using computer notation software (e.g., Finale, Sibelius, Dorico).⁶² Jazz notation is a handwritten style associated with many jazz charts. These designations are not meant to disparage a piece or discourage any performances but rather highlight the music's written style and potential readability concerns.

Availability: This category specifies whether the piece is still available from the publisher. If the work is available from several merchants, the category reads “available from numerous merchants.” I also note if it is available as a digital download. If the quartet is no longer available from a merchant but can be found through interlibrary loan—a common sharing process of materials between libraries worldwide—the listing reads as such. Finally, if I cannot determine current (at the time of this study) options for obtaining a specific work, it reads “no longer available.”

Difficulty: This criterion focuses on a work's approachability. Many published sources prescribe a grading system or set of difficulty levels; yet they do not provide a general explanation of grade level characteristics. Additionally, the University Interscholastic League (UIL) uses only three grades for their solo and small ensemble difficulty levels (where most texts/organizations utilize a 5- or 6-point scale) and does not provide grade-level descriptions. To ensure maximum consistency of difficulty classification, I adapted the categories from Davidson and altered the descriptions provided by the American Band College Music Grading Chart⁶³—a PDF document available online—to be more trombone-centric. I retained the categories of rhythm, meter, tempo, range, and articulation and added trombone-specific information of clefs,

⁶² Davidson, 12.

⁶³ “American Band College Music Grading Chart,” Pdfs, BandWorld.org, last modified March 1, 2000, <https://www.bandworld.org/pdfs/gradingchart.pdf>.

texture/part independence, and extended techniques. The information found in each difficulty level’s written description concerning rhythm, meter, tempo, and articulation is typically taken directly from the American Band College Music Grading Chart. [Since all information is available on a one-page PDF document, these items will not receive individual citations below.] Table 5 includes all the categories except for the “Rhythm” portion of “Rhythm and Meter,” and “texture.” The main purpose of this table is to summarize each sub-criterion. Only new additions to each level are included in each subsequent level’s entry of the table (e.g., 6/8 is the only metric entry for the Intermediate level, in addition to the meters listed in the Beginner level). For additional information and citations of the sources used, refer to the prose descriptions that follow Table 5.

Table 5: Content for Difficulty Levels Minus Rhythm and Texture

Level	Meter	Tempo	Range	Clefs	Articulation	Extended Techniques
Beginner (1)	2/4, 3/4, 4/4, C, 2/2	72 – 120 bpm	Ab2 – F4	Bass	Staccato, Legato, Accented	Glissando
Intermediate (2)	6/8	72 – 132 bpm	F2 – G4	Bass	Tenuto, Marcato	Double Tonguing
Early Advanced (3)	3/8, 9/8, 3/2	56 – 144 bpm	D2 – B4	Tenor; Bass	No new additions	Triple Tonguing & Minimal Ornamentation
Advanced (4)	5/8, 7/8	44 – 168 bpm	C2 – C5	Tenor; Bass; Potential for Alto	Hybrid articulations	Flutter Tongue & Multiphonics
Virtuosic (5)	All meters are possible	44 – 208 bpm	F1 – F5	Alto; Tenor; Bass	All articulations are possible	All extended techniques are possible

Following the “Beginner” category, only the items added are listed here, rather than restating all previous material:

Beginner (1) – Playable by a young high school ensemble

Concerning rhythm, whole, half, quarter, and eighth notes with the occasional 16th note are present. The meters are primarily simple (2/4, 3/4, 4/4, C, 2/2). The tempo of a work typically has a metronomic marking in between seventy-two (72) and one hundred and twenty (120) beats per minute (bpm). The range falls between Ab₂ and F₄ and all parts are written in bass clef. The articulations are primarily staccato, legato (slurred), and accented; the texture is primarily homorhythmic, and the glissando is the only extended technique.

Intermediate (2) – Playable by a high school or collegiate freshman ensemble

Concerning rhythm, the new figures added are dotted notes and syncopation. The new meter is the compound meter, 6/8, and the tempo expands on the faster end to one hundred thirty-two (132) beats per minute (bpm). The range expands from F₂ to G₄; all parts remain in bass clef. The new articulations added are tenuto and marcato; the texture is primarily homorhythmic with minimal independence in the outer parts, and the added extended technique is double-tonguing.

Early-Advanced (3) – Playable by an advanced high school or mixed undergraduate collegiate ensemble

Concerning rhythm, triplets are added as well as more intense syncopation. Meters added are 3/8, 9/8, and 3/2 time for more variation. The tempo expands on both ends to fifty-six (56) on the slower end and one hundred forty-four (144) on the faster end. The range also expands into the trigger register down to D₂ and up to B₄; clefs change slightly as tenor

clef is a possibility for the first trombone part – the other three parts remain in bass clef. The articulation remains the same, the texture features more independent lines mixed with homorhythmic sections, and new extended techniques include triple tonguing and minimal ornamentation.

Advanced – (4) Playable by an advanced undergraduate ensemble or a mixed ensemble of advanced undergraduate and graduate students

Concerning rhythm, all configurations are possible except for complex sixteenth note and compound syncopation; there is the potential for thirty-second notes. Asymmetrical meters such as 5/8 and 7/8 are a possibility and the beats per minute (bpm) expands down to forty-four (44) on the slower end and up to one hundred and sixty-eight (168) on the faster end. As for Range, the More variance concerning clefs as the first part is primarily in tenor, the second part may have some tenor clef, and the bottom two parts remain in bass clef. For articulation, hybrid articulation (e.g., staccato with tenuto) is present, as is the possibility of having simultaneously different articulation across the ensemble. The texture features independent lines in all parts, and unique configurations can play against one another;⁶⁴ new extended techniques include flutter tongue and the potential for multiphonics.

Virtuosic (5) – Playable by a graduate ensemble or professional ensemble

Concerning rhythm, all rhythmic configurations are possible, as are all meters. The possible tempo expands on the faster end up to two hundred and eight (208) beats per minute (bpm). The range expands on the lower end down to F1 and up to F5 on the higher end. For clefs, the first trombone is in alto or tenor, the second trombone is in

⁶⁴ Ibid.

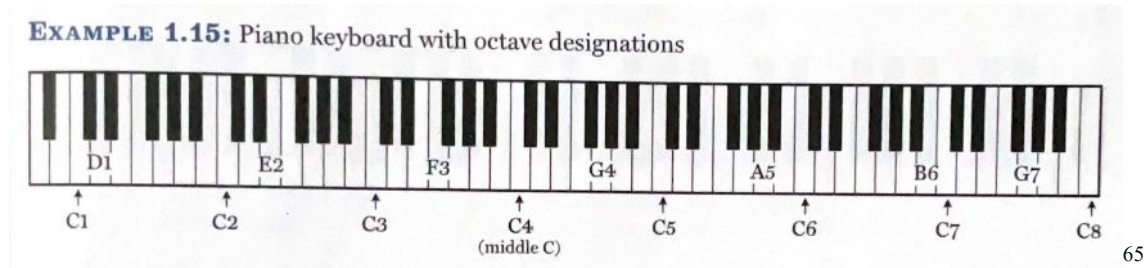
tenor, and the third and bass trombones are in both tenor and bass; all parts can move between clefs within movements and lines. All articulations are possible, as are all extended techniques. The texture features an independent line in each part while utilizing all ensemble groupings.

Ultimately, these descriptions provide a general framework for evaluation; certain trombone quartets may present exceptions after all factors are examined.

Instrumentation: This datapoint identifies the instruments required to perform a work. If it is recommended that the first trombonist performs on a small-bore tenor, a caret (^) appears next to the tenor trombone designation. To maintain this delineation's consistency, the piece must either ascend above C#5/Db5 or have a persistently high tessitura to be assigned a caret. The bass trombone is not considered a specialty instrument for this database. If the bass trombone part is playable on an F-attachment tenor trombone, an asterisk (*) appears next to "bass trombone." To ensure consistency, any bass trombone part that descends below D2 does *not* receive an asterisk; if the lowest note is a pedal tone playable on an F-attachment tenor trombone, it is subject to the author's evaluation. This database's only specialty instrument is the alto trombone due to its clef, differing slide positions, and smaller mouthpiece. The soprano and contrabass trombones do not appear in any entry.

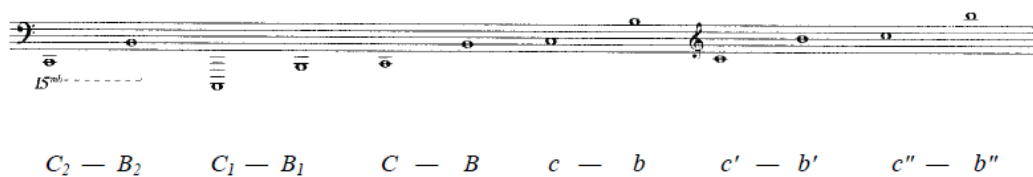
Overall Range: This category reflects the piece's low and high note extremes in two ways. The first is the overall range, which determines the lowest to highest pitch across all four parts; the second identifies the specific ranges of each part for full transparency. Figure 1 shows the system used for determining and labeling range referred to as Scientific Pitch Notation. This example is from Jane Piper Clendinning and Elizabeth West Marvin's *The Musician's Guide to Music Theory and Analysis*.

Figure 1: “Scientific Pitch Notation” from *The Musician’s Guide to Music Theory and Analysis*



This labeling system differs from the one referred to as the Helmholtz Pitch Notation system included in the *New Harvard Dictionary of Music* and used in standard trombone solo databases. Figure 2 shows the Helmholtz pitch notation system located in the *New Harvard Dictionary of Music*, Davidson’s D.M.A. document, and *Solos for the Student Trombonist: An Annotated Bibliography*, edited by J. Mark Thompson.

Figure 2: “Helmholtz Pitch Notation” from *The New Harvard Dictionary of Music*



Scientific Pitch Notation is used in each entry because it is generally considered more precise and unambiguous. It provides a clear means of identifying a note in terms of textual notation

⁶⁵ Jane Piper Clendinning and Elizabeth West Marvin, *The Musician’s Guide to Theory and Analysis*, 4th ed. (W.W Norton and Co., 2021), 15.

⁶⁶ Don Michael Randel, ed., *The New Harvard Dictionary of Music* (The Belknap Press of the Harvard University Press, 1986), 640.

rather than frequency while avoiding the potential confusion caused by the symbolic distinctions used to differentiate notes in Helmholtz Pitch Notation.⁶⁷

Clefs: This item identifies the various clefs (bass, tenor, alto, and treble) found in each part. If a part contains more than one clef, this is noted.

Mutes: This field identifies if the work requires mutes. If mutes are not required, the category reads “N/A.” If mutes are required, it identifies the type of mute (straight mute, cup mute, bucket mute, Harmon mute, plunger, etc.), which part(s) use(s) the mute(s), and the movement(s) in which mutes are required.

Dedication: This datapoint identifies if the piece was written or commissioned for a specific person, ensemble, or consortium. For a more complete understanding of the work, I recommended performers research these individuals/entities to provide background and contextual information on the composition. For example, a work written for Thomas Everett (one of the preeminent bass trombonists from the late twentieth century), historical performance practice should be considered during study.

Publisher Overview/Score Description: This item includes any descriptions or notes left by the composer in the physical score, by the publisher in their online store, or in CD liner notes. Commentary from another pedagogical source is not included.

Technical Considerations: This field identifies advanced techniques found in each work, including, but not limited to, multiple tonguing, flutter tongue, multiphonics, glissandi, and ornamentation. Such techniques are listed in this category because they commonly occur in the standard repertoire, and they could solely render a piece inaccessible depending on ensemble

⁶⁷ “Standard Pitch Notations,” Alternative Notation Systems, Notes, Theory, Chromatone Center, accessed April 19, 2025, <https://chromatone.center/theory/notes/alternative/scientific/>.

member experience or ability. Of these items, the only subjective technique is multiple tonguing because (a) each individual possesses the ability to single tongue at varied rates; and (b) the technique does not have a distinct musical marking, like others. To determine if multiple tonguing was required, I focused upon the subdivision level (i.e., triplet, sixteenth note, thirty-second note) rather than a benchmark tempo. Eighth note lines and figures only received consideration if they occurred within a compound meter at a tempo of dotted quarter note equals 100 beats per minute, or faster. Along with the identification, a brief description of the musical content and at least one example are included. For example, if a work features rapid, significant dynamic changes, the content (e.g., piano, mezzo piano, mezzo forte) is outlined and examples with measure numbers are provided. Some works contain more techniques in this section than others, depending on the composer's requirements for the performers.

Piece Description: This criterion identifies essential characteristics of the music, including but not limited to melody, rhythm, intonation, style, dynamics, and phrasing. These items, among others not listed, are addressed in this section as they are the essential elements of music. I also identify any chamber ensemble attributes and skills, such as part independence, that are teachable through the work. This section does not create a specific performance sequence through which the instructor should lead their students; instead, it isolates each piece, describes, and analyzes it on its merit so the instructor can find works that address specific skills and make informed decisions accordingly.

Database Template⁶⁸

Composer:

Arranger:

Title:

Movements:

Duration:

Publisher:

Copyright Date:

Copy Quality:

Availability:

Difficulty:

Instrumentation:

Overall Range:

Clefs:

Mutes:

Dedication:

Publisher Overview/Description(s) in Literature:

Technical Considerations:

Piece Description:

⁶⁸ Davidson, 24-25.

Chapter 3: Level 1 Works

Suite for Trombones – Carrol M. Butts

Composer: Carrol M. Butts (1924–1980)

Born in 1924, Carrol M. Butts received his B.M.E and M.M.E. from the University of Colorado at Boulder.⁶⁹ He served as an educator in the Wyoming public school system for twenty-nine years⁷⁰ in school districts such as the Goshen School District (Torrington).⁷¹ Additionally, he primarily composed and arranged music for brass instruments.⁷² Limited documentation exists regarding this composer; he died in 1980.

Arranger: N/A

Title: *Suite for Trombones*

Movements: Three Movements

1. March (quarter note equals 112 bpm)
2. Ballad (quarter note equals 88 bpm)
3. Fanfare (quarter note equals 112 bpm)

The UIL Database does not contain any movement specifications

Duration: 4:30

Publisher: Shawnee Press owned by Hal Leonard (Milwaukee, WI)

Copyright Date: 1966

Copy Quality: Engraved

Availability: Available from numerous merchants; no digital download available

Difficulty: Beginner (1)

⁶⁹ Carrol M. Butts, *Suite for Trombones* (Shawnee Press, 1966).

⁷⁰ “Carrol Butts,” Musicians, HeBu Musikverlag, accessed April 3, 2025, <https://www.hebu-music.com/en/musician/carrol-butts.18825/?page=1>.

⁷¹ Butts, *Suite for Trombones*.

⁷² Ibid.

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones; bass trombone*

Overall Range: F2 – F4

Trombone 1: F3 – F4

Trombone 2: D3 – Eb4

Trombone 3: G2 – C4

Bass Trombone: F2 – A3

Clefs: Trombone 1 (bass); Trombone 2 (bass); Trombone 3 (bass); Bass Trombone (bass)

Mutes: N/A

Dedication: N/A

Publisher Overview/Description(s) in Literature:

J.W. Pepper

“Unusually effective trombone quartet. Very playable. 3 short movements. March. Ballad. Fanfare.”⁷³

Carrol M. Butts

“The 1st movement should be played with authority and with all parts equal in intensity and volume. In the 2nd movement, use vibrato on all parts of it can be uniform and balanced. This movement has a reflective, plaintive mood. The 3rd movement should have the same authority as the first. Crisp accents should be used. A staccato style will keep the movement light. No vibrato should be used.”⁷⁴

Technical Considerations: Phrasing; Rhythm

⁷³ “Suite for Trombones,” Instrumental Music, JWPepper.com, accessed April 3, 2025, https://www.jwpepper.com/suite-for-trombones-998989-1582318/p?srsId=AfmBOooPrpRL2kdQqfVwvZB9x0VESH_VObzX6H2K0WMeJUfCTYG8ckc.

⁷⁴ Carrol M. Butts, *Suite for Trombones*.

Phrasing – The composer provides little instruction concerning phrasing and dynamics in this work. For example, all three movements have no dynamic markings below mezzo forte (*mf*). There are also only a few crescendos and decrescendos; therefore, it is up to the performers to make musical decisions that prevent a performance of this work from being uniformly loud. Expressive phrasing is central to the second movement, “Ballad’s” identity, but the performers must assume responsibility for making these musical decisions. Consequently, choices must be intentional, and dynamic levels must be clear.

Rhythm – There are no complex rhythms in this trombone quartet. The primary concern is differentiating the triplet from the dotted eighth-sixteenth. These two rhythmic figures often occur one after another in the same part and across the ensemble in a dialogical manner. There are two examples from the first movement that illustrate this point. The first example occurs in the opening six measures. The ensemble plays the triplet figure in measures two and four; the dotted eighth-sixteenth occurs in trombones two and three in measure one and all trombones in measures three and five. The second example occurs in measures twenty-six through thirty. The first and second trombones play dotted eighth-sixteenth figures in measures twenty-six, twenty-eight, and thirty, while the third trombone plays a triplet in measures twenty-seven and twenty-nine. For both examples, the subdivision of the dotted eighth-sixteenth figure must be exact. If the dotted eighth note does not receive its full value, it resembles a triplet; if the sixteenth note is overly delayed, it mimics a thirty-second note. Thus, maintaining rhythmic accuracy is critical.

Piece Description:

This *Suite* by Carrol M. Butts is a standard of the repertoire that is approachable for younger groups. The first movement, “March,” has a standard AABA form; the only difference

among the “A” sections is the last two measures. It begins with a predominantly homorhythmic texture comprised of sustained notes, dotted eighth-sixteenths, and triplets. Until measure four, the second and third trombones are the only parts that play the dotted eighth-sixteenth, which helps establish the “march” style from the movement’s onset. On the anacrusis to measure nine, all four trombones have a dotted eighth-sixteenth at a forte dynamic; this leads to a sustained note in the top part, a repetitive static pattern in the second trombone, and a descending five-note scale in the bottom two parts. This texture continues until the first ending, which utilizes accented eighth notes that lead into the second “A” section. The melody is primarily stepwise and utilizes lower and upper neighbors, while never ascending above an F4. The “B” section retains the dotted eighth-sixteenths and triplets while introducing a “sigh” motive as its central idea; this motive consists of a quarter note slurred to a staccato eighth note. In the first two phrases, the motive is present through repetition, which assists the dynamic shape. At measure twenty-six, the interplay between the dotted eighth-sixteenth and triplets continues. The final “A” section begins in measure thirty-four, following a brief *ritardando*. It is identical to the other two “A” sections except for the final measure, which concludes on a Bb major triad. Key considerations include phrasing and rhythm.

The second movement, “Ballad,” is in ABA form; the only difference between the two “A” sections is the last measure. The first “A” section contains two four-measure phrases. The first emphasizes dotted quarter notes, and the second emphasizes streams of eighth notes that begin on the upbeat of beat one. It begins with an ascending melody in the first trombone that outlines a G minor triad before reaching Eb4. In the following two measures, the melody moves in contrary motion, settling on A3. The subsequent four-bar phrase retains the previous line’s general direction while ascending to F4 and settles on C4 after a measure of oscillating eighth

notes. The second trombone provides a secondary melodic line, often playing the same rhythm a third below and moving notes, while the first trombone sustains rhythms. The third and fourth trombones provide harmony, primarily perfect fourths and fifths, underneath the melody and countermelody. This section ends with a D major triad (the dominant chord) complemented by a ritardando. The “B” section begins in measure fifty-three and is initially homorhythmic. The rhythm manifests in two statements of a quarter note and two eighth notes. The top three parts in its second measure have a sustained note, while the fourth trombone plays a descending four-note scale. The subsequent six measures divide the ensemble into various pairs. Some examples include the first and second trombones, second and third trombones, and first and fourth trombones. This section also concludes with a D major chord (as the dominant) in tandem with a ritardando. The second “A” section begins in measure sixty-six with very few differences from its predecessor. The first difference is the inclusion of eighth notes in the bottom two parts in measures sixty-seven, seventy, and seventy-one. The most notable feature is the triplet on beat four in the bass trombone. The second difference is the inclusion of a triplet on beat four of measure seventy, and the third difference is a subversion of the concluding cadence. The movement concludes on a G minor triad instead of a G major triad, prepared by including an F# in the second trombone. Items to consider are dynamics, intonation, and phrasing.

The third movement, “Fanfare,” is a rondo in ABACA form; the three “A” sections are eight measures in length, the “B” section is eight measures long, and the “C” section is sixteen measures long. The first “A” section begins with a homorhythmic line in the top two trombone parts; its melody (eighth and sixteenth notes) is primarily based on a Bb major triad. The lower two parts embellish the melody with chordal attacks. The “B” section begins in measure eighty-two. It follows the same pattern as the “A” section, using the third and fourth trombones for

embellishment; however, the third trombone joins the first and second trombones in the section's fourth measure. The melody is centered on repetition and contains only two notes (C4 and D4). The "A" section returns at measure ninety; its only differences from the initial "A" section are the incorporation of the bass trombone and a diminished role for the third trombone, which provides the established melody with a different color. The "C" section begins in measure ninety-eight and all ensemble members contribute to this section. The melody is more scalar and primarily descends; sixteenth notes are absent. The final "A" section begins in measure 114 and contains the most complete statement of the melody, incorporating both the third and fourth trombones. It also retains the accents from the second "A" section. The work concludes with a Bb major triad. Items to consider are articulation, phrasing, rhythm, and style.

Rondo for Trombone Quartet – Joel Cohen

Composer: Joel Cohen (b. 1944)

Born in 1944, Joel Cohen is primarily known as a scientist rather than a musician and composer.

He is a scientist and applied mathematician who studies populations, ecosystems, and environments using mathematical, statistical, and computational tools at The Rockefeller University and Columbia University (in New York).⁷⁵ His work focuses on phenomena that affect human health, other species humans interact with, and the human environment.⁷⁶

Musically, he is a pianist and studied composition with Don Gillis who has written works for piano, orchestra, and brass ensemble.⁷⁷

Arranger: N/A

Title: *Rondo for Trombone Quartet*

Movements: One Movement

Duration: 4:00

Publisher: Wingert Jones Publications owned by Excelcia Music Publishing (Lakeland, FL)

Copyright Date: 1961

Copy Quality: Engraved

Availability: Available from Wingert Jones Publications; Available from Hickeys.com; no digital download available

Difficulty: Beginner (1)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones; bass trombone*

Overall Range: G2 – G4

⁷⁵ “Joel E. Cohen,” Faculty, Columbia University, accessed February 10, 2025, <https://eesc.columbia.edu/content/joel-e-cohen>.

⁷⁶ Ibid.

⁷⁷ “Joel Cohen,” Composers, Wingertjones.com, accessed February 10, 2025, <https://wingertjones.com/product-category/composers/joel-cohen/>.

Trombone 1: C3 – G4

Trombone 2: B2 – Eb4

Trombone 3: G2 – Bb3

Bass Trombone: G2 – G3

Clefs: Trombone 1 (bass); Trombone 2 (bass); Trombone 3 (bass); Bass Trombone (bass)

Mutes: N/A

Dedication: N/A

Publisher Overview/Score Description:

Wingert Jones Publications

“Very accessible march in rondo form for developing trombonists. Baritone or euphonium may be used on the 4th trombone part.”⁷⁸

Technical Considerations: Articulation; Dynamics

Articulation - All quarter notes in the refrain are staccato; the composer marks them in the opening but does not indicate them further in the piece. He writes at Rehearsal L, “Tempo I, staccato as at first.” Matching the length of this articulation is crucial for a successful performance of this piece. I recommend that the style be light and crisp as opposed to short. Refer to Rehearsal A and Rehearsal L for examples.

Dynamics - The composer provides minimal instruction concerning the dynamics of the various phrases. He often provides basic markings at rehearsals letters and more specific instructions at key structural points. Due to this ambiguity, it is up to the performers to make informed musical decisions. An example of this is present at rehearsal E in the top two parts.

⁷⁸ “Rondo,” Brass Ensembles, Wingertjones.com, accessed February 10, 2025, <https://wingertjones.com/product/9051860-rondo-joel-cohen/>.

Piece Description:

This composition by Joel Cohen is a suitable choice for an ensemble of young trombonists. The form breaks down in an ABACA rondo structure. The piece begins with the full ensemble playing—the top three parts play a homorhythmic line in harmony, featuring both note repetition and triadic/tetradic skips. Contrastingly, the bass trombone (trombone four) plays two whole note C3s tied together, providing a foundation for the ensemble. The roles reverse in measure four, but the bass trombone line is a descending stepwise line, and the other three parts play a C major triad in first inversion. The subsequent two measures restate the opening phrase, but the second two deviate by including the bass trombone. The second eight-measure phrase, which begins at rehearsal A, replaces the bass trombone with the first trombone as the independent voice and places parts two through four in harmony. At rehearsal B, the musical line shifts from an arpeggio-dominated melody to a stepwise scalar melody. The bass trombone line is an Ab Mixolydian scale, the third trombone has an incomplete scale that appears to be a Db Lydian scale, the second trombone has an incomplete C harmonic minor scale, and the first trombone has a C natural minor scale. The lower parts' scales ascend while the higher parts' scales descend. A *ritardando* prepares the ensemble to settle on a G major triad.

Rehearsal D represents the first episode; the third and fourth trombones begin the section by establishing a rhythmic foundation through two motor rhythms for four measures. The first and second trombones enter at Rehearsal E with a legato melody that utilizes sustained notes; the primary intervals between the two parts are the perfect fourth, major third, and minor third. It also necessitates that the first trombonist ascend to G4 several times. This section concludes with a *diminuendo*, and Rehearsal H is the return of the refrain. It only lasts ten measures and culminates with a *forte* power chord.

The second episode is a chorale. Cohen places breath marks after each four-measure phrase. The only phrase that strays from this pattern is the last six measures. The form of the chorale is ABA', and its melodic content contains diatonic and chromatic lines, often in stepwise motion with skips occasionally incorporated. As for the other parts, the third trombone primarily plays half notes, and the second/fourth trombones fill in gaps with quarter-note motives. The refrain returns at Rehearsal L at a forte dynamic before moving to a piano dynamic at Rehearsal M. The scalar material from Rehearsal B returns at Rehearsal N. The piece concludes with a fortissimo power chord.

Now is the Month of Maying – Thomas Morley/arr. Richard Myers

Composer: Thomas Morley (1557/58–1602)

Born in either 1557 or 1558, Thomas Morley was the first of the great English madrigalists.⁷⁹

It appears that he and his compositions were primarily responsible for the insertion of the Italian madrigal into English society and its subsequent popularity from 1593–1601.⁸⁰ He worked at several churches and studied with William Byrd before traveling to Europe and discovering the Italian madrigal (and its applicability to the English language).⁸¹ In 1593, he published twenty-five canzonets for three voices, with his first set of madrigals (22) appearing in 1594.⁸² For the time, his works contained greater musical development and harmonic direction.⁸³ He mastered both the broad and strong polyphony of the premadrigalian English style, and the distinctive qualities of the Italian madrigal, such as direct effectiveness, gentle harmonic warmth, lively rhythms, and clarity of texture.⁸⁴ His text, *A Plain and Easy Introduction to Practical Music* (1597) provided a theoretical basis of composition employed by composers of his time and earlier generations.⁸⁵ He died in 1602.

Arranger: Richard Myers (1929–2014)

Born in 1939, Richard Myers was the principal trombonist of the Buffalo Philharmonic Orchestra for thirty-nine years (1955–1994).⁸⁶ He received his bachelor's degree from the Eastman School of Music at the University of Rochester (his studies there were interrupted when

⁷⁹ Editors of Encyclopedia Britannica, "Thomas Morley," in *Encyclopedia Britannica* (Encyclopedia Britannica, Inc., 1994–), published Jul 20, 1998; last modified September 27, 2025, <https://www.britannica.com/biography/Thomas-Morley>.

⁸⁰ Philip Brett and Tessa Muray, "Morley, Thomas," in Grove Music Online (Oxford University Press, 2001–), accessed April 22, 2025, <https://www.oxfordmusiconline.com/grovemusic/display/10.1093/gmo/9781561592630.001.0001/omo-9781561592630-e-0000019147?rskey=Vnm11&result=1>.

⁸¹ Editors of Encyclopedia Britannica, "Thomas Morely," last modified September 27, 2024.

⁸² Ibid.

⁸³ Ibid.

⁸⁴ Ibid.

⁸⁵ Ibid.

⁸⁶ "Richard Myers Biography," Richard Myers Memorial Trombone Trio Composition Contest," accessed April 22, 2025, <https://myerstrombonetrio.wordpress.com/about/richard-myers-biography/>.

he enlisted in the United States Air Force Band during his senior year—he served for four years).⁸⁷ In 1960, he founded the Buffalo Trombone Choir at the University of Buffalo, where he also served as an adjunct professor until 1994;⁸⁸ he also served as an instructor at the State University of New York at Fredonia.⁸⁹ He was also a prolific arranger, having many trombone ensemble pieces published by Ensemble Publications and the Richard Myers Series with Accura Music.⁹⁰ He died in 2014.

Title: *Now is the Month of Maying*

Movements: One Movement

Included in the NYSSMA Solo & Ensemble Catalog

Duration: 2:00

Publisher: Ensemble Publications (Ithaca, NY)

Copyright Date: 1595/1965

Copy Quality: Engraved

Availability: Available from numerous merchants; no digital download available

Difficulty: Beginner (1)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones; bass trombone*

Overall Range: F2 – G4

Trombone 1: G3 – G4

Trombone 2: G3 – F#4

Trombone 3: D3 – D4

Bass Trombone: F2 – C4

⁸⁷ Ibid.

⁸⁸ Ibid.

⁸⁹ Ibid.

⁹⁰ Ibid.

Clefs: Trombone 1 (bass); Trombone 2 (bass); Trombone 3 (bass); Bass Trombone (bass)

Mutes: N/A

Dedication: N/A

Publisher Overview/Score Description:

Hickey's Music Center

“Renaissance. Arrangement of one of the most famous English madrigals published in 1595. All parts are in bass clef.”⁹¹

Technical Considerations: Dynamics; Style

Dynamics – Like many works from this period of music history, minimal dynamic markings are present, and phrase markings are non-existent. The two “B” sections contain more instructions, as added by Myers, presumably. Even so, room exists for greater expressivity. However, the two “A” sections have piano designations at the beginning and no further instructions throughout the remaining seven measures. The ensemble is responsible for making musical decisions appropriate to the style for a cohesive, engaging interpretation.

Style – Madrigals from the late Renaissance have a particular style, so listening to recordings of period-accurate performances would benefit the ensemble. Madrigals are vocal works that often implement text painting; consulting the text will also enhance the performance of this work. As for incorporating the trombone, keeping the notes light and the tone full is critical to an accurate performance. Avoid overly short articulations and thin sounds. Finally, tempo is crucial to creating and maintaining the correct style. This

⁹¹ “Morley, Thomas (Myers) Now is the Month of Maying,” Trombone Quartets, Hickeys.com, accessed April 22, 2025, <https://www.hickeys.com/search/products/sku011967.php>.

work cannot slow down and note lengths cannot be too long. The two “B” sections are where this aspect is most applicable.

Piece Description:

This madrigal by Thomas Morley and trombone quartet transcribed by Richard Myers is an approachable composition for less-experienced ensembles that could serve as an effective introduction to late Renaissance music. The piece’s form is ABAB; the “B” sections have repeat signs. The “A” sections are homorhythmic except for measures seven and twenty-three, where the second trombone has eighth notes on beat two, and the lower two trombones both have a dotted half note on beats one through three; the “B” sections mix the homorhythmic texture with more contrapuntal lines. It begins with a C major triad on the anacrusis to measure one that moves harmonically to another C major triad on the downbeat of measure two. To arrive at this differently voiced chord, the outer voices move in contrary motion (trombone one ascends and trombone four descends), and the inner voices oscillate between pitches. As the opening phrase progresses, the first trombone emerges as the primary melodic voice with a line consisting of stepwise motion; however, the second four-measure phrase is more disjunct, containing leaps of an octave, a perfect fourth, and an outlined arpeggio. This shift to angularity contrasts with the lower three parts, which possess a mixture of note repetition, stepwise motion, and intermittent skips.

At Rehearsal A, the first repeated “B” section begins; it also begins on an anacrusis. The first melodic idea of this section is reminiscent of the work’s opening line, but the fourth trombone descends lower (down to G₂), and the first trombone is between a major third and perfect fifth higher. The subsequent material initially appears to be part of a sequential line; however, it changes and cadences on a G major triad on beat four of measure thirteen (one of the

piece's most contrapuntal measures). This contrapuntal texture continues in the next measure, where all four parts have unique musical content. It gives way to an ascending eighth-note line in the first and third trombones (the second trombone has more quarter notes and moves in contrary motion). This line occurs within a crescendo as the piece's first climax occurs with a C major triad in first inversion on the downbeat of measure sixteen; it quickly subsides in the next measure as the section resolves to a C major triad in root position. The subsequent sixteen measures are identical to the opening seventeen measures except for two items. The first item is the dynamic marking for the second "B" section. The dynamic level is mezzo forte in its first iteration, while the second iteration is forte. The second item is a ritardando in the penultimate measure of the second time. While not explicitly denoted, this could be an addition by Myers. The work concludes with a C major triad in root position prepared identically to its predecessor in measure seventeen. Elements requiring attention are dynamics, style, and tempo.

Chapter 4: Level 2 Works

Valse de Concert – Vladislav Blazhevich/arr. Frank Cofield

Composer: Vladislav Blazhevich (1881–1942)

Born in 1881, Vladislav Blazhevich was one of the founders of the Soviet trombone and tuba school.⁹² He studied with Christopher Bork and received his diploma from the Moscow Conservatoire in 1905.⁹³ Subsequently, he won the principal trombone position in the Bolshoi Theater Orchestras, remaining there until 1928.⁹⁴ He also became the professor of trombone at the Moscow Conservatoire until his death in 1942.⁹⁵ In 1937, his responsibilities at the conservatory expanded by becoming the wind instruments department chairperson and the conductor of the state wind band.⁹⁶ Some of his most popular method books for trombone are *Sequences for Trombone* (1924/2008) and *Clef Studies for Trombone* (1924/2012). He also wrote many trombone solos. Blazhevich died in 1942.

Arranger: Frank D. Cofield (1913–2005)

Born in 1913, Frank Cofield received his Bachelor's degree from Indiana University and his Master's degree from George Peabody College at Vanderbilt University;⁹⁷ he also served in the U.S. Navy during World War II for three years.⁹⁸ Throughout his distinguished career, he was choral instructor and band director in the Indiana public school system and a composer/arranger/editor for Hal Leonard Publishing from 1957 to 1991.⁹⁹ He died in 2005.

⁹² "Vladislav Blazhevich," Composers, Editions Bim & The Brass Press, Accessed March 30, 2025, <https://www.editions-bim.com/composers/vladislav-blazhevich>.

⁹³ "Vladislav Blazhevich," Authors, Sofiaphilharmonic.com, accessed March 30, 2025, <https://sofiaphilharmonic.com/en/authors/vladislav-blazhevich-en/>.

⁹⁴ Editions Bim & The Brass Press, "Vladislav Blazhevich."

⁹⁵ Ibid.

⁹⁶ Ibid.

⁹⁷ "Frank D. Cofield Obituary," Indiana Band Masters Association, accessed March 30, 2025, https://www.indianabandmasters.org/pbm_obits/COFIELD.Obit.pdf.

⁹⁸ Indiana Band Masters Association, "Frank D. Cofield Obituary."

⁹⁹ Ibid.

Title: *Valse de Concert (Concert Waltz)*

Movements: One Movement

Included in the NYSSMA Solo & Ensemble Catalog.

Duration: 4:30

Publisher: Hal Leonard (Milwaukee, WI)

Copyright Date: 1957

Copy Quality: Engraved

Availability: Available from numerous merchants; no digital download available

Difficulty: Intermediate (2)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones; bass trombone*

Overall Range: Ab2 – Ab4

Trombone 1: Eb3 – Ab4

Trombone 2: Eb3 – F4

Trombone 3: Bb2 – F4

Bass Trombone: Ab2 – C4

Clefs: Trombone 1 (bass); Trombone 2 (bass); Trombone 3 (bass); Bass Trombone (bass)

Mutes: N/A

Dedication: N/A

Publisher Overview/Score Description: N/A

Technical Considerations: Balance and Blend; Style

Balance and Blend – Since the accompaniment is dense in this quartet, there is a risk of overpowering and obscuring the melodic voice. This piece can only be performed accurately if each ensemble member fulfills their designated role in each section. The

first section where this may present a challenge is between measures eight and twenty-three. The melody in the first trombone contains numerous sustained notes, and the accompaniment, while at a piano dynamic level, features all three lower parts playing a mixture of homorhythmic and less-unified figures. The second section that may present a challenge is between measures sixty-one and sixty-eight. The bass trombone has a melody whose pitch content is just above or in the staff and contains several sustained notes. While at a mezzo-piano dynamic level, the accompaniment contains homorhythmic eighth notes.

Style – This piece must stay light and bouncy since the waltz is a dance. Playing too heavy or legato will result in the piece losing momentum and causing endurance challenges. The most effective method to prevent this is to adhere to the staccato articulations throughout the piece. A primary example is the ostinato in the third and fourth trombones in two sections (measures fifty-three to fifty-nine; measures eighty-five to ninety-one). This line will inevitably decelerate if the eighth notes on beats two and three are not separated. The accompaniment from measure sixty-one to sixty-eight is also susceptible to comparable performance issues.

Piece Description:

This work, composed by Vladislav Blazhevich and arranged by Frank D. Cofield, is a neoclassical composition accessible to less experienced ensembles, yet it remains challenging. It begins with a seven-measure fanfare that progresses through multiple chords before concluding on an Eb dominant seventh chord. Following a rest on beat two, the first trombone, the main melodic voice, has an anacrusis to measure eight. The melody is a lyrical eight-measure phrase that combines stepwise chromaticism with leaps of a perfect fourth; the second phrase begins on

the anacrusis to measure sixteen. After the initial two notes, the melody exhibits greater intervallic disjunction and concludes with a sequence of eighth notes (also angular). At measure sixteen, the bass trombone line also exhibits greater intervallic disjunction. The accompaniment during these sixteen measures is not a traditional waltz accompaniment featuring a long quarter note and two short staccato quarter notes; instead, the accompaniment in the majority of measures is two eighth notes and a quarter note followed by a rest. In certain instances, a quarter note replaces the rest. This section has a repeat at the end of measure twenty-three.

The style and texture change at the “Piu mosso” (m. 25), beginning with a homorhythmic texture comprised of continuous eighth notes. In measure twenty-nine, the new melody begins in the first and second trombones (they are in harmony, not unison). Its primary rhythmic configuration is a dotted quarter note followed by three eighth notes; this occurs in three consecutive measures. The third and fourth trombones have moving chromatic lines while this melodic line occurs, specifically underneath the dotted quarter notes. The homorhythmic eighth notes return at measure thirty-three. In measure thirty-seven, the texture continues but is reduced to the second and third trombones with sustained notes in the bass trombone. This section has a repeat after measure forty. The bass trombone performs the transition material independently in measures forty-three and forty-four.

In measure forty-five, a new melody begins in the first and second trombones, separated by a third. After the initial eight-measure phrase, in which the third and fourth trombones intermittently contribute, an ostinato occurs in the lower parts as the melody continues. In measure sixty-one, the texture shifts as the higher three parts provide the accompaniment, and the bass trombone becomes the primary melodic voice. The melody is primarily stepwise except for a leap of a perfect fifth at the beginning and end of this six-measure phrase. In measure sixty-

nine, the third trombone has the melody for four measures before the first and second trombones enter in measure seventy-two—the remaining four measures of this phrase diminuendo to an F major triad in measure seventy-six. From measure seventy-seven to the *D.C. al Fine* in measure ninety-two, the musical content from forty-five to sixty is restated. The *D.C. al Fine* requires the performers to return to the beginning, and the piece concludes on an Eb major triad in measure forty-two. Items to consider are articulation, balance and blend, and style.

Achieved is the Glorious Work – Franz Joseph Haydn/arr. Donald G. Miller

Composer: Franz Joseph Haydn (1732–1809)

Born in 1732, Franz Joseph Haydn, a member of the First Viennese School, emerged as a defining composer of the classical era. His style was defined by “its originality, diversity, craftsmanship, melodic simplicity, and engaging humor.”¹⁰⁰ Of his contributions, the most essential were the principle of thematic development and the integration of the popular or folk themes, which were integrally tied to the symphony and string quartet.¹⁰¹ In 1761, he went to work for the Esterhazy Court as a professional employee in Hungary.¹⁰² Prince Miklos became the head of the family in 1762 and supported Haydn’s artistic growth.¹⁰³ Between 1768 and 1774, Haydn’s music simultaneously matured and began receiving more recognition throughout the European continent.¹⁰⁴ During this time, he wrote the “Paris” Symphonies, a set of symphonies that have become standards of the genre. In 1790, Prince Miklos passed away, and his brother removed most of the musical staff; however, Haydn remained an employee and was able to pursue his passion projects.¹⁰⁵ Johann Peter Salomon commissioned six symphonies from him, which would become the “London” symphonies.¹⁰⁶ On his return to Vienna, he worked with Beethoven. His compositional output was prolific, including but not limited to over 100 symphonies, 80 string quartets, 35 piano trios, 50 piano sonatas, and 20 operas.¹⁰⁷ He died in 1809.

Arranger: Donald G. Miller (b. 1933)

¹⁰⁰ David Pountney, *Studying Music History: Learning, Reasoning, and Writing About Music History and Literature*, 2nd ed. (Prentice-Hall Inc, 1996) 120.

¹⁰¹ Ibid, 119-120.

¹⁰² H.C. Robbins Landon and Karl Geiringer, “Joseph Haydn,” in *Encyclopedia Britannica*, (Encyclopedia Britannica, Inc, 1994–), published July 20, 1998; last modified May 27, 2025, <https://www.britannica.com/biography/Joseph-Haydn>.

¹⁰³ Ibid.

¹⁰⁴ Ibid.

¹⁰⁵ Ibid.

¹⁰⁶ Ibid.

¹⁰⁷ Pountney, 120.

Born in 1933, Donald G. Miller is a trombonist who taught in the music department at the University at Buffalo from 1976 to 1988.¹⁰⁸ As a transcriber and arranger of older music, he also did a transcription of *Sonata a 4* for four trombones by Daniel Speer; there is limited information available about Miller's professional life.

Title: *Achieved is the Glorious Work* from *The Creation*, Hob XXI:2

Movements: One movement

The UIL Database contains this work.

Included in the NYSSMA Solo & Ensemble Catalog.

Duration: 3:00

Publisher: Ensemble Publications (Ithaca, NY)

Copyright Date: 1798/1965/2022

Copy Quality: Engraved

Availability: Available from numerous merchants; no digital download available

Difficulty: Intermediate (2)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones; bass trombone*

Overall Range: Ab2 (Optional Eb2) – Gb4

Trombone 1: Ab2 – Gb4

Trombone 2: Ab2 – F4

Trombone 3: Ab2 – Db4

Bass Trombone: Ab2 (Optional Eb2) – Db4

Clefs: Trombone 1 (bass); Trombone 2 (bass); Trombone 3 (bass); Bass Trombone (bass)

Mutes: N/A

¹⁰⁸ "Buffalo Musicians Results," Collections, Music Library, accessed February 25, 2025, <https://library2.buffalo.edu/music/collections/buffalo-musicians/results.html?lastname=m>.

Dedication: N/A

Publisher Overview/ Score Description:

Ensemble Publications

“Classical. Extracted from the Oratorio ‘The Creation.’ This work is one of our most popular trombone quartets.”¹⁰⁹

Technical Considerations: Articulation; Dynamics

Articulation – Miller includes a variety of articulation markings in this transcription; there are instances of staccato, legato, and accent markings, especially in the latter forty measures of the piece. Playing these as notated is essential for producing a compelling performance and genuine interpretation because it directly impacts the style. Also, some unmarked notes necessitate a specific articulation. The primary example of this occurs in the last four measures of the piece (m. 73-76). The ensemble should play these notes with length even though they are not marked tenuto.

Dynamics – While none of the dynamics are extreme (pianississimo (*ppp*) or fortississimo (*fff*)), there are many quick shifts in dynamic variation throughout the work, and Miller offers clear guidance. A key example of a sudden dynamic change is in measures forty-three and forty-four. The ensemble has forte eighth notes during the first three beats of measure forty-three, a rest on beat four, and a new line at a piano dynamic on the downbeat of measure forty-four. An example of explicit dynamic instructions is the music between Rehearsals F and H. The parts have a piano dynamic marking at different times, and the crescendo’s trajectory is carefully marked.

Piece Description:

¹⁰⁹ “Achieved is the Glorious Work,” Trombone Quartets, Ensemble Music, accessed February 24, 2025, <http://www.enspub.com/pages/04/04060.htm>.

This repertoire standard is an excellent composition for a wide range of performers and skill levels. The work begins with an ascending Ab major triad in all four parts. After this fanfare, the parts switch into harmony on the upbeat of beat two; the second and third parts continue with eighth and quarter notes, while the first and fourth parts have some sixteenth notes and a dotted quarter (first part) in addition to their quarters and eighths. In measure three, the third and fourth trombones have a homorhythmic line, and the first and second trombones have similar ideas; the bass trombone has an eighth note line on beats three and four of measure five. The next motive establishes the style and dynamic language for the rest of the work. The motive begins on the upbeat of beat three in measure six and concludes on the downbeat of measure seven at a forte dynamic; its echo occurs two counts later at a piano dynamic. At Rehearsal A, the bass trombone has the melody that dominates the rest of the piece (in all parts at least once). It is a dotted quarter note followed by five eighth notes in the first measure, a half note, dotted quarter note, and two sixteenth notes in the second measure, and either four quarter notes or a dotted quarter note, eighth note, and two eighth notes in the third measure. In the second measure, the standard countermelody begins in the second trombone. It occurs on the upbeat of beat one with three staccato eighth notes and two legato quarter notes. These two ideas occur contrapuntally in melodic, countermelodic, and harmonic roles.

At rehearsal C, they continue, but with a new motive appearing in the second trombone part. This motive contains two sixteenth notes on the upbeat of three and two eighth notes on beat four. Around rehearsal D, half notes become more prevalent in the second trombone part. In measure thirty-four, the original countermelody motive becomes the main idea, and the third trombone introduces a new one. Simultaneously, the dynamic shifts abruptly to mezzo piano. A measure before Rehearsal E, a crescendo begins in the top three parts (it begins in the next

measure in trombone four), and it reaches forte in the next measure. This section's most prominent musical idea is the octave job from Gb3 to Gb4 in the first trombone. In measure forty-four, a subito piano occurs in tandem with a homorhythmic line in the top three parts; the bass trombone enters in the next measure with a different line in opposition to the rest of the ensemble. In measure forty-eight, a crescendo happens across the ensemble with a whole note in the first trombone and a line that contains four eighth notes that drive to the downbeat in the bottom three parts. Five measures before Rehearsal G, the contrapuntal texture returns at a piano dynamic in preparation for the piece's climax at measures fifty-nine and sixty. The central idea of this dynamic ascension is the three eighth notes beginning on the upbeat and a half note, and it continues to the downbeat of measure sixty-seven. On beat two, the style changes to broad, legato quarter notes. The majestic quarter notes return in all four parts at fortissimo for a climactic concluding penultimate line in measure seventy-three. Items to consider are articulation and dynamic contrast.

Equale No. 3 – Felix Mendelssohn/arr. Gustave Wittmann and Glenn Smith

Composer: Felix Mendelssohn Bartholdy (1809–1847)

Born in 1809, Felix Mendelssohn was a Jewish German composer, pianist, conductor, and teacher.¹¹⁰ His family changed their surname to Bartholdy in 1816, a Protestant name, to navigate the growing antisemitism in Germany during the nineteenth century.¹¹¹ He was the first to conduct Bach's St. Matthew Passion, which inadvertently inaugurated the Bach revival of the 1800s.¹¹² He achieved great prominence in England owing to his music's refined style and distinctive qualities.¹¹³ Due to its lack of immutable romantic characteristics, much of his music was overshadowed by other composers such as Brahms, Wagner, Verdi, Liszt, and Berlioz;¹¹⁴ however, some of his most notable works are *Overture to A Midsummer Night's Dream* (1826), Symphony No. 5 in D major/ D minor "Reformation" (1830), Symphony No. 4 in A major "Italian" (1833), *St. Paul* (1836), Symphony No. 3 in A minor, Op. 56 "Scottish" (1842), *Violin Concerto* (1844), and *Elijah* (1846). He died in 1847.

Arranger(s):

Gustave Wittmann (1843–1920)

Born in 1843, Gustave Wittmann was a French conductor and composer.¹¹⁵ He arranged music from many composers including Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart, Ludwig van Beethoven, Gioachino Rossini, Carl Maria von Weber, Felix Mendelssohn Bartholdy, and Frédéric Chopin.¹¹⁶ He died in 1920.

¹¹⁰ Edward Lockspeiser, "Felix Mendelssohn" in *Encyclopedia Britannica* (Encyclopedia Britannica, Inc., 1994–), published July 20, 1998; last modified June 4, 2025, <https://www.britannica.com/biography/Felix-Mendelssohn>.

¹¹¹ Ibid.

¹¹² Ibid.

¹¹³ Ibid.

¹¹⁴ Ibid.

¹¹⁵ "Wittmann, Gustave/Arranger," International Music Score Library Project, accessed April 24, 2025, https://imslp.org/wiki/Category:Wittmann,_Gustave/Arranger.

¹¹⁶ "Gustave Wittmann (1843 – 1920)," Authors, BnF Data, accessed April 24, 2025, <https://data.bnf.fr/en/ark:/12148/cb148436814>.

Glenn Smith (1912–1997)

Born in 1912, Glenn Smith was the instructor of trombone, euphonium, and tuba at the University of Michigan from 1950–1981.¹¹⁷ During his tenure, he founded and conducted the University of Michigan Trombone Choir.¹¹⁸ In addition to his teaching, he published approximately thirty editions of solo and ensemble literature for brass instruments.¹¹⁹ *Annie Laurie* by Arthur Pryor (1895, arr. 1958) and *Canzona*, Op. 8, no. 3 by Biagio Marini (1626, arr. 1965) represent two of his popular arrangements or editions, some of which were published under the name Glenn P. Smith and others under Glenn Smith. He died in 1997.

Title: *Equale No. 3*

Movements: One Movement

The UIL Database contains two versions of this piece. This analysis is of the one arranged by Glenn Smith.

Included in the NYSSMA Solo & Ensemble Catalog.

Duration: 6:00

Publisher: LudwigMasters Publications owned by Keiser Publications, INC (St. Louis, MO)

Copyright Date: 1967/1995

Copy Quality: Engraved

Availability: Available from numerous merchants; no digital download available

Difficulty: Intermediate (2)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones; bass trombone* (* is dependent on if the optional low notes are played – a bass trombone could be required)

¹¹⁷ “Music Prof. Emeritus Glenn Smith died June 16,” University of Michigan News, last modified July 10, 1997, <https://news.umich.edu/music-prof-emeritus-glenn-smith-died-june-16/>.

¹¹⁸ Ibid.

¹¹⁹ “Glenn P. Smith 1912-1917,” Trombone Page of the World, last modified October 14, 2020. http://www.trombone-usa.com/smith_glenn_bio.htm.

Overall Range: F2 (optional C2) – Bb4

Trombone 1: F3 – Bb4

Trombone 2: F3 – F4

Trombone 3: C3 – D4

Bass Trombone: F2 (optional C2) – C4

Clefs: Trombone 1 (bass); Trombone 2 (bass); Trombone 3 (bass); Bass Trombone (bass)

Mutes: N/A

Dedication: N/A

Publisher Overview/Score Description: N/A

Technical Considerations: Articulation; Intonation; Key Signature

Articulation – Smith provides specific instructions for articulation since at least half the notes in this work have an articulation marking. The primary articulations in this piece are slur, staccato, and accent. The slurred notes primarily occur in the “A” sections, some of which occur in measures forty-nine through fifty-one of the “B” section. Keeping these lines smooth through a mixture of legato tongue and natural slurs while avoiding glissandi is crucial. The staccato markings occur exclusively in the first two phrases of the “B” section. Keeping these notes light and buoyant rather than dry and short will enhance phrasing opportunities. Accented notes frequently occur in both sections; keeping them consistent throughout the piece is vital. The primary challenge for articulation is the presence of hybrid articulation in measures three and nineteen, specifically a slur combined with staccato markings. The key to playing these accurately is to balance the slur’s length with the staccato’s separation; the articulation should

maintain separation while preserving the note's value. Overall, making clear distinctions between all these markings will enhance any performance.

Intonation – Since this work is a Romantic-era composition, the functional harmony remains tonal even though more chromatic chords are possible. As with any work, intonation within moving lines is an essential component of the piece; however, this work contains six fermatas (five in the “A” section and one in the “B” section), where intonation issues are more prone to audience recognition. Each ensemble member must recognize the tendency of their pitch within each chord. The fermata chords' tonal centers (C, Db, G, and F) and qualities (major, dominant seventh, and secondary dominants) vary, requiring varied tuning needs and the corresponding adjustments. Employing these chords as reference points for the rest of the work will greatly enhance the ensemble's tonal cohesion.

Key Signature – The two sections in this work have two key signatures. The “A” sections are in F major, and the “B” section is in Db major. Incorrect notes and inconsistent intonation may arise owing to the shift to a key signature with four additional flats in the “B” section.

Piece Description:

This work by Felix Mendelssohn (arranged by Gustave Wittman and Glenn P. Smith) is accessible to less-experienced ensembles yet remains challenging. While the bass trombone is not required, utilizing its timbre and access to notes below the staff could greatly enhance the work's richness and the ensemble's overall sound. It has an ABA form via a *D.C. al Fine* and begins with a homorhythmic texture featuring a legato style marked “Cantabile.” The opening eight-measure phrase employs a combination of slurs and hybrid staccato-slur markings. It starts

with an F major triad in root position on the anacrusis to measure one. The bass trombone line contains minimal note variety through note repetition (F2 and C3). The top three parts play a line consisting of stepwise motion, skips, and leaps; articulation variety, including a hybrid, is also present. At the anacrusis to measure nine, the third and fourth trombones initiate a chain of staggered entrances. The second trombone enters in measure nine, and the first trombone enters in measure ten. This motive culminates with a homorhythmic texture in measure eleven within a sforzando piano crescendo, foreshadowing the “B” section. The next phrase, which follows a second fermata on a G dominant seventh chord in first inversion, returns to the “cantabile” style. The ensemble moves in contrary motion; the first and second trombones descend, while the third and fourth trombones ascend. In the following measure, the third and fourth trombones begin descending. A third fermata occurs on an F major triad in measure sixteen. After two measures, a fourth fermata occurs on a C major triad. The new phrase begins with a C dominant seventh chord on beat four of measure eighteen, following a breath mark. The phrase quickly transitions to the hybrid articulation from measure three as the opening material returns, though slightly varied. In measure twenty-four, the third and fourth trombones initiate another chain of staggered entrances, and a marcato style emerges. In measure twenty-eight, a fifth fermata on a C dominant seventh chord in third inversion interrupts the piece’s momentum. The remaining eight measures of the “A” section begin in measure twenty-nine (the only Bb4 occurs in the first trombone here), combining elements of the legato and marcato styles.

The “B” section begins in measure thirty-six after a fermata on an F major triad in measure thirty-five. The tempo increases by almost forty beats per minute, the style becomes a quasi-fanfare, and the articulation becomes increasingly accented and staccato. The first four measures divide the ensemble into two duos. The first duo contains the first and second

trombones, which play accented quarter notes and sustained notes a major third apart. The second duo contains the third and fourth trombones, which play an eighth note line an octave apart. The rest of the section (sixteen measures) features a homorhythmic texture except for two measures in the bass trombone (measures forty-two and forty-three). The primary rhythm in the first eight measures is the dotted eighth-sixteenth that continues the fanfare idea in a march-like style; rhythmic cells of four eighth notes intermittently occur in all four parts. The second eight-measure phrase, which concludes with a fermata on a Db major triad, emphasizes accented and slurred quarter notes across the ensemble; these quarter notes are primarily in stepwise motion, ascending and descending. Subsequently, the music returns to the beginning and continues until measure thirty-five, which is marked *fine*. Key considerations include articulation, dynamics, intonation, key signature, and style.

Scarborough Fair – Traditional/arr. Bill Reichenbach

Composer: Traditional

Scarborough Fair is a traditional English ballad with numerous versions;¹²⁰ it also shares similarities to the Scandinavian folk song “The Elfin Knight.”¹²¹ It was popularized by the folk-rock duo Simon & Garfunkel in 1968.

Arranger: Bill Reichenbach (b. 1949)

Born in 1949, Bill Reichenbach is primarily a bass trombonist who studied with Emory Remington at Eastman.¹²² He has played on at least one thousand recordings and six hundred movies;¹²³ he also released a solo album in 1997. Another arrangement of “Scarborough Fair” by Reichenbach is *Back to the Fair* for trombone sextet.

Title: *Scarborough Fair*

Movements: One Movement

The UIL database contains this work.

Included in the NYSSMA Solo & Ensemble Catalog.

Duration: 3:00

Publisher: Virgo Music Publishers (Birmingham, England)

Copyright Date: 1986

Copy Quality: Engraved

Availability: Available from numerous merchants; no digital download (not to be confused with *Back to the Fair* by Bill Reichenbach)

¹²⁰ Martin Carthy, “The Elfin Knight/ Scarborough Fair/ Whittingham Fair/ Rosemary Lane,” *Mainly Norfolk: English Folk and Other Good Music*, last modified January 19, 2025, <https://mainlynorfolk.info/martin.carthy/songs/theelfinknight.html>.

¹²¹ Frank Kidson, *Traditional Tunes: A Collection of Ballad Airs* (Oxford: Charles Taphouse and Son, 1891), 42.

¹²² Bill Reichenbach, “Bill Reichenbach’s Bio,” *Billreichenbach.com*, accessed February 6, 2025, <https://www.billreichenbach.com/bill-reichenbachs-bio/>.

¹²³ Ibid.

Difficulty: Intermediate (2)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones; bass trombone*

Overall Range: D2 – A4

Trombone 1: F3 – A4

Trombone 2: D3 – F4

Trombone 3: A2 – F4

Bass Trombone: D2 – G4

Clefs: Trombone 1 (bass); Trombone 2 (bass); Trombone 3 (bass); Bass Trombone (bass);

Treble clef also provided for parts one through three

Mutes: N/A

Dedication: N/A

Publisher Overview/Description(s) in Literature:

Virgo Music Publishers

“Simple, easy to play. Parts in both bass clef and Bb treble clef.”¹²⁴

Technical Considerations: Dynamic Contrast; Legato Playing

Dynamic Contrast – In this arrangement, most of the dynamic spectrum receives representation, spanning from pianississimo to fortissimo. Despite the large dynamic range, changes occur slowly throughout the piece; the quickest change occurs in the final section where the music moves from fortissimo to pianissimo over the course of nine measures. Other dynamic ideas to consider are the true differences between pianissimo, piano, and mezzo piano because these three levels reign supreme in the first nineteen measures; contrast is imperative. Finally, Reichenbach provides some dynamic

¹²⁴ “Scarborough Fair (arr. Bill Reichenbach) for Trombone Quartet,” Products, Virgo Music Publishers, last modified 2023, <https://www.virgomusicpublishers.com/shop/scarborough-fair-arr-bill-reichenbach-vo09/>.

instruction via a few crescendos and decrescendos, but it could be very easy to interpret these lines as terrace dynamics with little direction in between.

Legato Playing – Due to this being an arrangement of a folk song, most of the lines in all four parts are slurred. This kind of piece requires significant attention to detail concerning legato playing. It is essential to avoid glissandi or detached notes. A nice balance of natural slurs and legato tongue to create a connected line should be the goal; I recommend abstaining from using legato tongue, when possible, to produce a cleaner slur. Legato tongue yields a higher percentage of consistency, while the natural slurs produce a more seamless sound. Make a choice and be consistent with its application.

The section of the piece where this could present the most problems is Rehearsal A.

Piece Description:

Bill Reichenbach's arrangement of this traditional English folk song is an essential part of the repertoire; it roughly breaks down into three sections which do not produce a standard form. The piece begins with the main melody in unison for the first three trombone parts, and the bass trombone (trombone four) an octave below. In measure five, the first trombone assumes the melody, while the bass trombone plays a duet line. These lines then rest on several dotted half notes and give way to scattered attacks that utilize the entire ensemble but center around trombones two and three. When combined, the parts create a palindrome that places attacks on every eighth note of the measure. The first section closes with the first and third trombones in contrary motion and an ostinato-like line in the third and bass trombones; a perfect fifth separates these two lines (they occur in parallel motion) and presents an opportune moment for focused intonation.

In the second section, which begins at Rehearsal A, the melody occurs in the bass trombone and the harmony in the third trombone. The perfect fifth is still the dominating interval, but major/minor sixths and thirds also occur. The first and second trombone parts take on an accompaniment role that mimics the bass trombone part at the end of section one. Still, neither part repeats the same note pattern, nor are the intervals exclusively perfect fifths. This material grows to a small climax in the eighth measure of Rehearsal A, which eventually resolves on an A minor seventh chord four before B. The dynamics become softer and appear as a false ending.

At Rehearsal B, the third section and the work's climax, the ensemble plays a harmonized version of the main theme at a forte dynamic; it is initiated by a two-count anacrusis in the first trombone. The melody is in the first trombone part again, while the other three parts provide moving notes underneath for support. For example, the fourth measure of B includes an ascending scalar line in the third trombone, while the other parts hold a dotted half note tied across the bar line. There is a marked *ritardando* in the tenth measure of Rehearsal B that coincides with a quick *diminuendo*; it allows for the ensemble to come to rest on two unison D3s in the middle parts and octaves between the outer two voices (G2 and G4). Items to consider in this work are style (specifically legato playing), dynamics, and tone quality/color.

Adagio from Symphony No. 3 – Camille Saint-Saëns/arr. Kenneth Murley

Composer: Camille Saint-Saëns (1835–1921)

Born in 1835, Camille Saint-Saëns was a French composer known primarily for *Samson et Dalila*—an opera containing orientalism in the Bacchanale—and Symphony No. 3 in C Minor, commonly referred to as the Organ Symphony. Following the Franco-Prussian War (1870-1871), which resulted in a French defeat, French nationalism divided music into two schools.¹²⁵ The first, led by Cesar Frank (1822-1890), maintained allegiance to the German tradition, attempting to write a superior form of German music;¹²⁶ the symphony in this circle carried spiritual significance and often contained cyclical writing.¹²⁷ The second, led by Saint-Saëns, emphasized the spectacular over the spiritual when composing various genres;¹²⁸ symphonies in this style often contained thematic transformation as a unifying technique.¹²⁹ His sole composition for solo trombone was *Cavatine for Trombone and Piano* (1915), which he wrote for the Paris Conservatory. He died in 1921.

Arranger: Kenneth Murley (1931–2014)

Born in 1931, Kenneth Murley received his B.M. in 1959 and M.M. in 1961 from Eastman School of Music after serving in the U.S. Navy during the Korean War.¹³⁰ Upon graduating, he won the Benjamin Award in composition.¹³¹ He moved to Toccoa, Georgia upon accepting a position in the Toccoa Fellas College Music Department.¹³² Murley arranged and composed works for the college and the Toccoa Symphony.¹³³ He died in 2014.

¹²⁵ Martin Nedbal, “The French Symphony,” Musicology 767: The History of the Symphony (class lecture, University of Kansas, Lawrence, KS, April 2, 2021).

¹²⁶ Ibid.

¹²⁷ Ibid.

¹²⁸ Ibid.

¹²⁹ Ibid.

¹³⁰ “Kenneth Murley Obituary,” Whitlock Mortuary, Inc., last modified February 9, 2014, <https://www.legacy.com/us/obituaries/name/kenneth-murley-obituary?pid=179183889>.

¹³¹ Ibid.

¹³² Ibid.

¹³³ Ibid.

Title: *Adagio* from Symphony No. 3

Movements: One Movement

The UIL Database contains this work.

Duration: 5:00

Publisher: Ensemble Publications (Ithaca, NY)

Copyright Date: 1886/1959/2022

Copy Quality: Engraved

Availability: Available from Hickeys Music; no digital download available

Difficulty: Intermediate (2)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones; bass trombone

Overall Range: Ab1 – Bb4

Trombone 1: Eb3 – Bb4

Trombone 2: Eb3 – Bb4

Trombone 3: Ab2 – Eb4

Bass Trombone: Ab1 – Fb3

Clefs: Trombone 1 (bass); Trombone 2 (bass); Trombone 3 (bass); Bass Trombone (bass)

*Tenor clef parts are provided for trombones one and two

Mutes: N/A

Dedication: N/A

Publisher Overview/Score Description:

Hickey's Music Center

“Romantic. Popular trombone quartet setting of the well-known chorale from the 3rd symphony (subtitled “organ”). Playable by groups of all skill levels. Score and parts included. Clefs are TTBB or BBBB.”¹³⁴

Ensemble Publications

“Romantic period. Popular adagio section from the Organs Symphony, here rendered for trombone quartet. Playable by groups of all skills levels. Recorded by the Eastman Trombone Quartet on their CD, Legacy of Emory Remington. Clefs are TTBB or BBBB.”¹³⁵

Technical Considerations: Endurance; Ensemble Playing; Intonation

Endurance – Except for the first two measures—the two measures preceding Rehearsals A and B—each part plays in each measure of the piece. Additionally, the tempo for this work is slow (even though a specific metronomic marking is not present or provided). Tessitura also is a factor; it has the most bearing on the first trombone part, especially from measure forty-two to the piece's conclusion.

Ensemble Playing – Breathing in musically appropriate spots is the primary concern for ensemble in this work; lining up the parts does not present an immediate challenge due its homophonic nature. The ensemble should coordinate their breaths to effectively stagger breathe. Also, the poco accelerando at Rehearsal B should not move too fast, but instead provide the music with some forward motion.

Intonation – Due to sustained notes at a slow tempo, intonation is crucial for performing this work. Most of the harmonies are triadic (either major or minor), so it is imperative

¹³⁴ “Saint-Saens, Camille (Murley) Adagio, from Symphony No. 3 [Organ Symphony],” Trombone Quartets, Hickeys.com, accessed March 4, 2025, <https://www.hickeys.com/search/products/sku011985.php>.

¹³⁵ “Adagio from Symphony No. 3,” Trombone Quartets, Ensemble Music, accessed March 4, 2025, <http://www.enspub.com/pages/04/04070.htm>.

that each member of the ensemble understand their role within the chord. Additionally, the ensemble plays a fully diminished seventh chord in measures eleven, twenty-five, and fifty.

Piece Description:

This arrangement by Kenneth Murley of the well-known trombone excerpt from Saint-Saëns' Symphony No. 3 in C Minor, also called the "Organ" Symphony, is an essential part of the repertoire. It provides the ensemble with challenges such as dynamic contrast, endurance, ensemble playing, and intonation. The work begins with an Ab2 in trombone three and an Ab3 in trombone two in the next measure. In measure three, the bass trombone enters on beat one, establishing a Db major triad with trombones two and three. The first trombone enters on beat two with the excerpt melody, an octave higher than the original excerpt. The melody largely transpires over the top of the sustained notes, but more active accompaniment lines begin in measures six (third trombone) and seven (second trombone). In measures eight and nine, the harmony moves beat by beat via quarter-note motion, which builds up to the first noticeable climax. In measure eleven, the whole ensemble plays an ascending quarter note line in tandem with a crescendo; however, the following measure contains a subito piano dynamic, requiring the first trombone to play a soft yet controlled Bb4. Over the subsequent measures, more sustained notes occur underneath a descending eighth note line. On the anacrusis to measure fifteen, the second trombone has a descending quarter note line that outlines a Db major triad in first inversion; a descending stepwise motion in octaves between the first and fourth trombones follows. At Rehearsal A, the music resets with a restatement of the melody. The first and second trombones switch roles, while the third and fourth trombones play the same material in the melody's opening statement. The same ascending line with crescendo and subito piano occurs

throughout the ensemble in measures twenty-five and twenty-six, with the second trombone providing the descending eighth note line. This time, the first trombone plays the descending triad, and the bass trombone plays the unison with the second trombone. At Rehearsal B, the third trombone establishes a *poco accelerando*, with an ascending Ab major triad over sustained notes in the other three parts. The second trombone continues the arpeggio line in measures thirty-three and thirty-four with an outlined F minor seventh chord, and the first trombone concludes the arpeggio line with an outlined Bb major seventh chord. A syncopated line ensues, and the first ending lacks harmonic resolution. The second ending provides a stronger sense of resolution through a pedal Ab on beats three and four of measure forty-one in the bass trombone. The opening iteration of the melody reappears in measure forty-two, serving as a quasi-recapitulation. The main difference is that the crescendo associated with the ascending line leads to a forte dynamic instead of a subito piano dynamic in measure fifty-one; the work ends on a Db major triad.

Suite of Lieder for Four Trombones – Franz Schubert/arr. Lewis Rowell

Composer: Franz Schubert (1797–1828)

Born in 1797, Franz Schubert is one of the most prolific and important composers in the history of Western music whose fame primarily came from his music's quality rather than notoriety.¹³⁶ He is often associated with legitimizing the Lied genre.¹³⁷ His style is a masterful blend of lyrical melodies and expressive harmony. Poultney wrote, regarding his skillful use of harmony, that "His expanded harmonic vocabulary within a key is complemented by an extended range of relationships among keys, and his music is especially rich in bi-modal allusions and mediant relationships."¹³⁸ Among his most famous song cycles are *Die schöne Müllerin* (1823), *Winterreise* (1827), and *Schwanengesang* (1828). He died in 1828.

Arranger: Lewis Rowell (b. 1933)

Born in 1933, Lewis Rowell received both his B.M. (1955) and Ph.D. in Philosophy of Music (1958) from the Eastman School of Music at the University of Rochester.¹³⁹ He has taught musicology and ethnomusicology at the Jacobs School of Music, Indiana University, since 1993.¹⁴⁰ Before this appointment, he served as a faculty research lecturer at IU.¹⁴¹ A prolific writer, he has written books such as *Thinking About Music: An Introduction to the Philosophy of Music* (1984) and *Music and Musical Thought in Early India* (1992). For the latter book, he received the Otto Kinkeldey Award from the American Musicological Society and was named

¹³⁶ Poultney, 154.

¹³⁷ Ibid, 154.

¹³⁸ Ibid, 154.

¹³⁹ "Lewis Rowell," Faculty, Jacobs School of Music, Indiana University Bloomington, accessed April 21, 2025,

<https://music.indiana.edu/faculty/emeritus/rowell-lewis-e.html>.

¹⁴⁰ "Lewis Rowell," Authors, Angkor Database, accessed April 21, 2025, <https://angkordatabase.asia/authors/lewis-rowell>.

¹⁴¹ Ibid.

the distinguished faculty research lecturer at IU in 1993.¹⁴² In 1999, he received the Rochester Distinguished Scholar Medal from the University of Rochester.¹⁴³

Title: *Suite of Lieder for Four Trombones*

Movements: Three Movements

1. Lob der Einsamkeit – Mod^{lo}
2. Grab und Mond – Adagio
3. Widerspruch - All^o

Included in the NYSSMA Solo & Ensemble Catalog.

Duration: 6:00

Publisher: Ensemble Publications (Ithaca, NY)

Copyright Date: 1961

Copy Quality: Parts (engraved); Score (Manuscript)

Availability: Available from numerous merchants; no digital download available

Difficulty: Intermediate (2)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones; bass trombone*

Overall Range: D2 – A4

Trombone 1: C#3 – A4

Trombone 2: C#3 – G#4

Trombone 3: D2 – D4

Bass Trombone: D2 – D4

Clefs: Trombone 1 (bass); Trombone 2 (bass); Trombone 3 (bass); Bass Trombone (bass)

Mutes: N/A

¹⁴² Indiana University Bloomington, “Lewis Rowell.”

¹⁴³ Ibid.

Dedication: N/A

Publisher Overview/Score Description:

Ensemble Publications

“Romantic period. Collection of three men’s chorus works were arranged for trombones quartet. All parts are bass clef. Includes Lob der Einsamkeit: Grab und Mond; Widerspruch.”¹⁴⁴

Technical Considerations: Articulation; Intonation; Ornamentation

Articulation – Apart from accents on four downbeats of movement one, as well as five accent markings and seven tenuto markings in movement two, articulation is of primary importance in movement three. The two primary articulations in the opening section are accent and staccato. The two-measure pattern is two staccato eighth notes that follow a quarter note in the first measure and an accented dotted eighth note followed by a staccato sixteenth and quarter notes. These staccato notes should not be so short that the tone is indiscernible. Additionally, there is a hybrid articulation in measures eight and nine, consisting of an accent and a slur. This accented slur should produce weight on the downbeat while maintaining a legato style.

Intonation – Schubert was known for his expressive harmony, which expanded into distantly related key centers through mediant and submediant relationships. The work features complex, functional chords throughout. Examples include G# diminished seventh chord (measure two of movement two), Fb half-diminished seventh chord (measure twenty-one of movement two), and a Cb major triad (measure forty of movement two). Additionally, movement one also has traditional functional harmony via

¹⁴⁴ “Suite of Lieder,” Trombone Quartets, Ensemble Publications, accessed April 21, 2025, <http://www.enspub.com/pages/04/04100.htm>.

the cadential 6/4 chords. Finally, the ensemble has numerous passages in unison or octaves. The most significant phrase that contains this harmonic configuration lasts from measure forty-five to sixty-eight in movement three. Balance and blend will be critical because no part should dominate the ensemble's sound.

Ornamentation – There are two types of ornamentation in this work. The first type is the grace note, which occurs multiple times during the first movement in all four parts. They occur in measures one and five. The occurrence in measure one has the ensemble moving from A to G (either A3 to G3 or A2 to G2), while the second occurrence in measure five has the ensemble move from C to Bb (C4 to Bb3 or C3 to Bb2). The tempo is moderately paced, so this provides a suitable introduction to grace notes. The second type is a thirty-second note rhythm on the upbeat of one found in movement two. This figure functions as an ornament because it lacks structural or stylistic importance to the movement; it acts as an embellishment. The first occurrence is in measure nine in the upper two trombone parts. The first trombone descends from D4 to B3 (the B3 repeats), while the second trombone descends from B3 to G3 via chromatic passing tones. The second occurrence is present in measure thirteen in the outer two voices. They move in contrary motion as the first trombone descends from D4 to B3, and the bass trombone ascends from B2 to D3.

Piece Description:

This compilation of Schubert's Lieder, transcribed by Lewis Rowell, is a distinguished example of accessible quality literature; it also serves as an effective introduction to Romantic music for younger students. The first movement, "Lob der Einsamkeit," opens with the ensemble in unison octaves; the third and fourth trombones begin on Bb2, and the first and second trombones begin on Bb3. In measure four, the ensemble transitions to harmony with a Bb major

triad in second inversion (functioning as a cadential 6/4 chord). On beat two of the same measure, the harmony transitions to an F dominant seventh before resolving to a Bb major triad in root position (minus the fifth). The unison octaves return in measure six, a minor third higher. In measure seven, the ensemble transitions to harmony again with a Db major triad in second inversion. Like its predecessor, it is a cadential 6/4 as it moves to an Ab dominant seventh chord that resolves to a Db major triad in root position (minus the fifth) in measure eight. The subsequent four measures consist of a mostly homorhythmic texture in harmony. The only deviations are three eighth notes in the first trombone (m. 9), two sixteenth notes in the bass trombone (m. 9), and a dotted-eighth-sixteenth-eighth in the second and third trombones (m. 11). In measure twelve, the music pauses on a D major fermata, serving as a middle point of the movement. The unison octaves return on the anacrusis to measure thirteen with a statement identical to the opening. The main difference is that when the ensemble transitions to harmony, the established chordal pattern does not occur; instead, the outer voices play repeated D3s (Bass) and D4s (first), and the second and third trombones play stepwise descending notes. The chord it resolves to is a G major triad in root position. The unison octaves return for a final time, ultimately moving to a D dominant seventh chord that resolves to an E minor triad in second version, which allows the movement to conclude with a G major triad. Elements requiring attention include intonation and ornamentation.

The second movement, “Grab und Mond,” begins on an A minor triad in first inversion on beat one, which transitions to eight notes beginning on the upbeat of beat two. The texture is homorhythmic and harmonically develops through chords such as a G# diminished seventh chord (m. 2) before returning to A minor and resolving on an E major triad fermata in measure eight. The second phrase begins with a figure across the ensemble that creates a B diminished

triad in first inversion. It remains primarily homorhythmic, with the only deviations being thirty-second notes in the first and second trombones (m. 9) and the first and fourth trombones (m. 13). While these ornamental rhythmic flourishes occur, the other parts provide quarter notes. In measure sixteen, there is a fermata over a rest on beat three. The subsequent four measures divide the ensemble into duos as the first and third trombones play octaves Cs (C3 and C4), and the second and fourth trombones play octaves Abs, Bbs, and Gs (Ab2 and Ab3; Bb2 and Bb3; G2 and G3). The next chord is an Fb half-diminished seventh chord that resolves to an Eb major triad fermata. Following a double bar line, the new section begins with an Ab minor triad. The texture continues to remain homorhythmic, with minimal variation. The most notable variation occurs in measure twenty-nine, where the bass trombone plays a dotted quarter note and eighth note instead of a half note, and the upper two parts play a dotted eighth-sixteenth instead of a quarter note. Other deviations include two sixteenth notes instead of an eighth note in the upper parts in measure thirty-one. The phrase concludes in measure thirty-six with an Eb dominant seventh at a fortissimo dynamic level. The next two measures resolve to a Cb major triad, followed by a caesura. The final five chords move from a D minor triad to a unison octave E (E2; E3), an E major triad, and conclude with an A major triad. Elements requiring attention include dynamics, intonation, and ornamentation.

The third movement, “Widerspruch,” is in an ABA form resulting from its *D.S. al Fine*. Like the previous movements, it is homorhythmic (both in unison and harmony) throughout. The opening section consists of two motives and two articulations. The first motive is a quarter note followed by two eighth notes. The quarter note has no specific articulation marking, while the eighth notes have a staccato specification. The second motive is a dotted eighth sixteenth followed by a quarter note. The dotted eighth note has an accent, while the sixteenth and quarter

notes have staccato markings. This pattern is consistent except for measures eight through eleven, where the articulation switches to a hybrid marking, and the rhythmic pattern becomes predominantly eighth note based. The established pattern returns in measure twelve, but the articulation markings are absent because the musical content becomes more arpeggiated. In measure twenty-one, the ensemble plays unison octaves as the upper two parts play the same material as the lower two parts but an octave higher (trombones one and two play A3, and trombones three and four play A2). This texture lasts four measures before the parts gradually shift to harmony. In measure twenty-nine, an ensemble-wide crescendo begins with a Bb major triad. The upper two voices have moving lines that often traverse a third, while the lower two parts have a repeated pitch (primarily A3 and A2) on a repeated pattern (the pattern from the opening section). When combined, these two elements produce a sense of growth in dynamic intensity that leads to a D major triad fermata. The “B” section begins after a measure of rest and a double bar line. The style changes to legato, the pitch content is unison, and the texture remains homorhythmic. Starting at a pianissimo dynamic level, this texture lasts twenty-four measures before transitioning into harmony during a crescendo in preparation for the *D.S. al Fine*. The music returns to the sign in measure twelve and continues until the resolution to the aforementioned D major triad. Elements requiring attention are articulation, dynamics, and intonation. This work’s approximate duration is six minutes.

A Kensington Portrait for Trombone Quartet – Jared Spears

Composer: Jared Spears (b. 1936)

Born in 1936, Jared Spears received a B.S.E. in music education from Northern Illinois University, a B.M. and M.M in percussion from the Cosmopolitan School of Music, and a D.M. in composition from Northwestern University.¹⁴⁵ In his thirty-two years of teaching, he taught students of all ages (elementary to collegiate); his collegiate teaching occurred at Arkansas State University from which he retired in 1999.¹⁴⁶ Spears currently has over 250 compositions for band, choir, orchestra, and chamber ensembles.¹⁴⁷

Arranger: N/A

Title: *A Kensington Portrait for Trombone Quartet*

Movements: One Movement

Included in the NYSSMA Solo & Ensemble Catalog.

Duration: 4:30

Publisher: Grand Mes Music Publishers (Grand Junction, CO)

Copyright Date: 1997

Copy Quality: Engraved

Availability: Available from several merchants; no digital download available

Difficulty: Intermediate (2)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones; bass trombone*

Overall Range: F2 – Gb4

Trombone 1: Bb2 – Gb4

¹⁴⁵ “Jared Spears,” Our Composers, C.L. Barnhouse Company, accessed February 10, 2025, <https://barnhouse.com/composer/jared-spears/>.

¹⁴⁶ “Dr. Jared Spears,” Authors, Alfred Music, last modified 2025, <https://www.alfred.com/authors/dr-jared-spears/>.

¹⁴⁷ “Jared Spears,” Our Composers, C.L. Barnhouse Company, accessed February 10, 2025.

Trombone 2: Ab₂ – F₄

Trombone 3: F₂ – D₄

Bass Trombone: F₂ – G₃

Clefs: Trombone 1 (bass); Trombone 2 (bass); Trombone 3 (bass); Bass Trombone (bass)

Mutes: N/A

Dedication: Dr. Neale Bartee and the Arkansas State University Trombone Choir

Publisher Overview/Score Description:

Grand Mesa Music

“Exciting neo-classical work descriptive of the Kensington Castle in England.”¹⁴⁸

Technical Considerations: Mixed Meter; Rhythm

Mixed Meter – This work contains meter changes suitable for younger players. The

“Andante Maestoso” has three 2/4 measures and one 5/4 measure. The 3/4 occurs in measures sixteen, twenty-three, eighty-four, and ninety-one; the 5/4 occurs in measure ninety-two. The “Allegro” section has six 3/4 measures and one 5/4 measure. The 3/4 occurs in measures forty-four, forty-six, fifty-nine, sixty-one, one hundred one, and one hundred two; the 5/4 occurs in measure seventy-four.

Rhythm – The rhythms used by the composer to construct this work are generally sight-readable, but one phrase in both “Andante Maestoso” sections could be cause for rhythm inaccuracies. It features syncopation that utilizes sixteenth notes on the beat and quarter notes off the beat. The first is from measures twenty through twenty-three, and the second is from measures eighty-eight through ninety-one.

Piece Description:

¹⁴⁸ “A Kensington Portrait,” Solo and Ensemble, Grand Mesa Music Publishers, last modified 2025, https://www.grandmesamusic.com/component/musicpublisher/song_view/523.

This work by Jared Spears provides a great opportunity for growth for a developing ensemble; its form is ABA with a coda. The opening section, "Andante Maestoso," is a fanfare. It begins in unison across the ensemble for a central motive of the section containing F3, C3, and F3 at a forte dynamic level. In the next measure, the top two parts play Bb3, allowing for a descending line, and the bottom two play D3, allowing for an ascending line; a unison G3 resolves this contrary motion. Measure four has a forte-piano attack followed by a crescendo in parts two through four—a restatement of this four-measure phrase with some slight differences in measures five through eight. The style changes to legato in measure nine, and the first trombone rests. The second and third trombones play lines that oscillate between a small collection of notes, and the bass trombone plays four C3s in a row before a descending bass line that sets up the first trombone entrance in measure eleven. This measure contains a line that harmonizes the top three parts while ascending via major and minor triads. The next four-measure phrase develops the legato content from measures nine and ten but staggers the parts by three counts and features a one-measure meter change to 2/4 time. Accented notes return in measure seventeen with a crescendo to arrive at a forte dynamic level in measure eighteen. This dynamic lasts eight measures as the rhythms become more complex (sixteenth notes and syncopation), including sixteenth notes and syncopation.

The second section, "Allegro," starts at measure twenty-eight. The tempo increases by almost fifty beats per minute and begins with the second and fourth trombones. The bass trombone part stays the same rhythmic pattern (an alternating pattern where either a quarter or two eighth notes follow a dotted half note) for fifteen measures, with the only variations occurring in the pitches utilized. The three combinations include (a) A2, D3, and C3; (b) C3, D3, and Eb3; (c) C3, F3, and Eb3. The second trombone part plays the two-measure motor rhythm

(measure one contains two eighth notes on the upbeats of one and two and a half note; measure two contains the same idea on beats one and two and four eighth notes on beats three and four). The third trombone often rests and lines up with the second or fourths when active. The melody enters in the fifth measure of the “allegro” section, initially borrowing the rhythmic figure from the second trombone part but using a descending diatonic scale to the next downbeat. The next measure subverts expectations by starting the melody on beat two instead of beat one. At measure forty-seven, the third trombone takes over the established motor rhythm, and the second trombone plays a constant stream of eighth notes with accents on beat one and the upbeat of beat two; the first and bass trombones alternate quarter-note-heavy melodies. The primary homorhythmic section occurs in measure sixty-three, including a quarter-note triplet in all parts in measure seventy.

The second “Andante Maestoso” begins in measures seventy-five after the only 5/4 measure in the work concludes the “Allegro.” It lasts eighteen measures and resembles the opening section outside a *molto ritardando* in measure ninety-two. The “Allegro” returns in measure ninety-four, and the piece ends on an exciting note with a unison Bb2 throughout the ensemble. Items to consider in this work are meter changes, syncopation, tempo, and balance.

Sonata à 4 – Daniel Speer/arr. Donald G. Miller

Composer: Daniel Speer (1636–1707)

Born in 1636, Daniel Speer was a Baroque composer and writer. No public record outside his date of birth and parental identification exists until 1644.¹⁴⁹ In November of 1667, Speer accepted a position of schoolteacher and church musician at Göppingen;¹⁵⁰ he lost this position but returned in 1673.¹⁵¹ “Throughout the 1680s, he enjoyed a period of great musical and literary activity: between 1681 and 1689 he published 14 works - church music, quodlibet collections, novels, political commentaries...”¹⁵² As a composer, he wrote brass music and keyboard miniatures;¹⁵³ his writings on music influenced German Baroque Trombone writing for over a century.¹⁵⁴ One of his most important works was his textbook on practical music, *Grund-richtiger Unterricht der musicalischen Kunst (Instruction in the Correct Fundamentals of Musical Art)*.¹⁵⁵ He died in 1707.

Arranger: Donald G. Miller (b. 1933)

Born in 1933, Donald G. Miller is a trombonist who taught in the music department at the University at Buffalo from 1976 to 1988.¹⁵⁶ As a transcriber and arranger of older music, he also completed a transcription of *Achieved is the Glorious Work* by Franz Joseph Haydn for four trombones.

Title: *Sonata à 4* (from *Neu-gebachene Taffel-Schnitz*)

¹⁴⁹ Rosemary Roberts and John Butts, “Speer, Daniel,” in *Grove Music Online* (Oxford University Press, 2001–), accessed March 29, 2025, <https://www-oxfordmusiconline-com.ezproxy.lib.ou.edu/grovemusic/display/10.1093/gmo/9781561592630.001.0001/omo-9781561592630-e-0000026380?rkey=9MNZqC&result=1>.

¹⁵⁰ Ibid.

¹⁵¹ Ibid.

¹⁵² Ibid.

¹⁵³ Ibid.

¹⁵⁴ “Georg Daniel Speer,” Authors, Sofiaphilharmonic.com, accessed March 29, 2025, <https://sofiaphilharmonic.com/en/authors/georg-daniel-speer-en/>.

¹⁵⁵ Rosemary Roberts and John Butts, “Speer, Daniel.”

¹⁵⁶ “Buffalo Musicians Results,” Collections, Music Library, accessed March 29, 2025, <https://library2.buffalo.edu/music/collections/buffalo-musicians/results.html?lastname=m>.

Movements: One Movement

The UIL Database contains a different arrangement of this work by Keith Brown from International Music Company.

Included in the NYSSMA Solo & Ensemble Catalog.

Duration: 4:00

Publisher: Ensemble Publications (Ithaca, NY)

Copyright Date: 1685/2009

Copy Quality: Engraved

Availability: Available from numerous merchants; no digital download available

Difficulty: Intermediate (2)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones; bass trombone*

Overall Range: F2 (D2) – Bb4

Trombone 1: Bb3 – Bb4

Trombone 2: E3 – G4

Trombone 3: E3 – F4

Bass Trombone: F2 (Optional D2) – C4

Clefs: Trombone 1 (tenor); Trombone 2 (bass); Trombone 3 (bass); Bass Trombone (bass)

Mutes: N/A

Dedication: N/A

Publisher Overview/Description(s) in Literature:

Ensemble Publications

“Renaissance. Our original edition. For four trombones without keyboard. All parts are in the bass clef.”¹⁵⁷

Technical Considerations: Dynamics; Endurance; Intonation

Dynamics – Like many works from the late 17th and early 18th centuries, minimal dynamics markings exist. Miller includes several annotations, but most are crescendo markings (e.g., measures two, twelve, and sixteen, among others). These provide some guidance, but ensemble members are responsible for determining many dynamic choices. Musical lines should lead to the downbeat, and diminuendos or decrescendos can enhance the expressiveness of the musical lines.

Endurance – One challenge of this work is the duration each performer is required to play. In this work’s forty-seven measures, the bass trombone plays in every measure, resting on only three eighth rests across the piece. The first, second, and third trombones have only a small number of measures in which they do not play. A slow tempo or heavy style could further challenge endurance; ensemble members should choose tempo and style carefully.

Intonation – This work utilizes common practice tonality, which is triadic (with occasional seventh chords) and functional. Each ensemble member must recognize their chord tone and understand its role in the chord to achieve optimal balance, blend, and intonation. The cadential points (measures twenty-two and twenty-three; measure forty-seven) are two moments where intonation inaccuracies will be evident. Additionally, many chords are the product of accidentals within the sixteenth and eighth note lines.

¹⁵⁷ “Sonata à 4,” Trombone Quartets, Ensemble Publications, accessed March 29, 2025, <http://www.enspub.com/pages/04/04090.htm>.

Ensuring a clear difference between notes such as C4 and C#4 and Bb3 and B3 is essential for maintaining harmonic clarity.

Piece Description:

This work by Daniel Speer and arranged by Donald G. Miller is one of the earliest works written explicitly for the trombone quartet. It is an instrumental interlude of his [Speer's] *Neugebachene Taffel-Schnitz*—a collection of quodlibets (medley of popular tunes).¹⁵⁸ Even though the work is structurally clear, opportunities exist for performer interpretation via ornamentation and expressive phrasing that the composer nor arranger include. The work is in a binary form identifiable by the repeats, consistent with the binary form prevalent in music of the late 17th and early 18th centuries. It begins with an opening quasi-fanfare in all four parts that progresses from a D minor triad to an A major triad. In the next measure, the first trombone introduces more contrapuntal material via eighth notes in an ascending-third pattern; the second trombone enters next (two measures later). The first, second, and fourth trombones play consistently between measures three through ten, while the third trombone is silent for two measures. Except for the octave leap on the downbeat of measure three in the bass trombone, all four lines are primarily stepwise and diatonic.

On the third beat of measure ten, the bass trombone initiates a section of contrapuntal sixteenth notes; it is mostly diatonic except for a B3 on the upbeat of beat one in measure eleven. The third trombone follows on the upbeat of measure eleven (starting on D4), the first trombone follows next, beginning on the upbeat of beat two in measure eleven (starting on G4), and the second trombone enters on the upbeat of beat three with an eighth note (starting on G3). In measure twelve, the sixteenth notes rapidly diminish, and eighth notes replace them; the next

¹⁵⁸ Tucker, 3.

eight measures integrate these two rhythmic elements, often alternating or layering them to create a dense texture. Measures twenty-one through twenty-three are the last three measures of the first section, designated by the repeat sign; however, this section's cadence concludes with a C dominant seventh chord resolving to an F major triad.

Following the repeat sign, the second section begins with a change to a legato style and a mezzo piano dynamic level. This material is chromatic and brief, containing accidentals in the inner voices and lasting for three measures before a new configuration (rhythmically and melodically) of the material from measures sixteen through twenty occurs. In contrast to these measures (16–20), the composer separates the duos by one measure instead of having them occur adjacently within one measure; the composer also utilizes more combinations. The first pair contains the first and second trombones; however, they are offset by one beat as the first trombone begins on the upbeat of beat one, and the second trombone begins on the upbeat of beat two. The second pair enters two measures later in the third and fourth trombones, and the third pair contains the second and third trombones (two measures later); both are homorhythmic. In measure thirty-two, the eighth notes return as the primary medium for melodic activity. In measure thirty-six, the sixteenth notes return and predominate as the primary rhythm for the remainder of the piece. The first trombone begins on the upbeat of beat one, and the second trombone begins on the upbeat of beat two. This texture becomes homorhythmic in the lower three parts, contrasting with the first trombone. This pattern repeats in measures thirty-nine and forty. The remaining eight measures integrate all these musical elements (mostly stepwise diatonic lines) into a cohesive resolution, which resolves from an A major triad to a D minor triad. Items to consider are dynamics, endurance, intonation, and style.

A Study in Texture – Paul Tanner

Composer: Paul Tanner (1917 – 2013)

Born in 1917, Paul Tanner acquired recognition as a trombonist by playing with Glenn Miller and His Orchestra from 1938–1942;¹⁵⁹ he joined the U.S. Air Force after the ensemble disbanded.¹⁶⁰ After World War II, he received a Bachelor’s degree (1958), a Master’s degree (1961), and a doctorate (1975) from UCLA.¹⁶¹ While at UCLA, he was instrumental in the development its of jazz education program, eventually becoming a professor there as well.¹⁶² He also created the electro theremin and played it with artists such as The Beach Boys.¹⁶³ Other works he wrote for trombone are *Aria for Trombone* (1957) and *Etude for Unaccompanied Trombone* (1978) among numerous chamber pieces. He died in 2013.

Arranger: N/A

Title: *A Study in Texture*

Movements: One Movement

The UIL Database contains this work.

Included in the NYSSMA Solo & Ensemble Catalog.

Duration: 3:00-4:00

Publisher: Dorabet Music Company owned by RBC Publications owned by Excelcia Music Publishing (Anaheim, CA)

Copyright Date: 1965

Copy Quality: Engraved

Availability: Available from numerous merchants; no digital download available

¹⁵⁹ “Paul Tanner,” Composer, RBA Publications. Accessed March 30, 2025, <https://rbcmusic.com/product-category/composers/paul-tanner/>.

¹⁶⁰ Ibid.

¹⁶¹ Ibid.

¹⁶² Ibid.

¹⁶³ Ibid.

Difficulty: Intermediate (2)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones; bass trombone*

Overall Range: F2 – G4

Trombone 1: A3 – G4

Trombone 2: G3 – E4

Trombone 3: C3 – G4

Bass Trombone: F2 – G4

Clefs: Trombone 1 (bass); Trombone 2 (bass); Trombone 3 (bass); Bass Trombone (bass)

Mutes: N/A

Dedication: N/A

Publisher Overview/Score: N/A

Technical Considerations: Intonation; Phrasing; Texture

Intonation – Intonation difficulty arises from the combination of traditional triadic and non-traditional harmony. For example, the first fermata in measure eight and penultimate fermata in measure forty-nine are each a B diminished seventh chord in second inversion, and the final fermata in measure fifty-two is an F major chord. Conversely, the second fermata in measure forty-one is a C minor triad with a major seventh; comparable chords appear within moving lines within this piece.

Phrasing – Tanner provides sufficient dynamic and phrase markings in some sections, such as the piece's beginning to Rehearsal B and three measures before Rehearsal D to four before the end. He provides minimal instruction in other sections, such as Rehearsal B to three measures before Rehearsal D. In this middle section, the ensemble must

determine suitable musical interpretations; the section at Rehearsal C may pose a significant challenge due to its chromatic nature.

Texture – None of the textures included in this work are individually complex or unique, but they may nonetheless pose difficulties for the ensemble. The difficulty lies in navigating transitions from one to the next (e.g., moving from a divided ensemble to a homorhythmic texture to a homophonic texture).

Piece Description:

This quartet by Paul Tanner is a lesser-known work within the standard repertoire that will challenge the ensemble's listening skills, among others. It begins with sustained notes in the first, second, and third trombones and the descending melody in the bass trombone that encompasses a D minor pentachord. In the second measure, the third trombone becomes the primary melodic voice; the melody then moves back to the bass trombone in measure three and extends into measure four. Simultaneously, the first trombone has quarter notes (F4 and Gb4) on beats three and four during a gradual crescendo. In measure five, the first and second trombones have melodic material, and the third and fourth trombones have sustained notes. The moving line occurs in thirds and is presented in two different ways. The first two iterations are eighth notes in a descending manner; however, the third and fourth iterations both ascend. They differ solely in rhythm as the third part contains dotted quarter notes and eighth notes, and the fourth is all quarter notes. The last count of measure eight has fermata, preceded by ascending eighth notes in the third and fourth trombones.

At Rehearsal A, the music is identical for the first two measures before differing in measure three. The primary change is a different melody in the bass trombone, which has two quarter notes and a descending eighth-note F pentachord. In measure thirteen, following

ascending quarter notes in the first and second trombones, the ensemble divides and moves in contrary motion. The first and second trombones ascend, primarily utilizing quarter notes and the occasional eighth note; it begins in unison until beat two of measure fourteen, where the first trombone continues to ascend and the second trombone descends for one note, enabling it to continue in thirds. Conversely, the third and fourth trombones descend in stepwise motion via a syncopated line; the parts are in unison for the first three notes before the third trombone sustains G3, and the bass trombone continues to descend. The resulting chord of these lines is a collection of A2, G3, Db4, and F4.

At Rehearsal B, the texture transitions to a more homophonic texture, with the first trombone providing a syncopated melody. In measure seventeen, the second trombone adds a parallel line a third below. The following two measures integrate preceding musical elements until measure twenty, which introduces a new syncopated idea (two dotted quarter notes and an eighth note). In measure twenty-three, the texture becomes homorhythmic with some variation in the bass trombone part.

At Rehearsal C, the first and fourth trombones are silent. The second trombone has a two-measure motive, a descending and ascending palindrome comprised of only whole steps. Simultaneously, the third trombone has a chromatic eighth-note line. It ascends a major ninth from F3 to G4 and descends to Bb3. In the fifth measure of Rehearsal C, the bass trombone enters with the same line previously performed by the third trombone; the third trombone plays a similar line but a minor third higher (begins on Ab3) and ascends a minor seventh before skipping down to E4 and creating a voice crossing. The first trombone enters in the seventh measure. It also presents a palindromic motive, but the interval pattern is different (W-H-W-W-W-W-H-W). Three measures before Rehearsal D, the texture is homorhythmic, but the melodic

lines are in contrary motion; the first and second trombones descend, while the third and fourth trombones ascend. The subsequent eight measures are identical to the opening eight, ending on a fermata on a B diminished seventh chord in third inversion. The final three measures enable the composition to conclude on an F major triad. Items to consider are dynamics, intonation, and phrasing. This work's approximate duration is three to four minutes.

Chapter 4: Level 3 Works

Choral pour 4 Trombones ou Violoncellos - André Amellér

Composer: André Amellér (1912- 1990)

Born in 1912, André Amellér (the “Master”) won prizes in double bass, orchestral conducting, harmony, fugue, counterpoint, and music history at the Paris Conservatory.¹⁶⁴ In 1937 he became a member of the Orchestra de l’Opera de Paris.¹⁶⁵ In 1953, he relocated to Dijon, France, in Burgundy to rebuild the artistic identity of the city and conservatory.¹⁶⁶ Outside of his performing and teaching, Amellér left a catalog of nearly four hundred compositions.¹⁶⁷ His music reflects “the perfect mastery of music writing and a relentless will to favour the beauty and ethics of the French musical tradition.”¹⁶⁸ He died in 1990.

Arranger: N/A

Title: *Choral pour 4 Trombones ou Violoncellos* (*Chorale for 4 Trombones or Cellos*)

Movements: One Movement

Duration: 2:30

Publisher: Hinrichsen Edition Ltd. (New York, NY)

Copyright Date: 1960

Copy Quality: Engraved

Availability: Score available via ILL; parts were not available

Difficulty: Early-Advanced (3)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones; bass trombone

¹⁶⁴ Bernad Dupaquier, “An Exceptional Figure,” The Man, Ameller.org, last modified February 12, 2025, <https://ameller.org/en/homme01.php>.

¹⁶⁵ Ibid.

¹⁶⁶ Ibid.

¹⁶⁷ Ibid.

¹⁶⁸ Ibid.

Overall Range: Bb1 – Bb4

Trombone 1: Ab3 – Bb4

Trombone 2: Gb3 – Gb4

Trombone 3: Ab2 – Db4

Bass Trombone: Bb1 – Ab3

Clefs: Trombone 1 (tenor); Trombone 2 (tenor); Trombone 3 (tenor); Bass Trombone (bass)

Mutes: Straight Mute in Trombones 1-3 (anacrusis to m. 17 through m. 21)

Dedication: N/A

Publisher Overview/Score Description: N/A

Technical Considerations: Phrasing

Phrasing - Because of the chorale nature this work possesses, it is very easy to play it in a routine manner with minimal phrasing, dynamic contrast, or rubato. The melody that primarily occurs in the first and second trombones should carry the ensemble, but since three half notes define it, the performer should have a purposeful approach to each note. For non-muted examples, refer to measures two, four, six, eight, ten, and thirteen.

Additionally, the stepwise lines of the third and fourth trombones can complement and elevate it; this activity typically occurs underneath the sustained notes. Refer to measures four through seven to see an example.

Piece Description:

This short work by André Ameller is not a widely recognized composition that is also playable by four cellos and only twenty-one measures long. It is in the key of Db major, and the top three trombone parts utilize tenor clef, even in the lower register where bass clef would be much easier. It is also important to note that the primary lines in the early sections of this work

are given the designation “en dehors” by Amellér, which translates to “out.” The piece begins with the melody in the first trombone part, which is primarily stepwise. The first melody begins on F4 and ascends to Ab4 from Eb4 on the upbeat of two. The rest of the line descends and eventually settles on Bb3. While the first trombone has the melody, the rest of the ensemble has complementary material. The bass trombone has a descending Db major scale that moves in contrary motion to the melody, allowing for the ensemble range to expand. The third trombone plays long-duration notes that act as a connecting element of the ensemble; in contrast, the second trombone has a countermelody that generally does the opposite of the first part. In measure three, the first trombone decrescendos while the second trombone crescendos. This reality is why the second trombone takes over the melody in measure four. It starts on Gb4 and quickly transitions to longer-duration stagnate notes as active first and third parts play moving lines, and the bass trombone solidifies the progression underneath. Measure seven incorporates the first chromaticism with an accidental A4 in the first trombone and an ascending C major tetrachord in the third trombone. The first trombone regains the melody and rises above the most tumultuous section of the piece. The first trombone has a breath mark written in measure nine that the performer should take in preparation for the climax on a high Bb. Underneath this straightforward yet lovely melody, the second trombone plays a syncopated line, the third trombone continues its tetradic ideas, and the bass trombone returns to its initial descending bass line. A crescendo in all four parts begins in measure ten and climaxes with a fortissimo dynamic in measure twelve. This powerful dynamic is short-lived as the diminuendo starts in the subsequent measure; a breath mark on the upbeat of two lines up the lower three parts—the section cadences on a Db-major triad. The last seven measures are led by the bass trombone solo for almost three measures so that the other parts have time to insert their straight mutes and

finish the piece. The work concludes with a Db-major triad that has a delayed resolution. The primary item to consider is phrasing.

Two Pieces for Trombone Quartet - Alexander Arutiunian

Composer: Alexander Arutiunian (1920–2012)

Born in 1920 in Armenia, Alexander Arutiunian became one of the most well-respected Armenian and formerly Soviet Union composers.¹⁶⁹ He studied at the Komitas Conservatory and with H. Litinsky in Moscow.¹⁷⁰ Some of his famous compositions include *Concerto for Trumpet and Orchestra* (1950), *Armenian Scenes for Brass Quintet* (1990), and *Concerto for Trombone and Orchestra* (1991).

Arranger: N/A

Title: *Two Pieces for Trombone Quartet*

Movements: Two (2) Movements

1. Lento

2. Allegretto

The UIL Database contains this work but does not have any movement specifications.

Included in the NYSSMA Solo & Ensemble Catalog.

Duration: 3:45

Publisher: Editions Bim (Sion, Switzerland)

Copyright Date: 1989

Copy Quality: Engraved

Availability: Available from numerous merchants; no digital download

Difficulty: Early-Advanced (3)

¹⁶⁹ “Alexander Arutiunian,” Composers, Editions Bim & The Brass Press, last modified 2025, <https://www.editions-bim.com/composers/alexander-arutiunian>.

¹⁷⁰ Ibid.

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones; bass trombone*

Overall Range: G2 – C5

Trombone 1: Eb3 – C5

Trombone 2: G2 – Eb4

Trombone 3: C3 – C4

Bass Trombone: G2 – A3

Clefs: Trombone 1 (tenor, bass); Trombone 2 (bass); Trombone 3 (bass); Bass Trombone (bass)

Mutes: N/A

Dedication: N/A

Publisher Overview/Score Description: N/A

Technical Considerations: Cross-Harmonic Glissando; Dynamic Contrast; Rhythm/Subdivision

Cross-Harmonic Glissando – These glissandi are not the traditional ones that stay within the same partial; instead, they require the performers to travel across multiple partials of the harmonic series. Keeping time within these figures is essential. Lip slurs can help with this, or moving to an alternate position, if available, can also help.

Dynamic Contrast - Unlike many works on this list, the parts provide succinct dynamic instructions via markings (p, mp, f, etc.) and hairpin crescendos and decrescendos.

Arutiunian is clear on what he wants to happen at certain moments in both movements.

Exaggerating these changes is crucial to playing this work correctly.

Rhythm/Subdivision - While no exotic rhythms exist in this piece, subdividing in the second movement is crucial for both time and style. Many lines begin off the beat, specifically on “la” or the second eighth note of the beat and must be executed on time for the piece to work. In conjunction with this, many tied notes release on the “la” of the

beat. It is very easy to hold these notes too long and to fall behind. I recommend releasing the ties slightly early to stay on time and keep the correct style.

Piece Description:

This work is appropriate for developing ensembles, as Alexander Arutiunian balances obstacles and accessibility. The first movement, entitled “Lento,” has a form that roughly equates to ABA’. It begins with the bass trombone (trombone four) on Bb2. The rest of the ensemble enters in measure three, creating a Bb minor triad that hints at tonality. This hope is subverted immediately in the next measure with two perfect fifths stacked across the ensemble. Familiar harmonies occasionally pop up, but there is no tonal progression. The first and fourth trombones, especially the first trombone, provide all the melodic motion even though the two parts only use notes within a perfect fourth between Bb and Eb; stepwise motion with small skips are the two most common ideas. Contrastingly, the second trombone only plays two pitches, and the third trombone only plays three different pitches; both parts primarily utilize whole notes. These two ideas create a thin texture that requires each performer to play with a full tone. The opening section ends with an Eb minor triad in the first three parts and a moving line in the bass trombone that transitions to the repeated section at rehearsal A. The line is a palindrome moving stepwise from Eb3 to C3 and back up. At rehearsal A (a repeated section), the second and third trombones become more active, providing more support for the first trombone. For example, the top two parts play parallel sixths in the first two measures; however, the top line still feels exposed and requires great focus and intention by the performer. Unlike the opening section, which requires the ensemble to play as a complete unit, this section places the bass trombone against the rest of the ensemble, often setting up the other three parts. Following the repeated section, Rehearsal B maintains this dichotomy, beginning with the first three trombone parts

playing parallel major/minor triads. It then switches to more homophonic writing, with a lyrical line in the first part that again only uses five or six notes and more support in the other three parts. Rehearsal C (m. twenty-seven) is similar to the opening material; however, the two middle parts are more chromatic. The movement ends on an open fifth with F in trombone three and octave Bbs in parts one, two, and four. Items to consider in this movement include tone, intonation, and dynamic contrast.

The second movement, entitled “Allegretto,” is a quick dance movement in 6/8, featuring simple rhythms written in a flashy manner. The bass trombone begins on C3 instead of Bb2, and trombone three enters a count later. Since the two parts are off by a count, the bass trombone plays eighth notes when trombone three plays a long note and vice versa; this juxtaposition creates a constant stream of eighth notes. In measure four, the top two parts enter with an octave cross-harmonic glissando similar to a rip on the horn. At measure five, the texture breaks down into three ideas. The first idea is the melody in the first trombone part. It combines repeated notes and stepwise motion within a five-note scale. The second idea is the material in the second and third parts, which mixes dotted quarter notes and an eighth-note line that often begins on the “la” of beat one. The third idea in the bass trombone line incorporates long notes with eighth notes on the “la” of beats one and two. Measure thirteen is an interesting interruption from the status quo because the ensemble plays a homorhythmic line that accents quarter notes on the “la” of beats one and two. In measure fourteen, the top three parts begin with a homorhythmic line in harmony that continues for almost twenty measures; during this time, there is some variation in the top part, which ascends to Bb4, and the bass trombone provides a motor rhythm and has a cross-harmonic glissando. In measure thirty-four, the bass trombone gets a little melody. Following four measures of rest at Rehearsal G for the first trombone, the part has an ascending

scalar line that sets up the piece's thrilling conclusion. The piece ends with a chromatic line in parts two through four and a long note followed by a hemiola rhythm and cross-harmonic glissando; it concludes on a C major triad. Items to consider are rhythm/time, style, and dynamic contrast.

Excerpts from “The Damnation of Faust” – Hector Berlioz/arr. Allen Ostrander

Composer: Hector Berlioz (1803–1869)

Born in 1803, Hector Berlioz was both the first virtuoso conductor and leading composer of programmatic symphonies due to his in-depth knowledge of literature and unique approach to orchestral writing.¹⁷¹ He abandoned the study of medicine for music after hearing Gluck’s *Iphigénie en Tauride* in the 1820s and eventually won the Prix de Rome (1830) after studying with J. F. Le Sueur and Anton Reicha.¹⁷² As a composer, his style was “uniquely unconventional in its truly orchestral conception, its emphasis on continuous and irregular melody, its unusual dissonance treatment, and its later development towards greater restraint and Classical objectivity.”¹⁷³ After the premiere of *Symphonie Fantastique* in 1830, he faced challenges in sustaining a career as a composer in France, however, he achieved more success in Germany, England, and Russia.¹⁷⁴ This reality prompted him to undertake extensive concert tours.¹⁷⁵ He was also an influential writer and critic in France. For example, he wrote the first significant book on orchestration entitled *Modern Instrumentation and Orchestration* (1844).¹⁷⁶ He died in 1869.

Arranger: Allen Ostrander (1909–1994)

Born in 1909, Allen Ostrander graduated with a B.S. in instrumental music from the Ithaca Conservatory in 1932.¹⁷⁷ While there, he studied with Patrick Conway and Ernest Williams;¹⁷⁸ he also studied with individuals such as Simone Mantia, Gardell Simmons, and Walter Lillebeck

¹⁷¹ Poultney, 159.

¹⁷² Ibid, 159.

¹⁷³ Ibid, 159.

¹⁷⁴ Ibid, 159.

¹⁷⁵ Ibid, 159.

¹⁷⁶ Ibid, 159.

¹⁷⁷ “Allen E. Ostrander,” Trombone Legends, Brass Legends, WindSong Press, accessed April 13, 2025, <https://www.windsongpress.com/brass%20players/trombone/Ostrander.pdf>.

¹⁷⁸ Ibid.

in subsequent years.¹⁷⁹ Between 1935 and 1975, there was only one three-year period of his life when he was not playing in a professional orchestra (serving in the U.S. Army from 1942 to 1945).¹⁸⁰ He performed with the Pittsburgh Symphony Orchestra in 1937, the NBC Symphony from 1937 to 1946, and was the bass trombonist of the New York Philharmonic from 1946 to 1957.¹⁸¹ As an instructor, he worked at several institutions such as West Virginia Wesleyan, Juilliard, the Hartt School of Music, Columbia Teacher's College, and Ithaca College.¹⁸² He also wrote books for the double-valve bass trombone and arranged numerous works for brass such as *Concerto in One Movement* by Alexander Lebedev. He died in 1994.

Title: *Excerpts from "The Damnation of Faust"*

Movements: Three Movements

1. Drinking Song – Allegretto (Quarter Note equals 138 bpm)
2. Brander's Song – Allegro (Quarter Note equals 124 bpm)
3. Fugue on Brander's Song – Allegro non troppo (Quarter Note equals 96 bpm)

The UIL Database contains this work as *Suite (From the Damnation of Faust)* but does not have any movement specifications.

Included in the NYSSMA Solo & Ensemble Catalog.

Duration: 8:00

Publisher: Edition Musicus owned by Ensemble Publications (Ithaca, NY)

Copyright Date: 1846/1951

Copy Quality: Engraved

Availability: Available from numerous merchants; no digital download available

¹⁷⁹ Ibid.

¹⁸⁰ Ibid.

¹⁸¹ Ibid.

¹⁸² Ibid.

Difficulty: Early-Advanced (3)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones; bass trombone*

Overall Range: F2 – Bb4

Trombone 1: Bb2 – Bb4

Trombone 2: C3 – Bb4

Trombone 3: Ab2 – F4

Bass Trombone: F2 – D4

Clefs: Trombone 1 (bass); Trombone 2 (bass); Trombone 3 (bass); Bass Trombone (bass)

Mutes: N/A

Dedication: N/A

Publisher Overview/Score Description:

Ensemble Publications

“Romantic. Includes Drinking Song; Brander’s Song; Fugue on Brander’s Song. All parts in bass clef. Fourth part can be played on tenor trombone.”¹⁸³

Technical Considerations: Articulation; Dynamics; Style

Articulation – This musical aspect is of primary importance in the second movement, which contains both traditional and hybrid articulations. Staccato, tenuto, and accent markings are all present. The opening phrase prior to the repeat is staccato, as are some interjectory phrases; the tenuto markings occur in the fourth and fifth of Rehearsal B, and the accents occur in several non-consecutive measures. The hybrid articulation is a combination of the accent and tenuto markings. It primarily occurs in the first trombone melody. One of the many examples occurs in measures six through eight.

¹⁸³ “Excerpts from Damnation of Faust,” Trombone Quartets, Ensemble Publications, accessed April 13, 2025, <http://www.enspub.com/pages/43/43010.htm>.

Dynamics – This work features a range of dynamic markings and phrasing suggestions. In movement one, there are only eight phrase markings, often in similar situations, and numerous unprepared dynamic markings (m. 12). In movement two, there is one phrase marking in measures sixteen and seventeen. Regarding dynamic markings, there are several that are unprepared. A primary example begins seven measures before Rehearsal A, where it begins pianissimo, proceeds to forte, and concludes at pianissimo. Movement three has no phrase suggestions, but more dynamic levels are present. Determining the appropriate loudness for each level (e.g., mezzo forte, forte) is essential for an accurate performance.

Style – This musical aspect is of primary importance in the third movement due to its fugal structure. The ensemble can effectively perform this movement if each member diligently matches the style of the member who played before them. Since this fugue places the ensemble in duos, this requirement extends to the performer's duo as well as throughout the ensemble. The most prominent example occurs in measures one through ten. This aspect is also pertinent in the first movement at Rehearsal A and Rehearsal C.

Piece Description:

This music by Hector Berlioz (and arranged by Allen Ostrander) is a distinguished composition that is accessible yet challenging. It also provides an effective introduction to the music of Hector Berlioz. The first movement, "Drinking Song," proceeds at a lively tempo, integrating diverse themes and motives to create a compelling texture. It begins with a C minor triad and a homorhythmic motive that features contrary motion (trombones one and three descend; trombone two ascends). In measure two, the first trombone plays an unaccompanied G Phrygian scale. In measure four, the lower trombone parts enter with accompaniment figures,

and the second trombone answers the first trombone on the upbeat of beat two; this dialogical line outlines an Eb major triad in first inversion. On the anacrusis to measure eight, the lower three parts begin a short passage without the first trombone. The melodic content in each part is primarily stepwise motion that co-occurs with a crescendo to forte in measure eleven. This dynamic level lasts for less than two measures since the dynamic changes to piano on beat three of measure twelve, following a breath mark. The subsequent three measures contain a mostly homorhythmic texture (the first trombone has several eighth notes) before the ensemble divides into duos. There is foreshadowing of this development as early as measure seventeen, but it does not fully occur until twenty-four. The first and second trombones begin at Rehearsal A, with three repeated C4s; the lower two parts echo them in measure twenty-five. After several transitional measures, the duos appear with descending eighth-note lines in measures thirty-two and thirty-three. In measure thirty-four, staggered entrances result in a cascading texture. At Rehearsal B, trombones one, three, and four have an identical rhythm, while the second trombone has a moving line; instead of maintaining this ensemble cohesion, the next measure has them all move in unique ways. The first trombone ascends to G4 in measure forty-three, while the third trombone has the most active line, a descending third figure in measure forty-two. At Rehearsal C, the ensemble duos return but for a duration of seven measures. The first and second trombones initiate the line with an ascending triad (Gb3, Ab3, Bb3); the lower two parts have a repeated Ab3 in the next measure. This material is at a forte dynamic and serves as the movement's climax, with the first trombone ascending to Bb4. The remainder of the work features ensemble-wide ascending eighth note lines and a descending triadic quarter note motive. It concludes with a resolution to an Eb major triad. Elements requiring attention are dynamics, intonation, and style.

The second movement, “Brander’s Song,” is a brisk movement with a quarter note beat but occurs in 2/8 measures. It begins with a forte, homorhythmic idea featuring an ascending Eb major scale. This opening statement concludes with a fermata on an Eb major triad. The next section, which contains a repeat sign, begins with a first trombone melody outlining an Eb major triad. It then features a descending line and an eventual resolution on Bb2. During these first eleven measures, the second and fourth trombones play isolated eighth notes on the downbeat of each measure, while the third trombones play an eighth and sixteenth note. In measure eleven, they join the first trombone with an elaborate gesture. The second trombone has an ascending arpeggio from Bb3 to Bb4, and the bass trombone has a descending arpeggio from Bb3 to B2. This homophonic texture continues. The main difference is that the line begins with a repeated Db4 that develops into a stepwise eighth-note line. The interjection is slightly longer, lasting four measures and featuring a descending Ab major triad from Ab4 to Ab3 in the second trombone and an ascending Ab major triad in the bass trombone from Ab2 to Ab3. At Rehearsal A, the melodic material features different pitch content but rhythmically draws from its predeceasing statements. The accompaniment, however, is significantly altered as the third trombone continuously alternates pitches as sixteenth notes, and the bass trombone part becomes notably more disjunct, often containing leaps of a perfect fifth or greater. The movement’s climax occurs three measures before Rehearsal B with fortissimo eighth notes following a breath mark. The first trombone has a sustained note in the next two measures, while the middle two voices have eighth notes that decrescendo. At Rehearsal B, the texture reverts to its previous iteration, with the first trombone initially serving as the primary melodic voice. The lower three parts are more active, and the movement concludes with an Eb major triad (minus the fifth), following a second trombone solo. Elements requiring attention are articulation, balance and blend, and dynamics.

The third movement, “Fugue on Brander’s Song,” is a short, thirty-two-measure fugue, as indicated by its title. The ensemble is in duos, resulting in two interwoven lines rather than a strict contrapuntal texture consisting of four unique lines. The third trombone plays the first statement of the subject, which outlines a descending Eb major triad, followed by a line predominantly featuring stepwise motion. The eighth notes continue in measure three, leading to three quarter notes that cadence in Bb. It is unaccompanied for two measures before the second trombone enters in measure three. The opening measure exhibits minor variations as the first two notes are Eb4 and D4, resulting in stepwise motion, but the second measure is identical to the third trombone but transposed up a fifth; the third measure also continues the eighth notes, but the pattern is different. The bass trombone enters on beat three of measure four with an identical statement of the third trombone line, except for the fourth measure. Finally, the first trombone enters in measure six with a line identical to the second trombone, except for the last two counts of the third measure (m. 8). These lines continue to intertwine and interact for an additional three measures before the first trombone emerges as the primary melodic voice two measures before Rehearsal A. At Rehearsal A, the first and second trombones play closely related lines that contain a combination of half, quarter, and eighth notes; the lower two trombones enter two measures later with the Eb major arpeggio in the bass trombone. This figure leads to two measures of continuous eighth notes. After resting for two measures, the first trombone has a line marked “8va” by the composer that ascends to Bb4. The lower three parts provide accompaniment figures. The second trombone has quarter notes that turn into a line of half and quarter notes, the third trombone plays a repeated rhythm on Eb3, following a descending five-note scale, and the bass trombone plays a drone Eb3. The texture becomes more unified five

measures from the end, and the movement and work conclude with an Eb major triad. Elements requiring attention are balance and blend, note accuracy, and style.

Two Madrigals for Trombone Quartet – Gordon Jacob

Composer: Gordon Jacob (1895-1984)

Born in 1895, Gordon Jacob became one of the most influential composers of the twentieth century. He became a lecturer at the Royal College of Music in London, where he studied in 1926;¹⁸⁴ he worked with students such as Malcolm Arnold and would remain there until 1966.¹⁸⁵ His writings such as *Orchestral Techniques* (1931), *The Composer and His Art* (1955), and *The Elements of Orchestration* (1962) continue to be highly regarded today.¹⁸⁶ Additional works for trombone by him include *Suite for Trombone Quartet* (1968) and *Concerto for Trombone and Orchestra* (1956); he died in 1984.

Arranger: N/A

Title: *Two Madrigals for Trombone Quartet*

Movements: Two Movements

1. Mournful – “Andante dolente” (quarter note equals 60 bpm)
2. Cheerful – “Allegretto Scherzando” (dotted half note equals 66 bpm)

Duration: 4:30

Publisher: Trombone Association Publishing (TAP) owned by Ensemble Publications (Ithaca, NY)

Copyright Date: 1990

Copy Quality: Engraved

Availability: Available from Hickeys Music

Difficulty: Early-Advanced (3)

¹⁸⁴ ‘Gordon Jacob,’ Composer Index, Boosey & Hawkes, accessed February 10, 2025, <https://www.boosey.com/composer/Gordon+Jacob?tttype=BIOGRAPHY>.

¹⁸⁵ Ibid.

¹⁸⁶ Ibid.

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones; bass trombone*

Overall Range: E2 – A4

Trombone 1: G3 – A4

Trombone 2: B2 – F4

Trombone 3: A2 – C4

Bass Trombone: E2 – B3

Clefs: Trombone 1 (bass); Trombone 2 (bass); Trombone 3 (bass); Bass Trombone (bass)

Mutes: N/A

Dedication: N/A

Publisher Overview/Score Description:

Tap Music via Hickey's Music Center

“20th century. An original composition by English composer Gordon Jacob for trombone quartet. The first movement, Mournful, is a slow Andante dolente. The faster second movement, Cheerful, is in a quick Allegretto Scherzando 3/4 felt in one. For four tenor trombones or three tenor trombones and one bass.”¹⁸⁷

Technical Considerations: Dynamics; Style; Technique

Dynamics – Jacob is evident with the dynamic levels he wants at specific moments in the music. An example from the first movement occurs at Rehearsal E. He marks the dynamic on beat two of measure thirty-eight at pianissimo and the final two and a half measures at pianississimo. In the second movement at rehearsal G, the opening statement occurs at forte, and the restatement four measures later appears at a piano dynamic level.

¹⁸⁷ “Jacob, Gordon Madrigals (2),” Trombone Quartets, Hickeys.com, accessed February 10, 2025, <https://www.hickeys.com/search/products/sku079181.php>.

In addition to these precise markings, he does an excellent job of providing hairpins for crescendos and diminuendos; heeding these instructions is crucial.

Style – The challenges concerning style are born out of the staggered entrances across both movements. The ensemble members must match whoever started the line regardless of its execution. For example, the bass trombone initiates the motive at Rehearsal A, so the other three parts must match their interpretation. This imitative approach sets up the ensemble for quality interpretation. A legato style is appropriate for the first movement, while a dance style is appropriate for the second.

Technique – Due to the speed of the second movement, slide control should be a high priority. There are numerous eighth-note lines across all four parts; they are primarily diatonic. Playing these lines bouncy and dry as opposed to short is critical. Refer to the measures between Rehearsals G and H or between Rehearsals I and J for soloistic examples. Refer to four measures before F, four measures before J, and ten measures from the end for ensemble examples.

Piece Description:

Two Madrigals by Gordon Jacob is a brief composition that challenges the aspiring trombone ensemble without being extremely difficult. The first movement, “Mournful,” is only forty-two measures long. The first and second trombones begin with four repeated notes a major third apart (C4 and E4). The third and fourth trombones respond on beat two of measure two with three repeated notes a perfect fifth apart (A2 and E3). With every part playing in measures three and four, the music becomes contrapuntal (almost antiphonal). Three main ideas in the first twenty-four measures (each receives approximately six or seven measures) occur in staggered entrances across the ensemble. The first motive, approximately two measures long, is introduced

by the first trombone in measure five. Its construction features a leap of at least a minor sixth followed by a stepwise descending line; however, there are some deviations. For example, the first trombone performs A3, F4, E4, D4, C#4 (measures five and six), yet the second trombone performs A3, F4, E4, D4, E4, and F4. The second idea begins in measure twelve, which is also Rehearsal A. It is a simple ascending tetrachord in a chain of transpositions. The bass trombone part starts the sequence with a C major tetrachord that is passed to the second trombone part, which plays an A minor tetrachord, followed by the third trombone part, which plays an F major tetrachord; it concludes with a D minor tetrachord in the first trombone—the material after the tetrachord varies but tends to be sustained notes. The third idea begins at Rehearsal B (measure eighteen), which is in 3/2 time; it utilizes four notes but with accidentals and skips (a semitone, diminished third, and semitone). The bass trombone also initiates this motive with a phrase containing E3, F3, C#3, and D3. The third trombone then assumes the melody in the next measure, playing A3, Bb3, F#3, and G4, followed by the second trombone (D4, Eb4, B3, and C4) and the first trombone (G4, G#4, E4, and F4). The subsequent thirteen measures continue the contrapuntal texture, incorporating elements of all three motives; the movement concludes with a homorhythmic chorale section that settles on an A major triad. Items to consider are tone color, time, and style.

The second movement, “Cheerful,” moves briskly and presents a technical challenge to the performers. The first trombone begins the movement with a two-measure scalar sequence briefly interrupted by the ensemble and then passed to the second trombone. The anacrusis to measure eight is when the whole ensemble plays a homorhythmic passage; however, it is in contrary motion (the top two parts descend, and the bottom two ascend). At Rehearsal F, the staggered entrance concept from the first movement returns; it begins in the bass trombone

again, with subsequent higher parts entering next. The interval at the forefront of each entrance is the perfect fourth. The music at Rehearsal G places the ensemble in octaves at a forte dynamic. Four measures later, the same line is repeated at a piano dynamic. Jacob then utilizes a sequence in the first trombone part and other eighth-note-dominated lines in the lower parts. At rehearsal I, the opening material appears transposed up a third, and the first part passes the melody to the third trombone instead of the second. The rest of the section continues with the second and fourth parts assuming control of the melody. The staggered entrances from Rehearsal F reappear at Rehearsal J, but the second trombone starts the chain, followed by the third, fourth, and first trombones. Numerous scalar lines generate a frenzy of activity with the help of extreme dynamic changes. The piece concludes on a perfect fifth at a pianissimo dynamic. Items to consider are technique, via eighth note runs and vast dynamic changes.

Suite for 4 Trombones – James W. Langley

Composer: James W. Langley (1927–1994)

Born in 1927, James W. Langley was a senior BBC Music Producer, a brass band competition adjudicator, and music examiner at Trinity College.¹⁸⁸ He also served with the Midland Youth Orchestra (MYO), now the CSBO Youth Orchestra, for thirty-eight years, from its inception in 1956.¹⁸⁹ After his death, the James Langley Memorial Trust (JLMT) was established to provide financial assistance to CSBO Youth Orchestra members for musical training.¹⁹⁰ As a composer, he wrote a limited number of works with some of the other notable brass works being *Quartet for Horns* and *Scherzo for Trumpet*.¹⁹¹ He passed away unexpectedly in 1994.

Arranger: N/A

Title: *Suite for 4 Trombones*

Movements: Five Movements

1. Intrada – Allegro deciso (quarter note equals 90 bpm)
2. Chorale – Andante moderato (half note equals 44 bpm)
3. Scherzetto – Vivace e leggiero possibile (dotted quarter note equals 90 bpm)
4. Canon – Andante Sostenuto (quarter note equals 66 bpm)
5. Moto Perpetuo – Allegro comodo (half note equals 84 bpm)

Duration: 7:30

Publisher: Studio Music Company (London, England)

Copyright Date: 1961/1989

Copy Quality: Engraved

¹⁸⁸ “The James Langley Memorial Trust,” Midland Youth Orchestra, accessed April 21, 2025, <http://www.mlyo.org.uk/jlmt/jlmt.html>.

¹⁸⁹ Ibid.

¹⁹⁰ Ibid.

¹⁹¹ “James Langley,” Composer, British Music Collection. Accessed April 20, 2025, <https://britishmusiccollection.org.uk/composer/james-langley>.

Availability: Available from numerous merchants; no digital download available

Difficulty: Early-Advanced (3)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones; bass trombone*

Overall Range: D2 – Bb4

Trombone 1: C3 – Bb4

Trombone 2: Ab2 – G4

Trombone 3: G2 – Eb4

Bass Trombone: D2 – D4

Clefs: Trombone 1 (tenor, bass); Trombone 2 (tenor, bass); Trombone 3 (bass); Bass Trombone (bass)

Mutes: N/A

Dedication: N/A

Publisher Overview/Score Description: N/A

Technical Considerations: Dynamics; Intonation; Style

Dynamics – Langley provides extensive and precise instructions, unlike many works where the composer provides minimal dynamics or phrase markings. Following these instructions is essential for an accurate performance. There are several examples throughout the suite. The first example is in measures eleven through seventeen of movement one; the ensemble is in duos, which are offset by one measure. In this short phrase, different parts begin their crescendos at different dynamic levels. In measure twelve, the first and second trombones begin their crescendo at piano and increase to mezzo forte; the third trombone follows the same pattern but begins in measure thirteen. The bass trombone, however, begins at pianissimo and grows to mezzo piano. The

second example occurs in measures twenty-six through thirty-seven of movement three. In this section, the first, second, and bass trombones maintain dynamic consistency, while the third trombone performs distinct musical content. In measure thirty-two, the second begins at a forte dynamic and crescendos. In measure thirty-three, the first and second trombones have a forte-piano crescendo, and the bass trombone is at mezzo piano. In measure thirty-four, the entire ensemble crescendos. The third example is in measures ten through twelve of the fifth movement. Each part has a crescendo and decrescendo, but they are different lengths and are temporally staggered.

Intonation – While this work is not tonal in a traditional sense, consonant triadic harmony is still prevalent throughout. These chords are most prominent in the second and fourth movements due to the presence of more sustained notes. In the second movement, almost every six-measure phrase begins and ends with a consonant triad. The transitions between chords highlight the contemporary harmony. The six six-measure phrases are structured as follows: D minor triad to E major triad (Phrase 1), C major seventh chord to F# major triad (Phrase 2), F# major triad to G major triad (Phrase 3), E minor triad to F major triad (Phrase 4), A dominant seventh to F# minor triad (Phrase 5), and B minor triad to D major triad (Phrase 6). The paths from the first chord to the last involve passing tones and chromatic lines, utilizing accidentals. In the fourth movement, the canon structure creates a variety of chords that emerge and resolve rapidly within the texture. In both movements, each ensemble member must identify their chord tone and balance accordingly for an accurate performance.

Style – While crucial throughout the work due to its various styles, this aspect is most prominent in the third and fifth movements because of their staggered entrances. In the third movement, the bass trombone has the first statement of the main melody in measure one; it is essential that the second, third, and first trombones, in their subsequent entrances, adhere to and match the style established by the bass trombone. In measure nineteen, the first trombone introduces a new line; the rest of the ensemble’s job is to match it in their subsequent entries. This principle applies in measure forty-one when the third trombone reintroduces the melody. As for the fifth movement, its structure is derived from staggered entrances either in a cascading figure or within a rhythmic palindrome. These composite melodies, which the bass and first trombones often initiate, rely on the other ensemble members replicating the established style. Two examples are found in measures one through four and twenty-five through thirty-one.

Piece Description:

This *Suite* by James W. Langley is an underperformed work that contains five short movements (the longest is the third movement at sixty-six measures long). It is suitable for a developing ensemble looking for a technical challenge. The first movement, “Intrada,” is a fanfare that begins on the upbeat of beat one across the ensemble. This idea is six sixteenth notes that propel toward the downbeat of measure two, a rhythm that also occurs in measures three and five. Within this homorhythmic framework, a crescendo occurs along with the sixteenth notes, and the even-numbered measures contain one sforzando note, except for measure six. In measure six, the third trombone introduces a new figure. Over the subsequent four measures, all four parts have unique lines, leading to a more contrapuntal texture. In measure eleven, the ensemble divides into duos with identical rhythms occurring in different measures. The third and fourth

trombones initiate this section with a variation of the first measure; the main difference is that an eighth note replaces the two sixteenth notes on the upbeat of two. This configuration lasts until measure sixteen, when the first and second trombones diverge, followed by the third and fourth trombones in measure seventeen, where the third trombone plays the movement's first angular line. In measure twenty, the outer two trombones become the two melodic voices while the inner two trombones provide accompaniment figures via note repetition. The first trombone descends through an arpeggiated line in measure twenty, while the bass trombone ascends through an arpeggiated line in measure twenty-two. In measure twenty-six, the first trombone has a prominent solo line above the rest of the ensemble; it consists of mostly stepwise motion. In measure thirty-three, the homorhythmic texture of the opening and the rhythm introduced by the ensemble in measure eleven combine to create a recapitulation. Following more sixteenth notes and syncopated rhythms, the movement concludes with a resolution from a C dominant seventh chord to a D major triad. Elements requiring attention are dynamics, intonation, and style.

The second movement, "Chorale," while slower, maintains a moderate tempo due to its 2/2 time signature. Unlike movements within other works, this movement contains six-measure phrases instead of four or eight-measure phrases. It begins with a D minor chord on beat one before switching to an E half-diminished seventh chord in first inversion. In measure two, the third trombone has an ascending quarter-note line that leads to a D minor triad in first inversion on the downbeat of measure three. For the remainder of the opening phrase, which concludes with a breath mark, Langley uses a mixture of triadic harmony with non-conventional harmony created through moving notes (passing tones); it lacks conventional functional harmony in the common practice period style. Notes with accidentals are prominent, affecting almost every chord. The ensemble begins the next phrase in measure seven with a C major seventh chord in

root position. The phrase resolves to an E minor triad in first inversion. This pattern of a more consonant chord occurring on a downbeat followed by dissonant moving lines continues until the phrase concludes with an F# major triad in root position in measure twelve. The next phrase begins on the same chord and concludes with a G major triad in root position in measures seventeen and eighteen. The next six-measure phrase begins with an E minor triad in second inversion and concludes with an F major triad in measures twenty-two and twenty-three. The fifth phrase begins with an A dominant seventh chord in third inversion and concludes with an F# minor triad in root position. The final seven-measure phrase begins in measure thirty with a B minor triad. The phrase eventually progresses to an A dominant seventh in the penultimate bar that resolves to a D major triad for the movement's conclusion. Elements requiring attention are balance and blend, dynamics, and intonation.

The third movement, "Scherzetto," is a dance that proceeds briskly and begins with staggered entrances. The bass trombone initiates these staggered entrances with an ascending Bb major arpeggio on beat one and a repeated motive encompassing a major third for three counts. In measure three, the second trombone enters with a Bb major arpeggio in second inversion. This starting point allows the highest pitch to be F4 and the repeated motive to be a minor third. The third trombone enters in measure five with a G major arpeggio that ascends to Bb3, allowing the repeated motive to return to a major third configuration. In measure seven, the first trombone enters with a C major arpeggio that ascends to E4, maintaining the repeated motive's major third intervallic structure. The next ten measures feature lines primarily consisting of repeated notes and intermittent pitch variations. This developmental material prepares for the next idea in measure nineteen, which the first trombone introduces. This idea shares structural similarity with the opening line. It centers around the repetition of a minor third in the first iteration and the

perfect fourth for the subsequent three iterations. The rhythm also changes from a quarter-eighth configuration to alternating eighth notes. The first trombone plays D4 and B3, the third trombone plays C4 and G3 (m. 21), the second trombone plays Ab3 and Eb3 (m. 23), and the bass trombone plays F3 and C3 (m. 25). A crescendo begins in measure twenty-six. The upper two trombones have forte-piano crescendos in measures twenty-seven and twenty-nine, while the bass trombone plays a descending bass line in these measures; the third trombone plays a repeated Bb3 in measure twenty-eight. The dynamics continue to intensify throughout the next five measures (m. 30–34), with the phrasing climaxing in measure thirty-five, which contains a descending line in the first trombone and offset eighth note lines in the lower three parts. The dynamic level resets to piano on beat two of measure thirty-seven and the opening material returns in measure forty-one. The original bass trombone line occurs in the third trombone, while the second trombone alternates between C4 and Ab3, the bass trombone alternates between Bb3 and Gb3, and the first trombone plays the second trombone's initial line from measure three. After three measures containing a more unified texture, the first trombone has a solo line that initiates a cascading composite line in measure fifty-four. The dynamic level becomes piano in measure fifty-six, and the ensemble enters a homorhythmic texture that lasts the remainder of the movement (measure fifty-nine contains duplets). The movement concludes with a unison octave Bb. Elements requiring attention are dynamics, intonation, and style.

The fourth movement, "Canon," is the slowest of the suite. Like all canons, the various parts begin at different times. It begins with the bass trombone playing F3 (half note) and E3 (quarter note). In measure two, the third trombone enters a perfect fourth higher (Bb3 and A3), creating major and minor sonorities with the bass trombone's notes in that measure. The second trombone enters a whole step higher in measure three (C4 and Bb3), creating a major third and a

C dominant seventh chord (minus the fifth) on beat three. The first trombone enters a perfect fourth higher in measure four than the second trombone (F4 and E4). The first chord is a major third between F and A, but the remaining two counts contain dissonant harmony due to moving notes in the outer parts. In measure nine, the first and bass trombones have moving quarter notes together as the first trombone plays the quarter notes introduced in measure five, and the bass trombone begins a new phrase. The third trombone continues the pattern, but measure twelve features a gap in the line because of the rests in the eighth measure of the opening phrase. The second trombone continues the quarter note line in measure thirteen, with the first trombone following in the next measure. At times, the canon can be challenging, but a new phrase commences in measure seventeen (since the phrase maintains a length of eight measures). Like the previous phrase, the line does not continue in the third measure due to rests but continues in the second trombone in measure twenty and the first trombone in measure twenty-one. On the anacrusis to measure twenty, the bass trombone introduces a sighing motive that dominates the texture for the next six measures. Typically, the motive has two statements, and both ascend (whole or half step followed by a perfect fourth or fifth). The new phrase begins on beat two in the bass trombone in measure twenty-five. The final fifteen measures continue similarly, with only two exceptions. The first is the presence of sustained notes longer than two counts; they become much more prevalent. The second is an increase in chromaticism, which becomes more prominent in measure thirty-three. The movement concludes with an F major triad (minus the fifth). Elements requiring attention are balance and blend, dynamics, and intonation.

The fifth movement, “Moto Perpetuo,” is a lively movement in 2/2 that may be interpreted by the ensemble in a faster 4/4. It begins with a sequence of staggered entrances initiated by the bass trombone, containing five eighth notes in stepwise motion. The third

trombone enters on beat two of measure one, beginning on the bass trombone's final note. This pattern occurs in the next measure with the second and first trombones. On the downbeat of measure three, the second trombone plays, followed by the third and bass trombones. This configuration creates a rhythmic palindrome that forms a pyramid in the score; however, the pitch content and the phrase directions change, so it is not a full palindrome. Measures four and five continue this pattern; however, in measure six, the texture reveals that the first and second trombones interact dialogically while the lower two parts provide accompaniment. Langley subverts expectations in measure eight by concluding the dialogue between the upper two parts and transitioning to a cascading line leading to measure ten. The first trombone accompanies the lower three parts, which engage in contrapuntal interplay for the subsequent three measures. A new ascending line begins on the anacrusis to measure thirteen. This idea repeats in measure fifteen, initiating a sequence of entrances that resemble the palindrome from earlier; it lasts for ten measures. In measure twenty-five, the cascading shape of the line remains prominent, but the style becomes legato, and the pitch material oscillates between whole or half steps. This idea repeats three times over six measures, with each iteration starting a step lower in the first part and various changes in the lower parts. In measure thirty-one, the legato style departs in favor of the original, and the pitch content becomes more chromatic. Over the subsequent fourteen measures, the musical content remains the same, but the entrances are not as staggered and do not follow any pattern. The palindrome returns in measure forty-five with a different pitch content, but the rhythm remains the same. This idea drives the piece to its conclusion, a D minor triad on the downbeat of measure fifty-four. Elements requiring attention are dynamics, notes, and style.

In Memoriam for Trombone Quartet – Raymond Premru

Composer: Raymond Premru (1934–1998)

A legendary bass trombonist, Raymond Premru was a highly sought-after twentieth-century performer—including by the Beatles on their popular album *Sgt. Pepper's Lonely Hearts Club Band*.¹⁹² In addition to performing, he taught at the Oberlin College Conservatory of Music, Eastman School of Music, and the Guildhall School of Music in London.¹⁹³ The Dean of the conservatory said, following his passing, that “not only was he a gifted artist and teacher, he was a composer of considerable and technical stature.”¹⁹⁴ Some of his other notable compositions include *Two Pieces for Three Trombones* (1965), *Concertino for Trombone and Winds* (1962), *Tissington Variations* (1972), and *Concerto for Tuba and Orchestra* (1992). He died in 1998.

Arranger: N/A

Title: *In Memoriam for Trombone Quartet*

Movements: One Movement

Included in the NYSSMA Solo & Ensemble Catalog.

Duration: 6:00

Publisher: Ensemble Publications (Ithaca, NY)

Copyright Date: 1961

Copy Quality: Engraved

Availability: Available from numerous merchants; no digital copy available

Difficulty: Early-Advanced (3)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones; bass trombone*

¹⁹² “Raymond Premru, Professor of Trombone and Esteemed Colleague, Dies at Age 63,” Feature Stories, Oberlin College and Conservatory, last modified 1998, <https://www2.oberlin.edu/consrv/connews/current/premru.html>.

¹⁹³ Klaus G. Roy, “Raymond Premru,” Clevelandartsprize.org, last modified 1997, <https://clevelandartsprize.org/artistlist/raymond-premru/>.

¹⁹⁴ Oberlin College and Conservatory, “Raymond Premru, Professor of Trombone and Esteemed Colleague, Dies at Age 63,” last modified 1998.

Overall Range: D2 – A4

Trombone 1: D3 – A4

Trombone 2: Bb2 – E4

Trombone 3: E2 – F4

Bass Trombone: D2 – B3

Clefs: Trombone 1 (bass); Trombone 2 (bass); Trombone 3 (bass); Bass Trombone (bass)

Mutes: Straight mute in trombones two and four (m. 8-11)

Dedication: Roger Minor¹⁹⁵

Publisher Overview/Score Description:

Ensemble Publications

“Powerful work written for the untimely death of a close friend. Recorded on the CD ‘Too Scared to Play’ by High Anxiety Bones and also ‘Tritons Journey’ by the Tritone Trombone quartet. For quartet or 4-part choir.”¹⁹⁶

Technical Considerations: Dynamic Contrast; Ensemble Playing; Intonation

Dynamic Contrast – The full dynamic pallet is present in this piece for all four parts. The piece’s climax reaches a fortississimo dynamic, and the ending, among other moments, reaches pianississimo. The ensemble must establish the sound of the more extreme dynamics and then fill the various levels in between; if the ensemble does not achieve proper dynamic contrast, the performance likely will result in a mezzo piano to forte range. Finally, many dynamic changes have little to no preparation, creating a subito effect in volume differences throughout. For example, see measures twenty-two and twenty-three.

¹⁹⁵ Keeling, 69.

¹⁹⁶ “In Memoriam,” Trombone Quartets, Ensemble Publications, accessed April 13, 2015, <http://www.enspub.com/pages/04/04290.htm>.

Ensemble Playing – Ensemble communication is essential because of the numerous breath marks throughout the piece. Arguably, they are more phrase markings than breath marks, because they determine when and how the ensemble approaches certain musical decisions, specifically dynamics and entrances. If one ensemble member enters early, the desired musical effect loses its impact. There are two examples of this, both of which, deal with subito dynamic changes. The first example contains three breath marks across measures twenty-two through twenty-five. The initial breath mark in measure twenty-two occurs after a crescendo to fortissimo; the downbeat of measure twenty-three, which follows the breath mark, is a subito piano quartal/quintal chord containing E2, A3, B3, and E4. The next breath mark produces minimal dynamic impact, and the final breath mark occurs before the downbeat of measure twenty-five; it prepares a pianissimo chord on the downbeat of measure twenty-six. The second example occurs in measure forty-one, following a crescendo from fortississimo. This pause allows for both the previous chord to resonate and the preparation of a mezzo piano chord on the down beat of measure forty-two.

Intonation - Due to the prevalence of unison lines, intonation (and tone quality) should be a paramount concern for both duos (first and third trombone; second trombone trombone). The straight mute, in its lone occurrence between measures eight and eleven, could also play a factor for the ensemble because of its effect on the trombone and the timbrel mixture (the first and third trombones are unmuted). Finally, there are very few consonant chords in this work. Each member must confidently play their note so that the dissonance sounds intentional (as written) rather than incorrect.

Piece Description:

In Memoriam by Premru is a unique work within the trombone quartet repertoire. It begins with a unison line between the first and third trombones that includes only three different pitches (D3, E3, and F3). While this musical idea typically ascends, its final iteration ascends and descends, creating a palindrome that serves as the motivic foundation of the piece. In measure eight, the second and fourth trombones enter with straight mutes. This juxtaposition of parts becomes the status quo for the rest of the piece (occasionally with variation). After three measures, the first and third trombones enter with the established motive; the idea then expands by three more pitches (G3, A3, and Bb3). A full ensemble unison begins on the anacrusis to measure fourteen. The pitch content of this line is D3, E3, F3, Bb3, and B3. When the third iteration of this line begins on the anacrusis to measure seventeen, the second and fourth trombones play a tied note on D3 so that the line is offset by one beat from the other two parts. This departure creates an intense dissonance that appears to linger, eventually leading to subito *fortissimo* (E3-F3-B3-D4) and fortississimo (F3-B3-C4-E4) chords.

The following section features the most prominent harmony of the work, as well as the most independence among parts. More eighth-note ideas that move between unison/octave and major thirds/sixths become notable. Measure thirty-four is marked *un poco animato*, (“a little animated”) and entails a syncopated melodic line in the first trombone part. The line is picked up in measure thirty-six by the third trombone part. The composer marks *molto accelerando* on beat three of measure thirty-seven that builds up to four large chords in measures forty and forty-one; there are two eighth-note chords (E2-A3-B3-D4) and two half-note chords (F2-B3-C4-E4) that alternate and have increasing dynamics levels on each subsequent chord (*f* – *ff* – *sfz* – *fff*). The energy and style of the opening return, but the ensemble now plays in harmony instead of unison. In measure fifty-two, the ensemble begins a diminuendo on a chord containing Eb3, F3, Ab3,

and Bb3. The composer marks the ending before the fermata *niente*. In measure sixty-three, the opening material finally returns, focusing on the main motive (D3-E3-F3). The last four measures utilize three different chords: the first is a C major seventh chord in first inversion, the second is an E minor seventh chord in root position, and the third is a combination of A2, E3, A3, and B4. This progression creates the feeling/perception of an unresolved ending. Items to consider in this piece are dynamic contrast, intonation, and ensemble playing.

Two Bagatelles for Four Trombones – Alfred Reed

Composer: Alfred Reed (1921–2005)

Born in 1921, Alfred Reed became one of America's most prolific and frequently performed composers.¹⁹⁷ In 1953, he became conductor of the Baylor Symphony Orchestra at Baylor University (Waco, TX);¹⁹⁸ during his time there, he also received his B.M. in 1955 and his M.M. in 1956.¹⁹⁹ In 1966, he accepted a dual appointment in Theory-Composition and Music Education at the University of Miami.²⁰⁰ He published over 250 compositions through his life.²⁰¹ He died in 2005.

Arranger: N/A

Title: *Two Bagatelles for Four Trombones*

Movements: Two Movements

1. Cantando (quarter note equals 76 bpm/60 bpm)
2. Scherzo (dotted quarter note equals 100 bpm)

The UIL Database contains this work but does not have any movement specifications.

Included in the NYSSMA Solo & Ensemble Catalog.

Duration: 6:00

Publisher: C.L. Barnhouse Company (Oskaloosa, IA)

Copyright Date: 1983

Copy Quality: Engraved

Availability: Available from numerous merchants; no digital download available

¹⁹⁷ "Alfred Reed," Composer, Wind Repertory Project, last modified February 1, 2025, https://www.windrep.org/Alfred_Reed.

¹⁹⁸ Ibid.

¹⁹⁹ Ibid.

²⁰⁰ Ibid.

²⁰¹ Ibid.

Difficulty: Early-Advanced (3)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones; bass trombone

Overall Range: C2 – A4

Trombone 1: A2 – A4

Trombone 2: A2 – F4

Trombone 3: A2 – E4

Bass Trombone: C2 – C4

Clefs: Trombone 1 (tenor, bass); Trombone 2 (tenor, bass); Trombone 3 (bass); Bass Trombone (bass)

Mutes: N/A

Dedication: 1983 Eastern Trombone Workshop, Dr Charles J. Campbell (Director)

Publisher Overview/Score Description:

Hickey's Music Center

“20th Century (1983). American Composer Alfred Reed. Movements entitled: Cantando; Scherzando. 1st trombone plays tenor clef. 2nd trombone brief section in treble clef.”²⁰²

Technical Considerations: Intonation; Multiple Tonguing; Style

Intonation – Due to the triadic nature (both major and minor), each performer must be aware of which note they are playing in the chord. Some examples in the first movement where this is pertinent include measures fourteen through sixteen and twenty-nine through thirty-three. Also, the ensemble creates more dissonant harmonies in different sections. These are more difficult to identify because they often resolve quickly.

²⁰² “Reed, Alfred Bagatelles (2),” Trombone Quartets. Accessed February 17, 2025, https://www.hickeys.com/music/brass/trombone/trombone_ensembles/trombone_quartets/products/sku018333-reed-alfred-bagatelles-2.php.

Multiple Tonguing – Few motives in this work could require multiple tonguing.

Depending on a player's strength, the primary one in all four parts is from measure twenty-three to twenty-nine of the second movement; it continues to occur in the third trombone part until measure forty-one.

Style – This consideration primarily concerns the second movement. It is pertinent not to hold the tied notes within the line too long to keep the dance's pace and feel. The ensemble plays most occurrences of this motive together, so agreeing upon note length is crucial. Refer to measure one for an example. In the first movement, clipped notes are the greatest threat to the style when the phrase markings split into smaller groups. Measures eleven through thirteen provide a prime example of where this could happen.

Piece Description:

Alfred Reed's work is a modern one that mixes the past and present. The first movement, "Cantando," is song-like, combining steps and skips to create a compelling melody. The movement begins with a solo line in the first trombone part on beat two, reminiscent of Gregorian chant. The rest of the parts enter staggered in measures three and four. The bass trombone starts on F3 on beat two of measure three and is a descending line down to A2. The third trombone enters on F3 on beat four of the same measure, descending to C3, and the second trombone enters on F3 on beat two of measure four and only moves a half step down to E3; it cadences on an A minor triad. Reed then repeats this structure, but it is longer and spans an octave through scalar lines and skips, such as thirds. The bottom three parts enter in the same fashion as in measures three and four, except that everything is a perfect fifth higher; it cadences on an E minor triad. Following this resting point, the ensemble plays a version of the chant-like melody in harmony. It features the first trombone playing an ascending line in a descending

sequence and the bass trombone playing a descending line in a descending sequence while the other two parts supply the harmony. With the hybrid articulations over these notes and distinct slurred grouping, it is easy to clip notes; the ensemble should avoid this tendency. The tempo remains the same at rehearsal eighteen, but the style shifts with the introduction of an accented dotted eighth sixteenth. The staggered entrances also return, leading to a marcato ensemble section. This section lasts eight measures until measure twenty-five when the style switches to a contrapuntal legato section, marked “flowingly” by the composer. The subsequent thirteen measures contain homorhythmic content within a post-tonal triadic format. At measure thirty-eight, a quasi-funeral march occurs. The third trombone provides a motor rhythm, the bass trombone provides a pedal E2, and the top two have the most interesting parts. The first trombone plays a descending line comprised of quarter notes and dotted half notes. The movement ends with a progression that settles on an A major triad and has an attacca. Intonation, tone color, and balance are items to consider.

The second movement, “Scherzando,” is a lively dance movement 6/8 that features scalar ideas consisting of stepwise motion. The primary rhythm is a quartet note, two eighth notes tied together, and two more eighth notes. The main melody oscillates between an A, Ab, and A (the harmony follows suit) in measures five through seven. Measures ten through eighteen continue the primary rhythm but supply the repetitive line with dynamic contrast and a touch of chromatic variation. Measure eighteen has an adventurous feeling that introduces a new rhythm. This section may require some players to multiple tongue. At measure twenty-nine, the music thins out. The bass trombone plays two eighth notes a measure on the big beats, while the third trombone plays a motor rhythm (it is the swashbuckler theme with only two notes). After establishing this foundation, the top two parts play offset sustained notes, creating the illusion of

a single descending line. The following material fluctuates within a small range of intervals while the bass trombone plays a descending line. At measure fifty-four, the staggered entrance from the first movement reappears; the first trombone begins with each lower part subsequently entering. The musical lines present a quiet conclusion until the coda sends the musicians back to the beginning. The coda is bold and vibrant, concluding with an A in three different octaves and a power chord for the last note (three Ds and A). Items to consider are dynamics and technique.

Scherzo and Dirge for Four Trombones – Robert L. Sanders

Composer: Robert L. Sanders (1906–1974)

Born in 1906, Robert L. Sanders became the youngest dean of Indiana University's Jacobs School of Music.²⁰³ Some of his competitions include *Sonata for Clarinet and Piano* (1966), *Square-Dance* for solo trumpet (1959), and *Sonata in Eb for Trombone and Piano* (1947).²⁰⁴ *Sonata in Eb* is often recognized as the second sonata written for trombone.²⁰⁵ He died in 1974.

Arranger: N/A

Title: *Scherzo and Dirge for Four Trombones*

Movements: One Movement

Duration: 3:45

Publisher: Robert King Music owned by Alphonse Leduc (Pembroke, MA)

Copyright Date: 1948

Copy Quality: Engraved

Availability: Out of print; available via ILL

Difficulty: Early-Advanced (3)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones; bass trombone*

Overall Range: G2 – Bb4

Trombone 1: D3 – Bb4

Trombone 2: F3 – Ab4

Trombone 3: D3 – Ab4

Bass Trombone: G2 – D4

²⁰³ "Robert L. Sanders," Artists, The Kennedy Center, accessed January 25, 2025, <https://www.kennedy-center.org/artists/s/sa-sn/robert-sanders/>.

²⁰⁴ Ibid.

²⁰⁵ Gregory, 173.

Clefs: Trombone 1 (tenor); Trombone 2 (tenor); Trombone 3 (bass); Bass Trombone (bass)

Mutes: N/A

Dedication: N/A

Publisher Overview/Score Description: N/A

Technical Considerations: Tessitura

Tessitura – This factor is of primary concern for the first trombone part, which rarely descends below Bb3. Often, the part requires the performer to play notes around F4 or G4, with the only exceptions occurring in long scalar runs. For example, refer to measures thirty through forty-five, where the lowest note is Bb3; however, twenty-five of the thirty-three notes are G4 or higher. Tessitura also plays a role in the third trombone part for short bursts that last around five measures. Refer to measures forty-five through fifty for an example.

Piece Description:

Sanders' *Scherzo and Dirge* is a one-movement work containing three sections. The form is ABA' with the "A" sections being the faster "scherzo" and the "B" section being the slower "dirge." The piece begins with a diatonic Bb major line in the first trombone part. The second and third trombone parts follow suit in a canon-like structure that breaks into harmony in measure seven when the bass trombone enters. Following this, the parts weave various transpositions of the opening material, a cell of the opening line that goes to a held note, and large leaps within melodies up to long notes into a musical tapestry. In measure seventeen, trombones one and three are placed against trombones two and four. The primary line in the second and fourth trombones parts are long-duration notes followed by four eighth notes beginning on the "li" of beat one. Trombones one and three play this rhythm and a duple rhythm

to provide a contrast. A subsequent “solo” line in the first trombone occurs with the canon-like idea returning in measure twenty-five, but this time, it begins in the second trombone. In measure thirty-five, the texture changes to a more legato style in the first, second, and fourth trombones. As this progresses, trombones one and four continue, while trombones two and three partake in dialogue-like solo lines; this section requires the third trombone to ascend to Ab₄. Then, the opening line returns in measures fifty-one and fifty-two before the bass trombone takes over melodically underneath the rest of the ensemble. As the first scherzo section ends, it cadences on a Bb major triad in first inversion. Matching style, articulation, and time are the keys to this section. The dirge, labeled Adagio, is a song of mourning. The first trombone rests for the opening three measures as the rest of the ensemble sets the foundation. Before getting to the solo line, the other parts repeat the exact three-measure pattern eight times and a second pattern two times (the bass trombone is identical minus one note). The solo line requires the first trombone to have great endurance because the line starts at Db₄ and ascends in an oscillating manner up to Bb₄ in measure seventy-eight. The music eventually descends and settles on C₄ in measure eighty-seven. Between these two tentpole notes, the part never descends below Dd₄ and there are multiple Bb₄s. The section ends with trombones one, three, and four, an octave apart on Eb, and a lone Bb₃ in trombone two. Intonation could present an issue to the ensemble due to all the chromatic lines in all four parts and constant shifts in the harmonic progression. The second “scherzo” section returns in measure ninety-five. It is very similar to the opening section. The first discrepancy is in measure one hundred and seventeen, where Sanders forgoes some material (12 measures), specifically the return of the canon-like idea led by the second trombone. Instead, he uses an established legato idea to set up the return of the dialogue idea between the second and third trombones. At measure one hundred and forty, the work appears to be coming to an

end; the music teases a cadence on the downbeat of measure one hundred and forty-three before hastily continuing a chromatic line that comes to rest on a fermata in measure one hundred and forty-eight. What follows is a coda section that features a homorhythmic texture in the first three parts and a bass trombone line that fills in the gaps. The lines in each part feature a blend of chromaticism and diatonicism while mainly utilizing stepwise motion. All this momentum climaxes in measure one hundred fifty-seven, where the top two parts hold a long note, the third trombone plays a dotted-quarter note line, and the trombone four gets a shot at an ascending melodic line that features chromatic alterations to a Bb major scale. The first trombone continues it on the “la” of beat one in measure one hundred fifty-nine and ascends to Bb4, using the duple rhythm. The piece then concludes with a Bb major triad (voice crossing occurs between trombones two and three).

Three Miniatures, Op. 29 – David Uber

Composer: David Uber (1921–2007)

Born in 1927, David Uber was a prominent American composer of the twentieth century. He received his undergraduate degree from Carthage College and both his Master of Arts (M.A.) and Doctor of Education (Ed.D.) degrees from Columbia University;²⁰⁶ he also served in the U.S. Navy Band and won a scholarship to the Curtis Institute of Music in Philadelphia.²⁰⁷ In addition to his thirty-three years at the College of New Jersey (formerly Trenton State College), he worked at Westminster Choir College, Princeton University, and the National Music Camp (Interlochen).²⁰⁸ As a performer, he was the principal trombonist for the NYC Ballet Orchestra at Lincoln Center, the NYC Opera Orchestra, and the NBC Orchestra;²⁰⁹ he also was a soloist with NBC Television Opera, the Columbia Recording Symphony, the New York Brass Quintet, and the Contemporary Brass Quintet.²¹⁰ As a composer, he wrote over 400 works and received multiple accolades for his compositions;²¹¹ two of his other trombone quartets are entitled *Four Impressions* (1997) and *Trombones Limited* (2000). He died in 2007.

Arranger: N/A

Title: *Three Miniatures, Op. 29*

Movements: Three Movements

1. Twilight's Ballad – Moderato (half note equals 66 bpm)
2. Sorcerer's Dance (quarter note equals 100 bpm)
3. Chorale Moderne – Molto Sostenuto (quarter note equals 63 bpm)

²⁰⁶ "David Uber," Composers, Kendor Music Publishing, accessed April 13, 2025, <https://kendormusic.com/product-category/composers/david-a-uber/>.

²⁰⁷ Ibid.

²⁰⁸ Ibid.

²⁰⁹ "Uber, David," Composers/Arrangers, United Music & Media Publishers, accessed April 13, 2025, <https://ummpstore.com/collections/uber-david>.

²¹⁰ Ibid.

²¹¹ Kendor Music Publishing, "David Uber."

Included in the NYSSMA Solo & Ensemble Catalog.

Duration: 5:00

Publisher: Ensemble Publications (Ithaca, NY)

Copyright Date: 1967

Copy Quality: Engraved

Availability: Available from numerous merchants; no digital download available

Difficulty: Early-Advanced (3)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones; bass trombone

Overall Range: F1 – Bb4

Trombone 1: G3 – Bb4

Trombone 2: C3 – F4

Trombone 3: G2 – G4

Bass Trombone: F1 – A3

Clefs: Trombone 1 (bass); Trombone 2 (bass); Trombone 3 (bass); Bass Trombone (bass)

Mutes: N/A

Dedication: N/A

Publisher Overview/Score Description:

Ensemble Publications

“Three Movements: Twilight’s Ballad; Sorcerer’s Dance; Chorale Moderne.”²¹²

Technical Considerations: Intonation; Style

Intonation - This item is worth consideration in all three movements but is emphasized in the second and third movements. In the second movement, having a confident

²¹² “Miniatures (3), Op. 29,” Trombone Quartets, Ensemble Publications, accessed April 13, 2025, <http://www.enspub.com/pages/04/04320.htm>.

approach to dissonance will be crucial. Uber layers a perfect fourth over a tritone (there are multiple versions). The first occurs in measures two through four and includes pitches E3, Bb3, and Eb4; the second occurs in measures seven through nine and includes A3, Eb4, and Ab4. Also, emphasizing perfect fourths and fifths will play an important role. In the third movement, triadic harmony is prominent because it is a chorale. Understanding one's role within each chord is essential since various triads occur throughout both "A" sections. For example, the opening "A" section concludes on an F major triad, with the root occurring in the first and fourth parts, the fifth in the third part, and the third in the second part. Additionally, the "B" section concludes with a C-dominant seventh chord that omits the fifth. The first and fourth parts play the root, the third part plays the third, and the second part plays the seventh.

Style - There are two aspects to this item. The first is the contrast between the second movement and the first and third movements. The two outer movements are legato, and the ensemble should emphasize smoothness and lyricism. This responsibility rests with the first trombonist in the first movement, as it is a quasi-solo, and the entire ensemble is responsible in the third due to the homophonic and homorhythmic texture. The second movement must supply the contrast via crisper articulation with more pronounced onsets. Be careful to avoid tongue stops (clipped notes) that yield "taht" articulations as well as a sound that lacks a clear tone with a core.

Piece Description:

This short work for the trombone quartet by David Uber provides both the performers and the audience with variety in an approachable setting. The first movement, "Twilight Ballad," has a programmatic title, but its musical content does not explicitly evoke a specific image. It is

roughly an ABA form centered around a motif containing a half note or two quarter notes and quarter-note triplets. It begins with a four-measure melody in the first trombone part that contains two smaller segments connected by repetition (measures one and three). The first segment begins with a minor third skip followed by a descending stepwise motion into measure two, which features one skip from D4 to F4 and a whole step from Db4 to Eb4. The second segment's primary difference is measure four, which features the skip oscillating between Eb4 and G4 followed by a resolution down to Bb3. As this quasi-solo occurs, the lower three parts provide accompaniment and support via triadic harmony. In measures six through ten, the third trombonist supports the first trombonist, who continues as the primary melodic source. The line climaxes in measure eight with half notes in trombones one, two, and four and descending skips in the third trombone part. The section concludes with a sustained F4 in the top part and legato quarter notes in the lower three parts. In measure eleven, the "B" section begins; however, it provides contrast via a homorhythmic construction while retaining the importance of the quarter-note triplet. The melody remains in the first trombone often utilizing lower neighbors and descending stepwise motion, but the bass trombone part interrupts it two times (measure fourteen and measures nineteen and twenty); the middle two parts contain repetitive notes and lower/upper neighbors in harmonic support. The second "A" section returns in measure twenty-two. The first four measures of this section are a reiteration of the opening material. The following six measures (26-31) recall measures five through seven; the main difference is the inclusion of the second and fourth parts. The movement concludes with an F major triad. Items to consider are intonation, rhythm, and style.

The second movement, "Sorcerer's Dance," also has a programmatic title; however, the music evokes this image more clearly. The form is also ABA, with the "B" section being slightly

slower. It begins with a motor rhythm in the bass trombone, a perfect fifth (C2 to G2) ostinato. The higher three parts enter on the anacrusis of measure three, utilizing quartal and quintal harmonies. The first collection contains F3, Bb3, and C3 (relatively consonant), while the second collection contains E3, B3, and Eb4 (highly dissonant due to the layering of a perfect fourth over a tritone). This idea recurs in measure seven, transposed up a perfect fourth. On the anacrusis to measure twelve, the texture changes to a dialogue between the top three parts and the bass trombone. The bass trombone plays C3, F2, and C2, while the higher three parts play their notes with the pre-established harmony. The rhythm morphs across multiple measures, creating a drive that complements the crescendo. In measure twenty, the bass trombone has a solo underneath sustained pitches. The “B” section begins in measure twenty-four with a new ostinato in the bass trombone and staggered solo entrances across the ensemble, leading to a denser texture. These entrances from measure twenty-six to thirty-three are as follows: the second trombone enters first (26-27), the third trombone enters second (28-29), the first trombone enters third (30-31), and the second trombone reenters (32-33). In measure forty-one, the “A” section returns with slight variation. The bass trombone ostinato from measures one through ten returns with no change, while the eighth notes and the harmonies in the top three parts reappear with the inclusion of triadic harmony. The triads that occur are Bb minor, C major, and E minor, and they appear at the end of the line. In the final four measures, the bass trombone has a quasi-solo line while the top three parts sustain an E minor triad; the movement concludes on a C major seventh chord. Items to consider are articulation, intonation, and style.

The composer presents the third movement, “Chorale Moderne,” in a neoclassical style. Like the previous two movements, the form is also ABA. The first “A” section is relatively tonal and stacks the parts in staggered entrances. It begins with the first trombone playing an

ascending stepwise quarter-note line that morphs into a triplet line. In the third measure, the second trombone part switches to triplets and eighth notes in support of the first trombone, while the third trombone plays eighth notes. The new phrase begins in measure five, pairing the first trombone with the bass trombone in octaves and then in contrary motion. At rehearsal one, the music resets, returning to the beginning. It crescendos and texturally grows quickly to the section's climax in measure twelve. An echo leading to a F major triad follows this moment. The "B" section begins in measure seventeen; it relies on a key change, homorhythmic texture, and eighth note streams to differentiate it. The top three parts establish this section's rhythmic motive (two eighth notes, a dotted quarter note, and three eighth notes). After this, the middle parts continue homorhythmically, while the first and bass trombones play distinct lines to create a denser texture. This section ends with a C-dominant seventh chord. The second "A" section begins at Rehearsal three; its first eight measures are identical to the movement's opening eight measures, and the label *dolce* signifies the new material. This last section centers around fortepiano (*fp*) chords that quickly develop into pianissimo chords and a conclusion on an F major triad. Items to consider in this music are dynamic contrast and intonation.

Chapter 5: Level 4 Works

Suite for Trombone Quartet – Peter Atherton

Composer: Peter Atherton (d. 1969)

Peter Atherton was the principal trombonist of the Midland Light Orchestra from 1960–1969.²¹³

The Midland Light Orchestra was one of the BBC’s several Regional Staff orchestras specializing in light music for radio.²¹⁴ In 1966, he accepted a position to teach music at the Aymestrey School (a boys’ preparatory school) in Worcestershire, UK;²¹⁵ he taught there until 1969.²¹⁶ He had exceptional rapport with his students and he “found music in boys whose parents felt there was little to none”²¹⁷ in them. There is little information available concerning his life. Two of his other brass works are Dialogue for Tubas and Diversions on a Fourth for brass sextet. He died in 1969 in a fatal car crash.²¹⁸

Arranger: N/A

Title: *Suite for Trombone Quartet*

Movements: Four Movements

1. Intrada – Majestically (quarter note equals 160 bpm)
2. Waltz – Very Fast (dotted half note equals 96 bpm)
3. Chorale – Smoothly (quarter note equals 80 bpm)
4. Finale (quarter note equals 180 bpm)

Duration: 7:00

²¹³ Fred Mercer, “Midland Tragedy,” *Crescendo International* 7, no. 11 (June 1969): 32,

<https://nationaljazzarchive.org.uk/explore/journals/crescendo/crescendo-1969-june/1272892?q=peter%20atherton>.

²¹⁴ Brian Reynolds, “The BBC Midland Light Orchestra,” *Masters of Melody*, accessed April 24, 2025, <http://www.mastersofmelody.co.uk/>.

²¹⁵ Paula Griffith, “Atherton Peter,” *Music Teachers, Staff, Aymestreyschool.com*, accessed April 24, 2025, <https://www.aymestreyschool.com/music-teachers.html>.

²¹⁶ *Ibid.*

²¹⁷ *Ibid.*

²¹⁸ *Ibid.*

Publisher: Studio Music Company (London, England)

Copyright Date: 1967

Copy Quality: Manuscript

Availability: Available from numerous merchants; no digital download available

Difficulty: Advanced (4)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones[^]; bass trombone

Overall Range: Bb1 – C5

Trombone 1: G3 – C5

Trombone 2: Bb2 – Bb4

Trombone 3: Ab2 – F4

Bass Trombone: Bb1 – D4

Clefs: Trombone 1 (bass); Trombone 2 (bass); Trombone 3 (bass); Bass Trombone (bass)

*A Bb treble clef copy is provided for parts one through three

Mutes: N/A

Dedication: N/A

Publisher Overview/Score Description:

Studio Music Company

“3 Tenor (TC/BC) and Bass (BC).”²¹⁹

Technical Considerations: Articulation; Glissando; Mixed Meter; Tessitura

Articulation – Atherton incorporates numerous articulations throughout this four-movement suite. These markings include accents, slurs, marcato accents, staccatos, and tenutos. There is one hybrid articulation that consists of accent and tenuto markings. It

²¹⁹ “Suite for Trombone Quartet,” Instrumental, Studio Music Company, accessed April 22, 2025, <https://www.studio-music.co.uk/m050034698>.

occurs in measures sixty through sixty-two. Ensure these accented dotted quarter notes have a strong onset while maintaining note length.

Glissando – This technique only occurs in the second movement for four measures (twenty-five through twenty-eight), specifically the second and third trombone parts. The second trombone glissandos from D4 to Bb3 and back to D4. Fifth position is required for the Bb3 so the glissando can be executed effectively. The third trombone glissandos from Bb3 to Eb3 and back to Bb3. These notes do not occur on the same partial, making the glissando more technically challenging. The most effective approach is to quickly move the slide from fifth to first position after playing F#3 since F3 occurs within both partials (sixth or first position) or to move from seventh to second after the E3.

Mixed Meter – Except for the second movement, each movement contains examples of mixed meter. The first movement begins with a pattern that occurs twice in the first ten measures. It moves from 5/4 to 4/4 to 6/4 to 5/4 and then 3/4. A second pattern occurs twice in the subsequent six measures, moving from 4/4 to 3/4 and 2/4. In the third movement, the meter alternates between 3/4 and 2/4 time. The most rapid alternations occur in measures five through seven. In the fourth movement, 2/4, 3/4, 4/4, 6/4, and 7/8 measures all occur. They rarely alternate consecutively (the primary occurrence occurs in measures eight through ten). The 7/8 measures occur intermittently as a unifying musical refrain.

Tessitura – This aspect is most pertinent in the first trombone part, specifically in the first and fourth movements. In the first movement, the first trombone plays in nearly every measure and only descends to C4 or lower twelve times. The remaining notes are

higher. This pitch content similarly applies to the fourth movement, where the part only descends to C4 or below thirteen times.

Piece Description:

This quartet, a lesser-known work from Peter Atherton's limited compositional output, combines traditional and contemporary ideas. The first movement, "Intrada," is an opening fanfare in an ABA' form. It begins with the bass trombone on beat one and the rest of the ensemble on beat two. The first ten measures break down into two five-measure phrases with the same meter sequence (5/4, 4/4, 6/4, 5/4, and 3/4). The first phrase generates a sense of syncopation through the prevalence of mixed meters. The second phrase employs a hemiola through two-beat cells consisting of two eighth notes and a quarter note. The third phrase begins in measure eleven, initially seeming to continue the pattern the previous ten measures established; instead, it comprises two three-measure subphrases within a metric pattern (4/4, 3/4, and 2/4). The first subphrase resembles the opening fanfare, while the second subphrase emphasizes syncopation through a hemiola across the 3/4 and 2/4 measures. The "B" section begins in measure seventeen. Its first eight measures consist of three separate ideas. The bass trombone plays a whole note, Bb1, in every measure. Simultaneously, the second trombone plays a half-note line that alternates between F3 and several lower pitches (D3, C3, and Bb2), initially functioning as the primary melodic line but transitioning to an accompaniment role after three measures. The melody in the first and third trombones (typically harmonized a perfect fifth apart) initially functions as an accompaniment figure but forms a distinct melodic line of ascending half and whole steps on beats two and four in the first three measures; its phrase structure comprises three- and five-measure segments. This texture fades in measure twenty-four with a descending line, transitioning to a bell-tone structure with ensemble divisions. The first

and third trombones play half notes on beats one and three, while the second and fourth trombones play a half note on beat two and a tied quarter note on beat four. All four parts become independent in measure thirty-one, forming a bell-tone structure. The section concludes with a crescendo (measure thirty-eight) and ritardando (measure forty). The second “A” section begins in measure forty-one. This section, which is only six measures long, is transposed up a whole step. The movement concludes with a D major triad resolving to a unison octave D (D2 in the bass trombone; D3 in the second and third trombones; D4 in the first trombone). Essential considerations include articulation and intonation.

The second movement, “Waltz,” is a quickly paced dance in a traditional ABA form. It begins with the third and bass trombones establishing the accompaniment figures (a configuration of quarter notes and eighth notes in the third trombone; quarter notes on beats one and three in the bass trombone). The melody begins in measure five in the first and second trombones (a third apart); it contains three different rhythms. The first is a quarter note followed by a half note, the second is three quarter notes, and the third is two dotted quarter notes, a hemiola. In measure thirteen, the third trombone becomes the primary melodic voice, playing the first trombone line an octave lower. The first and second trombones provide the accompaniment, and the bass trombone continues playing dotted half notes, which began in measure five. On the anacrusis to measure twenty-four, the first trombone regains the melody, and a glissando occurs within a hemiola figure in the second and third trombones. In measure thirty-three, the “B” section begins. The first seven measures are homorhythmic and contain two rhythmic figures. The first is a dotted quarter note, followed by an eighth note and a quarter note. The second is two quarter notes on beats two and three. In the eighth measure, the first and third trombones rest while the second and fourth trombones play in octaves displaced by one beat (the second

trombone plays on beat one, and the fourth trombone plays on beat two). This section alternates with a section that includes the first and third trombones. In measure fifty-six, the bass trombone initiates the hemiola rhythm; the upper three parts enter with the same rhythm in measure fifty-eight. In measure sixty-five, the music adopts a contrapuntal texture before returning to the D.S. in measure thirteen. The movement concludes with material similar to the beginning of the “B” section, leading to a perfect fifth in octaves. Essential elements are articulation, glissandi, intonation, and style.

The third movement, “Chorale,” is also an ABA’ form. It begins with the third and fourth trombones. After the initial two measures in 2/4, the parts have note changes on alternating beats, creating a quasi-suspension. The first and second trombones enter in measures five and six, leading to a more traditional choral texture in measures eight through ten. The quasi-suspension returns in measure eleven, except in the first and second trombones, and the pitch content is higher. In measure nineteen, a caesura occurs, effectively concluding the first “A” section. The “B” section begins in measure twenty, which the composer marks as “Slightly faster.” The primary melodic material in this section begins in measure twenty-one on G4 in the first trombone. The third trombone assumes the melody in measure twenty-three, a perfect fourth lower; it primarily consists of quarter notes. Continuous eighth-note lines are underneath this melody in the second and fourth trombones. The music blends these two ideas in the subsequent measures until a caesura in measure thirty. The following eight measures begin with an “A tempo” and are more homorhythmic. In measure thirty-nine, the second “A” section begins nearly identically; the only difference is that it begins a perfect fifth lower. The harmonies in this last section are dense and complex, often moving between traditional triadic and more contemporary constructions (none of which is functional in a common practice sense). The

movement concludes with an E major triad. Essential elements include dynamics, intonation, and phrasing.

The fourth movement, “Finale,” effectively integrates ideas from the previous three movements. It begins with a homorhythmic line in 7/8 time for the first four measures that becomes a unifying musical refrain throughout the movement. In measure six, the fanfare from the opening movement occurs via staggered entrances throughout the ensemble. The more legato material from the first movement then occurs in measure thirteen. In measure twenty, an eighth note line in contrary motion occurs in the outer voices (the second trombone moves with the first and the third with the fourth), leading to a homorhythmic version of the fanfare. The 7/8 refrain occurs in measure twenty-five, preparing the next section, which alternates with a pair of 4/4 measures. In measure thirty-one, the material, while in 4/4, recalls the melody from the second movement. This modified theme passes from the third to the fourth to the first trombone before the 7/8 refrain occurs again in measure forty-two. A texture derived from the chorale occurs five measures later while the first trombone rests. The second trombone provides a line that repeats every three measures, while the lower two parts provide a harmonic foundation. In measure fifty-eight, following a 6/4 measure and crescendo, the fanfare construction returns without the accent articulations. In measure sixty-four, a bass trombone solo occurs within a full-ensemble crescendo that lasts until measure sixty-nine. In measure seventy, the music is marked “Slower” by the composer, leading to an allargando final six measures. This change allows the music to retain its fanfare style, relax, and provide a satisfying conclusion on a G major triad. Essential considerations are articulation, mixed meters, style, and tessitura.

Quartet for Trombones – Leslie Bassett

Composer: Leslie Bassett (1923–2016)

Born in 1923, Leslie Bassett—a trombonist, pianist, and cellist—was a World War II veteran (13th Armored Division Band).²²⁰ After the war, he became an instructor of composition and theoretical subjects at the University of Michigan in 1952.²²¹ During his tenure at the University of Michigan, he was a founding member of the University of Michigan’s Electronic Music Studio²²² and became the chairman of the composition department in 1977.²²³ Bassett also was an award-winning composer; he received a Fulbright Fellowship to Paris (1950–1951), the Prix de Rome (1961–1963), the Pulitzer Prize (1966), two Koussevitsky Music Foundation awards (1971; 1991), two Guggenheim Fellowships (1973; 1980), and a Naumburg Recording Award (1974).²²⁴ His other works for trombone are *Sonata for Trombone and Piano* (1967), *Suite for Unaccompanied Trombone* (1970), and *Concerto Lirico* (1984). He died in 2016.

Arranger: N/A

Title: *Quartet for Trombones*

Movements: One Movement

The UIL Database contains this work.

Duration: 5:00

Publisher: Robert King Music owned by Alphonse Leduc (Pembroke, MA)

Copyright Date: 1954

Copy Quality: Engraved

²²⁰ “Biography,” Lesliebassett.com, accessed March 27, 2025, <https://lesliebassett.com/biography/>.

²²¹ Leslie Bassett, *Quartet for Trombones* (Robert King Music, 1954), 8.

²²² Lesliebassett.com, “Biography.”

²²³ Bruce Nathan Keeling, “The Trombone Quartet,” 88.

²²⁴ Lesliebassett.com, “Biography.”

Availability: Available from numerous merchants with potential for a shipping delay; no digital download available

Difficulty: Advanced (4)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones; bass trombone*

Overall Range: Eb2 – B4

Trombone 1: C#3 – B4

Trombone 2: A2 – Bb4

Trombone 3: F2 – Bb4

Bass Trombone: Eb2 – G4

Clefs: Trombone 1 (bass); Trombone 2 (bass); Trombone 3 (bass); Bass Trombone (bass)

Mutes: N/A

Dedication: N/A

Publisher Overview/Score Description:

Hickey's Music

“20th century. American composer Leslie Bassett. One of the earliest modern works written specifically for trombone quartet. Duration 5:00 minutes. Score & parts.”²²⁵

Leslie Bassett

“This quartet was written primarily as a recital piece for trombonists interested in developing the polish of fine ensemble performance. It embodies two contrasting aspects of trombone music: the rhythm and freedom of the jazz trombonist and the sense of dignity and sonority found in the works of such masters as the Gabriellis, Schutz, and

²²⁵ “Bassett, Leslie Quartet,” Trombone Quartets, Hickeys.com, accessed March 27, 2025, <https://www.hickeys.com/search/products/sku007843.php>.

Monteverdi... It was one of the first compositions to win the endorsement of the National Association of College Wind and Percussion Instructors.”²²⁶

Technical Considerations: Rhythm; Style

Rhythm – While no overtly challenging rhythms exist in this work, the constant syncopation and incorporation of tied notes can make phrases more complex. Many rhythmic figures are deceptively difficult, meaning they appear simple but may challenge the ensemble. A primary example of this syncopation is in the bass trombone part between Rehearsals A and B (the sixth through ninth measures of Rehearsal A).

Metronome use could address these challenges and be highly beneficial for practice.

Style – Generally, this quartet should be in a lighter, more commercial style due to its jazz influences. This approach is conducive to more angular lines (see piece description) and makes the accents and *Decalmato* section more prominent. This work can readily become heavy, lethargic, and consistently forte. For example, measures eight through ten must be light and soft (as the dynamic level indicates) to maximize the three accented eighth notes beginning on the upbeat of three in measure eleven. Additionally, the staggered entrances necessitate the style to be consistent across the ensemble. Two examples illustrate this point. The first example comprises the piece’s opening nine measures. The first trombone begins the piece, the second trombone enters in measure four, and the bass trombone enters two measures later. The second example occurs from Rehearsal D to Rehearsal E. This time, the third trombone initiates the passage with the first trombone entering second (four measures later), the second trombone entering third (four measures later), and the fourth trombone entering three measures before Rehearsal

²²⁶ Leslie Bassett, *Quartet for Trombones*, 8.

E. While there are some minor differences in articulation for each entry, the rhythms are mostly identical and require consistency.

Piece Description:

This quartet, written by Leslie Bassett, is a standard of the repertoire that is deceptively difficult, providing challenges for all ensemble members. It is divided into five sections, alternating between faster and slower tempos. It begins with an upbeat-driven melody in the first trombone that contains pitch repetition, syncopation, and angular construction. The syncopation pairs with the note repetition to create the main motive and a two-measure phrase that develops throughout the piece; the angularity is the primary component of measures three through five via multiple adjacent skips. The second trombone enters in measure four with the rhythm from measure two, the fourth trombone enters in measure seven, and the third trombone enters last in measure nine. These staggered entrances suggest the development of a contrapuntal texture, yet a homorhythmic texture begins when the third trombone enters (measure nine); this moment lasts for two measures before the parts diverge again. The first climax occurs seven measures before Rehearsal A, featuring a forte, sustained quartal chord (A3, D4, G4) in the top three parts and a solo line in the bass trombone part. Over the following five measures, the dynamics diminuendo to piano. At Rehearsal A, the bass trombone remains juxtaposed to the top three parts. For example, the bass trombone plays a rhythmic line as the top three parts sustain a G minor triad; conversely, the bass trombone is silent when trombones one through three have a rhythmic line.

The first slower section, *un poco meno mosso*, begins eight measures before Rehearsal B. The primary change is the lack of syncopated rhythms and the prevalence of legato phrases. The first trombone provides the melody, while the third trombone provides the bass line; two measures later, the second trombone introduces a countermelody. At Rehearsal B, the style

becomes less legato while retaining reduced syncopated. The composer includes breath marks to imply phrase structure rather than to facilitate the line within an impending *ritardando*. At Rehearsal C, the second trombone becomes the primary melodic voice, and the syncopated rhythms return in preparation for the *Declamato* section seven measures before Rehearsal D. This seven-measure phrase contains numerous articulations and a texture that juxtaposes the top three parts with the bass trombone. Rehearsal D begins with a *poco accelerando* led by a third trombone solo that returns the music to tempo one. This solo line ascends to G4 at its climax and then transforms into sustained notes. Concurrently, the first trombone reintroduces the opening melodic fragment, which eventually ascends to A4. The second trombone continues with the melody on the anacrusis to the eighth measure of Rehearsal D, transposed a perfect fifth lower, and the bass trombone enters on the anacrusis to the twelfth measure a major ninth lower. The syncopation resumes its earlier role. At Rehearsal E, Bassett juxtaposes a six-measure legato phrase with a five-measure marcato phrase. The marcato features two groups of two in conflict with each other. The first trombone pairs with the third trombone; they start with sustained notes before abruptly switching to a virtuosic triplet line. The second and fourth trombones pair together, beginning with chromatic eighth-note lines that conclude with a sustained note. A forte chord with a decrescendo concludes this faster section and simultaneously introduces the second *meno mosso* section.

This slower section retains the legato style from the proceeding section while containing unique characteristics. Of these unique traits, the most significant ones are arguably the incorporation of stepwise motion and triplets. In the third measure of Rehearsal F, the composer marks an *accelerando* followed by a *sforzando* chord, two fortissimo chords, and a final *sforzando* eighth-note chord. The seventh measure of Rehearsal F serves as the recapitulation

that completes the work; it also contains independent and homorhythmic textures that incorporate the piece's most demanding passages. The first trombone begins with the melody again before passing it to the third trombone. The last phrase, spanning eight measures and marked *Presto* by the composer, contains two of the most angular lines in the top two parts (trombone two ascends to Bb4) and concludes with a fortepiano crescendo C major triad. Items worth considering are rhythm, time, and style.

Drei Equali für vier Posaunen, WoO 30 – Ludwig van Beethoven/arr. Keith Brown

Composer: Ludwig van Beethoven (1770–1828)

Born in 1770, Ludwig van Beethoven is arguably the most important figure in Western music; he is often credited with integrating cyclic and programmatic elements into music, expanding the orchestra, introducing the chorus and text to symphony, and writing out cadenza sections in concertos.²²⁷ He studied with composers such as Franz Joseph Haydn, J.G. Albrechtsberger, and Antonio Salieri and after losing his ability to perform due to deafness, he was able to support himself independently of a post or patron in Vienna by selling his music to publishers (and donations from local nobility).²²⁸ In his compositions, he simultaneously mastered the classical style and defined his personal style with rhythmic drive and emphasis on the outer movements;²²⁹ he also expanded Haydn's concept of thematic development into a cyclic/structural idea.²³⁰ He also, "embraced great contrasts, changed the traditional number and order of movements, spanned wider tonal relationships, added a coda as a major element of structure, and successfully introduced many other innovations."²³¹ He wrote approximately 250 works, including 9 symphonies. He died in 1827.

Arranger: Keith Brown (1933 – 2018)

Born in 1933, Keith Brown was an influential musician in the trombone community for most of his life. He received his bachelor's degree from the University of Southern California in 1957 and received his master's degree in 1964.²³² As an educator, he served as the director of instrumental activities, professor music, and conductor of the University Orchestra and Wind

²²⁷ Poultney, 124.

²²⁸ Ibid, 125.

²²⁹ Ibid, 124.

²³⁰ Ibid, 124.

²³¹ Ibid, 124.

²³² "Vernon Keith Brown," Obituaries, Allencares.com, accessed April 6, 2025, <https://www.allencares.com/obituaries/Vernon-Brown-6/#!/Obituary>.

Ensemble at Temple University (1965 – 1971) before becoming the Professor of Trombone and Director of Orchestras at the University of Indiana (1971 – 1997).²³³ As a performer, he was a member of the following ensembles and organizations: Aspen Music Festival Faculty (1957 – 1969), New York Brass Quintet (1958 – 1959), Symphony of the Air (1958 – 1959), Casals Festival Orchestra (1958 – 1980), Philadelphia Orchestra (1959 – 1962), Metropolitan Opera Orchestra (1962 – 1965), Chamber Music Society of Lincoln Center (1969 – 1989), Marlboro Festival Chamber Music Series (1970 – 1973), and the New York Chamber Orchestra (1970 – 1974).²³⁴ He also conducted multiple ensembles, had an extensive discography, and published ten volumes of orchestral excerpts for trombone and tuba, among a wide range of arrangements and publications.²³⁵ He died in 2018.

Title: *Drei Equali für vier Posaunen*, WoO 30 (*Three Equals for Four Trombones*, WoO 30)

Movements: Three Movements

1. Andante (Molto Sostenuto)
2. Poco Adagio
3. Poco Sostenuto

The UIL Database contains this work, but it is the version from Ensemble Publications rather than International Music Company; it does not provide any movement specifications.

Included in the NYSSMA Solo & Ensemble Catalog, but none of the arrangements are Keith Brown's edition from International Music Company.

Duration: 5:30

²³³ Ibid.

²³⁴ Ibid.

²³⁵ Douglas Yeo, "Keith Brown (1933 – 2018)," *Thelasttrombone.com*, last modified May 10, 2018, <https://thelasttrombone.com/2018/05/10/keith-brown-1933-2018/>.

Publisher: International Music Company (New York)

*This edition by this publisher was selected because it includes the original version of the work that includes two alto trombones (with editor annotations in parentheses) and a different version that requires no alto trombones.

Copyright Date: 1812/2000

Copy Quality: Engraved

Availability: Available from numerous merchants; no digital download available

Difficulty: Advanced (4)

Instrumentation (Original): Two alto trombones; tenor trombone; bass trombone*

Instrumentation (Version II): Three tenor trombones; bass trombone*

Overall Range (Original): G2 – C5

Alto Trombone 1: B3 – C5

Alto Trombone 2: G3 – Ab4

Tenor Trombone: D3 – E4

Bass Trombone: G2 – D4

Overall Range (Version II): E2 – A4

Trombone 1: G#3 – A4

Trombone 2: E3 – F4

Trombone 3: B2 – C#4

Bass Trombone: E2 – B3

Clef(s) (Original): Alto Trombone 1 (alto); Alto Trombone 2 (alto); Tenor Trombone (tenor);

Bass Trombone (bass)

Clef(s) (Version II): Trombone 1 (bass); Trombone 2 (bass); Trombone 3 (bass); Bass

Trombone (bass)

Mutes: N/A

Dedication: N/A

Publisher Overview/Score Description: N/A

Technical Considerations: Intonation; Phrasing

Intonation – Since this is a piece from the early nineteenth century, the harmony is triadic and functional. Each ensemble member must understand their role within each chord, adjusting intonation to tune each chord. For example, measures twenty-six through thirty-one in the second movement require each ensemble member to adjust with each chord. The first chord is a D major triad in first inversion (third in the first alto part), the second chord is an A minor seventh chord (third in the bass; seventh in first alto), the third chord is a D major triad, the fourth chord is a G# fully diminished seventh chord, the fifth and sixth chords are an E dominant seventh chord in first inversion (third in the bass; seventh in second alto), the seventh chord is a C# fully diminished chord in second inversion (fifth in the bass; seventh in the third trombone; third in first alto), the last two chords are D major triads. Many other examples require this awareness for an accurate performance to occur. Balance and blend are also essential to performing these chords accurately. Two alto trombones may pose difficulties for the ensemble's balance and, therefore, the intonation.

Phrasing – The composer provides minimal instructions concerning dynamics and phrasing in this work. When dynamics are included, they are typically the end goal of phrases or subito dynamics. For an example of minimal markings, see measures thirty

through thirty-eight of the first movement. No dynamic or phrase markings guide the performer from piano (m. 30) to forte (m. 38). The forte is not a subito dynamic, so the ensemble must make a musical decision. Conversely, measure forty is at a fortissimo dynamic, and measure forty-one is at a piano dynamic; this situation is a subito dynamic change even though the composer does not clarify this. Finally, Keith Brown endeavors to provide phrasing and dynamics encapsulated in parentheses.

Piece Description:

There is an argument that this work, performed at Beethoven's funeral, is the definitive trombone quartet. The movements are similar while remaining distinct, and no part is subordinate to another. This description is of the original piece and not the second version included in this arrangement. The first movement, "Andante," is the first of three chorales. It begins with a D minor triad in root position. In the second measure, the music changes to a D minor triad in first inversion, leading to an A major triad in measure three. The following eight measures separate the first alto trombone from the rest of the ensemble. The first alto trombone plays an ascending line in stepwise motion (a minor trichord) on beat two of measure four, and the rest of the ensemble answers on beat two of measure five. The bass trombone plays the same figure as the first alto, and the phrase concludes on a C major triad. This pattern occurs again beginning on measure eight's second beat. The two differences are that the ascending stepwise motion is a major trichord (F-G-A) in both the first and fourth trombones, and it concludes with an A dominant seventh chord that resolves to a D major triad in measure twelve. The phrase at measure thirteen resembles the opening phrase; however, it begins with an A major triad and transitions to staggered entrances across the ensemble. The first alto trombone initiates this chain of entrances on beat two of measure fifteen with a descending D minor pentachord. The second

alto trombone enters on beat two of measure sixteen with a descending G minor pentachord. The bass trombone enters next (descending C major pentachord), and the third trombone enters last with a non-traditional pentachord. The first and second trombones ascend after completing their pentachords, while the third and fourth trombones remain static. This motion occurs within a crescendo, leading to sforzando chords in measures twenty and twenty-one. A quasi-recapitulation occurs at measure twenty-five. It begins with the ascending trichord, except that the major one occurs first and the minor one occurs second. The sforzando chords return at a fortissimo dynamic in measures thirty-eight through forty. After this climax, the remaining ten measures lead toward a resolution to a D major triad in the final measure. Items to consider are balance and blend, intonation, and phrasing.

The second movement, “Poco adagio,” is based on a single idea that the composer transposes several times. It begins with the central theme (a descending line) in the first alto trombone, with the entire ensemble contributing significantly to its realization. The harmony moves between D major triads, A major triads, and an A dominant seventh chord. The next phrase (starting in measure five) maintains this pattern, beginning with an A dominant seventh chord and ending on a D major triad with the inclusion of passing tones. On the second beat of measure eight, the bass trombone initiates a chain of staggered entrances moving up the ensemble. After a brief pause at the conclusion of measure thirteen, the opening idea returns but begins with a C major triad. Through a similar progression, the four-measure phrase concludes on a G major triad. In measure eighteen, the music continues to emulate the opening eight measures, beginning on a G major triad. However, a secondary dominant occurs in measure nineteen, transitioning to a G minor triad and a cadence in D major. Measures twenty-two through twenty-five feature a sighing motive. Both measures twenty-two and twenty-four contain

a sustained D minor triad that resolves to an A dominant seventh chord in measures twenty-three and twenty-five. The remaining thirteen measures contain a mixture of the opening material (rhythmically and melodically) and the chromatic harmony of the opening melody's second statement. This combination leads to a restatement of the descending melody within denser chromaticism, succeeded by a transposition of measures thirty and thirty-one in the following two measures, and a final restatement of the melody that allows the music to conclude on a D major triad. Items to consider are balance and blend, intonation, and phrasing.

The third movement, "Poco sostenuto," is the shortest of the three movements at sixteen measures long. In the first eight measures, there are four measures that contain two identical chords. The following chords occur: Bb major triad, F major triad, Eb major triad, and an Ab dominant seventh chord. The first chord receives more emphasis than the second to assist the metric pulse, creating an echo effect in each measure. The first cadence occurs on the downbeat of measure four (G minor triad), and the second on the downbeat of measure ten (F major triad). On the upbeat of beat two in measure ten, the third and fourth trombones have quarter notes that lead to the downbeat of measure eleven. The alto trombones continue this line on the upbeat of measure twelve, leading to an Ab major triad. The remaining four measures lead to a resolution on a Bb major triad via dominant 6/4 to 5/3 motion. Items to consider are balance and blend, intonation, and phrasing.

Adagio from Symphony No. 7 – Anton Bruckner/arr. Jay K. Friedman

Composer: Anton Bruckner (1824–1896)

Born in 1824, Anton Bruckner was a unique figure of the nineteenth century. His musical and compositional journey developed much later in life when compared to his contemporaries; he composed most of his significant works after the age of thirty-nine.²³⁶ In the 1840s, his compositional skills continued to develop and advance while he was a schoolteacher at St. Florian and the organist of the abbey church.²³⁷ In the mid-1850s, he won the organist position at Linz and began a five-year correspondence with Simon Sechter concerning harmony and counterpoint.²³⁸ In the 1860s, he studied form and orchestration with Otto Kitzler who introduced him to the music of Berlioz, Liszt, and Wagner.²³⁹ Unfortunately, individuals such as Eduard Hanslick simultaneously misunderstood his music and undermined his professional standing due to his support of and advocacy for Richard Wagner.²⁴⁰ In 1866, he composed his first of nine symphonies, all of which cemented his legacy. They are characterized by “...thematic material structured in huge blocks, long passages of intensification (*Steigerung*), adventurous chromaticism, and use of fugues, chorales, and Austrian dance rhythms.”²⁴¹ Structurally, “...they all comprise an extensive opening movement that explores three contrasting themes, a lyrical slow movement, an energetic folk-like scherzo, and a large scale finale that usually recalls earlier music.”²⁴² He finally received the acclaim he deserved after the

²³⁶ Kate Hopkins, “What You Should Know About Anton Bruckner,” News, London Symphony Orchestra, last modified August 23, 2023, <https://www.lso.co.uk/what-you-should-know-about-anton-bruckner/>.

²³⁷ Derek Watson, “Anton Bruckner,” in *Encyclopedia Britannica* (Encyclopedia Britannica, Inc., 1994–), published July 20, 1998; last modified October 7, 2024, <https://www.britannica.com/biography/Anton-Bruckner>.

²³⁸ Ibid.

²³⁹ Ibid.

²⁴⁰ Kate Hopkins, “What You Should Know About Anton Bruckner.”

²⁴¹ Ibid.

²⁴² Ibid.

1884 premiere of his seventh symphony in Leipzig.²⁴³ He died in 1896, leaving a profound influence on the symphonic tradition.

Arranger: Jay K. Friedman (b. 1939)

Born in 1939, Jay Friedman has been a member of the Chicago Symphony Orchestra since 1962 and the principal trombonist since 1964.²⁴⁴ As a soloist, he has performed Symphony for Trombone by Ernest Bloch, Fantasy for Trombone and Orchestra by Paul Creston, and Concerto for Trombone by Ellen Taaffe Zwilich with the symphony.²⁴⁵ Before joining the CSO, he attended Yale University on scholarship, later studied composition at Roosevelt University, and performed with both the Civic Orchestra of Chicago for four years and the Florida Symphony for two years.²⁴⁶ As a conductor, he was chosen as the music director of the Symphony of Oak Park and River Forest in 1995;²⁴⁷ since then, he was selected as Conductor of the Year by the Illinois Council of Orchestras (2002) and has appeared as a guest conductor worldwide.²⁴⁸ He has been an artist-in-residence at Indiana University and is currently the professor of trombone, principal guest conductor, and the head of the wind and brass at the Chicago College of Performing Arts at Roosevelt University.²⁴⁹

Title: *Adagio* from Symphony No. 7

Movements: One Movement

The UIL Database contains this work.

Included in the NYSSMA Solo & Ensemble Catalog.

Duration: 5:00

²⁴³ Ibid.

²⁴⁴ Jay Friedman, "Biography," About, Jayfriedman.com, last modified August 5, 2020, <https://www.jayfriedman.net/biography/>.

²⁴⁵ "Jay Friedman," Chicago Symphony Orchestra Musicians, Performers, Chicago Symphony Orchestra, accessed April 9, 2025, <https://cso.org/about/performers/cso-musicians/brass/trombone/jay-friedman/>.

²⁴⁶ Ibid.

²⁴⁷ Ibid.

²⁴⁸ Ibid.

²⁴⁹ Ibid.

Publisher: Ensemble Publications (Ithaca, NY)

Copyright Date: 1881-83/1967

Copy Quality: Engraved

Availability: Available from numerous merchants; no digital download available

Difficulty: Advanced (4)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones; bass trombone

Overall Range: B#1 – C#5

Trombone 1: E3 – C#5

Trombone 2: C3 – G4

Trombone 3: G#2 – E4

Bass Trombone: B#1 – E4

Clefs: Trombone 1 (tenor); Trombone 2 (bass); Trombone 3 (bass); Bass Trombone (bass)

Mutes: N/A

Dedication: N/A

Publisher Overview/Score Description:

Hickey's Music Center

“Romantic.”²⁵⁰

Technical Considerations: Dynamics; Endurance; Intonation

Dynamics – Friedman provides concise dynamic instructions, utilizing the traditional level markings and the phrases “cresc.” and “dim.” The ensemble must be attentive to these markings because they can occur and change quickly. Two examples demonstrate this characteristic. The first example occurs in measures twelve and thirteen, where the

²⁵⁰ “Bruckner, Anton (Friedman) Adagio, Symphony No. 7,” Trombone Quartets, Hickeys.com, accessed April 10, 2025, <https://www.hickeys.com/search/products/sku011962.php>.

dynamic level moves from pianissimo to mezzo forte. A second example occurs in measures thirty to thirty-six, where the dynamic level changes from fortissimo to pianissimo; the diminuendo does not begin until measure thirty-four.

Endurance – Although this arrangement is only fifty-eight measures long, endurance may challenge the ensemble due to two factors. The first reason is the tempo, which has the quarter note equaling forty-two beats per minute; this speed lasts for forty-five of the fifty-eight measures. The faster tempo has the quarter note equaling sixty-three beats per minute. The second reason is that there are only six measures that have rests. Three of these measures are for the entire ensemble (measures six, twelve, and thirty-five), one is assigned to trombones two through four (measure thirty-seven), and two are designated for trombone three (measures twenty-one and twenty-three).

Intonation – Due to the tonal but extended chromatic nature of the harmony in this work, maintaining precise intonation will be crucial for an accurate performance. The key signature is uncommon for trombones, and there are numerous double sharps.

Piece Description:

This short arrangement by Jay Friedman of the second movement from Anton Bruckner's seventh symphony is challenging yet enables a trombone ensemble to perform standard music from the classical canon. It consistently alternates between melancholic, lyrical sections and triumphant, articulated sections and begins with a lyrical melody in the first trombone part; it is identical to the opening of the symphony that contains a blend of stepwise motion and skips among eighth notes, triplets, and dotted eighth-sixteenth notes. Underneath the melody, the lower three trombones provide harmony via half and whole notes, with the occasional supporting eighth-note line. In measure four, two accented quarter notes initiate the first iteration of the

triumphant style. The subsequent two measures feature a continuation of this majestic style, a crescendo, and a division of the ensemble into pairs. The first and third trombones have two dotted quarter notes followed by sixteenth notes that contribute to the piece's drive and dynamic contrast; the second and fourth trombones also have a dotted quarter note but an eighth note and two quarter notes. Measure six highlights the range of the first trombone with a descending tetrachord starting on C#5 on beat three. The lyrical, melancholic material returns in measure seven but involves the second trombone in measures nine through twelve; the higher trombone lines feature a combination of eighth and sixteenth notes. The voices briefly cross in measure ten, with the second trombone part sounding higher (A#3) than the first (E#3). There is a subtle crescendo before the accented mezzo forte (*mf*) quarter notes in measures thirteen. The same texture continues until beat three of measure twenty-one, where the music becomes homorhythmic and chorale-like. The first, second, and fourth trombones begin with an ascending quarter-note line (the second and fourth parts do not ascend in a scalar pattern like the first part); conversely, the third trombone does not enter until beat two of measure twenty-two with a descending scalar line in contrary motion. This section comprises rich sonorities and crescendos to the work's first climax in measure twenty-five. Following this half note, the triumphant, accented material returns and continues for the following ten measures. Within this section, there are three components. The first component is the pairing of the first and third trombones again. The first five measures contain dotted quarter notes, quarter notes, and eighth notes, and the second five measures retain the dotted quarter notes while adding sixteenth notes. The second component is the second trombone. It contains dotted quarter notes and sixteenth notes in the first five measures and half notes, dotted quarter notes, quarter notes, and sixteenth notes centered on one pitch, G4, in the second five measures. The third component is the bass

trombone, which is rhythmically the opposite of the second trombone and provides the foundation of the harmonic motion. In measure thirty-six, the melancholic material returns as does the pianissimo (*pp*) dynamic; however, it spans five and a half beats before a caesura. The music continues in the same style; the only difference is that the texture becomes more complex because each part has an independent line. The dynamics frequently shift with little preparation and climax in measures forty-four and forty-five. The final thirteen measures, prepared by marcato eighth notes in the second trombone, have a slightly faster tempo and feature two melodic lines within a triadic drone. The lower three parts initially supply the drone, while the first trombone plays a melody reminiscent of the opening. Over its four-measure arc, the melody crescendos before suddenly dropping to pianissimo. The next melody is in the second trombone and lasts nine measures. It contains E#3, G#3, C#4, and D#4 in an arpeggiated structure while the rest of the ensemble plays the drone. The work concludes with a C# major triad. Key considerations are articulation, dynamics, endurance, and intonation.

Three Motets – Anton Bruckner/arr. Ralph Sauer

Composer: Anton Bruckner (1824–1896)

Born in 1824, Anton Bruckner was a unique figure of the nineteenth century. His musical and compositional journey developed much later in life when compared to his contemporaries; he composed most of his significant works after the age of thirty-nine.²⁵¹ In the 1840s, his compositional skills continued to develop and advance while he was a schoolteacher at St. Florian and the organist of the abbey church.²⁵² In the mid-1850s, he won the organist position at Linz and began a five-year correspondence with Simon Sechter concerning harmony and counterpoint.²⁵³ In the 1860s, he studied form and orchestration with Otto Kitzler who introduced him to the music of Berlioz, Liszt, and Wagner.²⁵⁴ Unfortunately, individuals such as Eduard Hanslick simultaneously misunderstood his music and undermined his professional standing due to his support of and advocacy for Richard Wagner.²⁵⁵ In 1866, he composed his first of nine symphonies, all of which cemented his legacy. They are characterized by “...thematic material structured in huge blocks, long passages of intensification (*Steigerung*), adventurous chromaticism, and use of fugues, chorales, and Austrian dance rhythms.”²⁵⁶ Structurally, “...they all comprise an extensive opening movement that explores three contrasting themes, a lyrical slow movement, an energetic folk-like scherzo, and a large scale finale that usually recalls earlier music.”²⁵⁷ He finally received the acclaim he deserved after the 1884 premiere of his seventh symphony in Leipzig.²⁵⁸ He died in 1896, leaving a profound influence on the symphonic tradition.

²⁵¹ Kate Hopkins, “What You Should Know About Anton Bruckner.”

²⁵² Derek Watson, “Anton Bruckner,” in *Encyclopedia Britannica*, last modified October 7, 2024.

²⁵³ *Ibid.*

²⁵⁴ *Ibid.*

²⁵⁵ Kate Hopkins, “What You Should Know About Anton Bruckner.”

²⁵⁶ *Ibid.*

²⁵⁷ *Ibid.*

²⁵⁸ *Ibid.*

Arranger: Ralph Sauer (b. 1944)

Born in 1944, Ralph Sauer studied with Emory Remington at Eastman School of Music and Robert Harper of the Philadelphia Orchestra.²⁵⁹ At the age of twenty-three, Sauer secured the position of principal trombonist of the Toronto Symphony;²⁶⁰ he would perform in the ensemble for six years while simultaneously teaching at the University of Toronto and performing with the Canadian Broadcasting Corporation (CBC), the Canadian Opera Company, Stratford Festival Orchestra.²⁶¹ In 1974, he joined the Los Angeles Philharmonic as the principal trombonist; he held the position for thirty-two years before leaving in 2006.²⁶² As a soloist, he has performed around the world and premiered concerti by composers such as Kazimierz Serocki and Augusta Reed Thomas.²⁶³ He also has four solo albums recorded between 1976 and 1994. In 1993, he recorded an album, *Orchestral Excerpts for Trombone*, the first of two volumes. He is also a founding member of Summit Brass and the Rafael Mendez Brass Institute and has continued to perform and teach.²⁶⁴

Title: *Three Motets*

Movements: Three Movements

1. “Vexilla Regis” – Molto Sostenuto (quarter note equals 69 bpm)
2. “Locus Iste” – Allegro Modto (quarter note equals 96 bpm)
3. “Pange Lingua” (half note equals 50 bpm)

Included in the NYSSMA Solo & Ensemble Catalog.

Duration: 6:00-8:00

²⁵⁹ “Ralph Sauer, liner notes for *Orchestral Excerpts for Trombone*, Ralph Sauer, Summit Records DCD143, 1993, CD, 3.

²⁶⁰ Ibid.

²⁶¹ Ibid.

²⁶² Music Academy of the West, “Ralph Sauer,” Profiles, last modified April 7, 2018, <https://musicacademy.org/profile/ralph-sauer/>.

²⁶³ Ibid.

²⁶⁴ Liner notes for *Orchestral Excerpts for Trombone*, “Ralph Sauer.”

Publisher: Western International Music (Greely, CO)

Copyright Date: 1977

Copy Quality: Engraved

Availability: Available from numerous merchants; no digital download available; be specific

*When searching for this work, be sure it is *Three Motets* because Sauer has multiple arrangements/transcriptions of works by Bruckner.

Difficulty: Advanced (4)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones; bass trombone

Overall Range: Bb1 – C5

Trombone 1: E3 – C5

Trombone 2: C3 – A4

Trombone 3: F2 – D4

Bass Trombone: Bb1 – Gb3

Clefs: Trombone 1 (tenor); Trombone 2 (tenor); Trombone 3 (bass); Bass Trombone (bass)

Mutes: N/A

Dedication: N/A

Publisher Overview/Score Description:

Hickey's Music Center

“Includes Vexhilla Regis, Locus Iste, and Pange Lingua. Clefs are TTBB. One of the classic trombone quartets.”²⁶⁵

Technical Considerations: Dynamics; Intonation; Tessitura

²⁶⁵ “Bruckner, Anton (Sauer) Motets (3), Trombone Quartets, Hickeys.com, accessed April 8, 2025, https://www.hickeys.com/music/brass/trombone/trombone_ensembles/trombone_quartets/products/sku013361-bruckner-anton-sauer-motets-3.php.

Dynamics – In this transcription, the music contains numerous dynamic levels yet sparse phrase markings, such as crescendos and decrescendos. The ensemble's responsibility is to balance adherence to the included dynamic and phrase markings and informed musical decisions for an accurate performance. In movement one, there are five crescendos and four decrescendos; there is also one diminuendo in measure twelve. No dynamics are unprepared or marked subito by the composer. In movement two, there are two crescendos and one decrescendo. Additionally, new dynamic levels appear with little preparation. For example, measure four concludes with a decrescendo from piano, measure five begins at mezzo forte, and measure six concludes at a forte dynamic level. In measure nine, the music drops to a piano dynamic level, following two measures at forte. In the third movement, one crescendo and one decrescendo occur in measures twenty-nine and thirty. The best example of unprepared dynamics occurs in measures twenty-four through twenty-seven. In measures twenty-four and twenty-five, the dynamic is piano. Following a breath mark, the dynamic transitions to forte in measures twenty-six and twenty-seven.

Intonation – This work is tonal, but in the late Romantic sense of the word, meaning the harmonic motion and its subsequent progression are highly chromatic. Each ensemble member is responsible for recognizing their chord tone and making the necessary adjustments for each chord. In movement one, a prime example occurs in measures eighteen and nineteen. The first chord of measure eighteen is an A diminished seventh chord in root position followed by a Bb major triad on beat two and a G minor triad in root position on the downbeat of measure nineteen. There are also several 4-3 suspensions and a 9-8 suspension. In movement two, the progression via a sequence

moves from C minor to D major and eventually cadences on an E major triad. In measures fifteen and sixteen, the music moves from an Eb major triad to an A half-diminished seventh chord to a D major triad on beat two; otherwise, the harmony is mostly traditional. In movement three, measures twenty through twenty-three feature less-conventional harmony and utilize C natural instead of Cb. This change establishes an F major triad that resolves to a Bb major triad (a common chord throughout the movement) in measure twenty-three.

Tessitura – This musical aspect is most prominent in the first trombone part of the third movement. This part never descends below Bb3 and often remains above the staff. The part never descends below F4 between measures eleven and seventeen, and in measures twenty-four through thirty, the part never descends below Eb4. The range and a moderate tempo may pose a challenge to the individual performer.

Piece Description:

This transcription of Anton Bruckner's music by Ralph Sauer is a hallmark of the standard repertoire and is well-suited to function as an introduction to Bruckner's music. The first movement, "Vexilla Regis," contains rich chromatic harmony and proceeds at a moderate tempo. It begins with an octave across the ensemble (A2 and A3) that harmonically progresses to an F major chord in measure three (a 4-3 suspension occurs in the first trombone) and a G major chord in measure four (another 4-3 suspension occurs in the first trombone). Following a breath mark, the A octaves occur, initiating the next phrase, which contains more moving lines. The bass trombone has quarter notes on beat one, and the other three parts join it on beat two after a half note. In measure six, the editor subtly hints at staggered breathing. The first and third trombones have a breath mark between beats one and two, the second trombone has a breath

mark before the upbeat of beat two, and the bass trombone has a breath mark before the upbeat of beat one. This decision facilitates a crescendo led by ascending eighth notes in the first trombone that cadences on a C major triad in measures eight. In measure nine, the new phrase begins with an E major triad in root position. It moves through an E major triad in first inversion to a B major triad on the downbeat of measure ten. The texture continues mostly homorhythmically over the subsequent five measures, with the occasional quarter-note figure in the inner parts. The following phrase occurs on the anacrusis to measure seventeen on a D in octaves (D3 and D4). In measure seventeen, the second trombone enters on beat two with B3 to create another G major triad. The following chords are an A diminished seventh chord, a Bb major triad, and a G major triad. In measure twenty, following another breath mark, the previous phrase continues with a G minor triad, G minor seventh chord, an Eb major triad that utilizes a 9-8 suspension; it concludes with a Bb major triad in measure twenty-three. The subsequent phrase begins on the anacrusis to measure twenty-five. In measure twenty-five, an E dominant seventh chord sounds, which through various chords resolves to a Db major triad in measures twenty-nine and thirty. The movement concludes with a pianissimo octave A. Elements requiring attention include balance and blend, ensemble playing, and intonation.

The second movement, "Locus Iste," is arguably the most recognizable motet in this compilation. It begins with an F major triad and a homorhythmic texture across the ensemble. After the initial phrase, the upper three parts remain homorhythmic until measure variation occurs in the third trombone part around measure eighteen; in measure twenty-two, the third trombone rests, while the first and second trombones play a new rhythmic figure. The bass trombone part is independent throughout most of the movement, periodically aligning with the other parts. In measure three, the bass trombone has a dotted half note, and the inner parts play

repeated pitches on quarter and eighth notes, while the first trombone plays a primarily stepwise melody. The new phrase begins in measure five, with the first trombone ascending to C5 in measure seven. In measure ten, the bass trombone plays E3 on the downbeat, with the rest of the ensemble completing a C dominant seventh chord on the upbeat of one. This chord leads to an F major triad and a texture enriched by the C2 in the bass trombone. In measure twelve, the upper three parts rest, while the bass trombone plays four quarter notes on C2 that lead to a fully developed melodic line in measure thirteen. The first trombone assumes this ascending melody in measure fourteen; it leads to an Eb major triad on the downbeat of measure fifteen. An A half-diminished seventh chord occurs as a passing tone and pivot chord to a D major triad on the upbeat of beat one in measure sixteen. This harmonic motion allows the music to repeat a whole step higher. It ascends to A4 in the first part with two additional B4s occurring; the music cadences on an E major triad in measure twenty. The bass trombone has four F3 quarter notes in measure twenty-one and initiates a new texture adopted by the first and second trombones in measure twenty-two. The only new rhythm is a dotted eighth sixteenth that all three parts have, and there is limited pitch variation. In measure twenty-six, the first and second trombones transition to a legato style, while the bass trombone remains the same. This texture lasts until the D.C. al Coda. The coda begins with the most contrapuntal section of the movement; it quickly transitions to a homorhythmic texture following a notated grand pause (G.P.). The last three measures contain a cadential 6/4 and a C major triad that resolves with an F major triad. Elements requiring attention are articulation, dynamics, and intonation.

The third movement, “Pange Lingua,” is divided into three sections separated by Bb major triad fermatas. It begins with a unison Bb3 in the first and second trombones. The third trombone enters on beat two of measure one on Bb3 before changing to a Gb3 on the downbeat

of measure three; the bass trombone enters on beat two of measure two. The third trombone is the only part containing note changes; therefore, it is the primary melodic voice. In measure five, the new phrase begins at a forte dynamic. It begins as a unison Bb3 before shifting to a Gb major triad that spurs a homorhythmic half-note section. In measure ten, the first and second trombones have a dotted quarter, eighth, and two quarter notes; the third and fourth trombones follow in measure ten. The phrase continues for two measures before it resolves to a Bb major triad in measure thirteen. In measure fourteen, the ensemble has a homorhythmic chorale texture that lasts four measures before a sequence of staggered entrances initiated by the third trombone. The third trombone plays Ab3, the second trombone plays Bb3, the first trombone plays Eb4, and the bass trombone plays C3. The dynamic level begins at piano, and a decrescendo lowers it to pianissimo, as the section concludes with a Bb major triad. The homorhythmic chorale texture returns to a piano dynamic. It continues for two measures before a breath mark occurs. After the breath mark, the dynamic level rises to forte, and the music proceeds to a fermata on an Eb major triad. The music following the fermata continues to be primarily homorhythmic, with the only variations being two quarter notes in the second and bass trombones. The final phrase begins in measure thirty-two, recalling the movement's opening material, cadencing with a Bb major triad. There is an optional repeat. Regardless of whether it is performed, a three-measure "coda" provides the piece with finality on a fifth Bb major triad. Elements requiring attention are dynamics, intonation, and tessitura.

Suite of Three Cities for Four Trombones – Roger Chapman

Composer: Roger Chapman (1916–1989)

Born in 1916, Roger Chapman graduated from UCLA in 1937 with a degree in mathematics, in 1950 with an M.A in mathematics, and in 1954 with a Ph.D. in music.²⁶⁶ Dr. Chapman was the “finest music theory teacher in the history of UCSB (University of California – Santa Barbara) music faculty. He...became known for his ability to present that technical [material] clearly and interestingly.”²⁶⁷ In addition to being an effective educator he was a talented composer; his music was written with a contemporary sound yet remained accessible to the performers and audience.²⁶⁸ His works are for a variety of instruments and combinations. He died in 1989.

Arranger: N/A

Title: *Suite of Three Cities for Four Trombones*

Movements: Four Movements

Fanfare (quarter note equals 120 bpm)

1. Extensity – Andante (quarter note equals 108 bpm)

2. Diversity – Moderato (quarter note equals 76 bpm)

3. Eccentricity – Allegro (quarter note equals 120 bpm)

Included in the NYSSMA Solo & Ensemble Catalog.

Duration: 7:30

Publisher: Edition Peters (New York)

Copyright Date: 1960

Copy Quality: Engraved

²⁶⁶ John Gillespie, Wendell Nelson, Carl Zytowski, “Roger Chapman, Music: Santa Barbara,” in *University of California: In Memoriam* (Berkeley: University of California Regents, 1990), 15-16.

²⁶⁷ Ibid.

²⁶⁸ Ibid.

Availability: Available from numerous merchants; no digital download available

Difficulty: Advanced (4)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones; bass trombone*

Overall Range: E2 – C5

Trombone 1: G3 – C5

Trombone 2: C3 – F4

Trombone 3: G2 – F4

Bass Trombone: E2 – Eb4

Clefs: Trombone 1 (tenor); Trombone 2 (bass); Trombone 3 (bass); Bass Trombone (bass)

Mutes: Straight Mute (Measures 1–23 in all four parts of “Extensivity”)

Dedication: N/A

Publisher Overview/Score Description:

Hickey’s Music

“No, not *those* [italics in original] kind of cities. Preceded by a fanfare, the three large movements are entitled Extensivity; Diversity and Eccentricity. 20th century. Tonal. Score and parts.”²⁶⁹

Technical Considerations: Intonation; Style; Time

Intonation – While a requirement to perform any work accurately, triadic harmony plays a significant role in crucial cadences throughout the work, whether in the beginning, middle, or end of movements. Ensemble members need to understand their role within the triad to make the appropriate adjustments. For example, “Fanfare” continues with an F major triad, “Extensivity” concludes with a D major triad in second inversion,

²⁶⁹ “Chapman Suite of Three Cities,” Trombone Quartets, Hickeys.com, accessed February 17, 2025, <https://www.hickeys.com/search/products/sku018240.php>.

“Diversity” concludes with an Ab major triad, and “Eccentricity” concludes with a G major triad. Also, measures twenty-five through forty-four in “Extensity” provide a comparable difficulty. In addition to these traditional harmonies, there are more dissonant ones. For two examples, refer to measures two and three and six and seven in “Diversity.”

Style – This work features imitation across the ensemble throughout its four movements. One part establishes the style of the piece, and the rest of the ensemble must adhere to it. Each movement has a clear example of this. “Fanfare” is slightly vaguer, but the first and second trombones establish the length of the dotted eighth sixteenth note on the anacrusis to measure nine, and the third and fourth trombones must maintain that style. In “Extensity,” the second trombone defines the style, and the first trombone must emulate this even though the line is slightly different. In “Diversity,” the first trombone introduces the melody, which the second and third trombones subsequently play; in “Eccentricity,” the first and third parts swap roles.

Time – Due to the changing measures in “Eccentricity,” losing time through hesitation or introducing extra beats is possible. Feeling the eighth note for the beat will help this.

Piece Description:

Roger Chapman combines contemporary ideas and post-tonal triadic harmony to create a challenging yet accessible work. The opening fanfare begins with staggered entrances reminiscent of bell tones; the bass trombone starts on A3, followed by the first trombone on F#4, a three-note line in the second trombone that settles on E4, and a B3 in the third trombone, creating stacked perfect fifths. The next two ideas are a more traditional triplet rhythm and a dotted quarter and eighth note. The triplets utilize the same pitches as the final chord of the bell

tones, while the dotted quarter note includes note changes. The first and third trombones ascend a semitone (G4 and C4), and the second and fourth trombones descend a semitone (G3 and D4). This pattern repeats rhythmically and harmonically again but with different notes. The dotted eighth sixteenth note rhythm is introduced on the anacrusis to measure nine at a mezzo piano dynamic. The triplet then reappears on the anacrusis to measure twelve and remains the dominant subdivision for the rest of the “movement;” the fanfare concludes on a rich F major chord.

The first numbered movement, “Extensity,” is a slower movement that proceeds steadily. All four parts utilize mutes through measure twenty-three, and they interact dialogically. Outside a whole note tied over the bar line in measures one and two, the second trombone part has a solo line featuring eighth-note motives on and off the beat within a perfect fifth interval. The third trombone enters in measure four on the downbeat with a descending pentachord in Phrygian mode; the first trombone enters on the upbeat of count three in the same measure. On the anacrusis to measure nine, a variation of the opening line by the second trombone begins in the first trombone. The rest of the ensemble plays a homorhythmic accompaniment line. This texture lasts five measures before the third trombone interrupts it with a descending scalar line containing diatonic and chromatic pitches; simultaneously, the first trombone plays the muted section’s last defining motive, which emphasizes articulations on the upbeat of one, beat three, and the upbeat of four. The first and third trombones play this line in juxtaposition to the second and fourth trombones. The subsequent twenty measures feature a style change that switches to a chorale containing rich harmonies. The second trombone reprises its solo role for two measures, allowing material from both sections to mix; the movement ends on a D major triad in second inversion. Items to consider are intonation and rhythm.

The second numbered movement, “Diversity,” is the slowest and has an ABA form. Unlike the previous two movements, the first trombone begins this movement with a motive that starts on the upbeat of one and is followed by a dotted eighth sixteenth on beat two and two eighth notes on beat three. Four counts of rich harmony follow this solo line; the second trombone then takes over the melody. The next four measures pair the second and third trombones together. In measure thirteen, the composer marks the music with *piu mosso*; the second and third trombones play an eight-note line to establish the new tempo in the first two measures. The first trombone enters in measure fifteen with the melody, and the bass trombone enters with the harmonic foundation. The remaining measures of this section contain two duets. The first is between parts one and two, while the second is between parts three and four. The opening motive reappears in measures twenty-nine in the second trombone, which passes it to the third trombone. The remaining eight measures recall an earlier motive, and the movement concludes on an Eb major triad.

The final numbered movement, “Eccentricity,” is a lively dance that playfully transitions between 2/4 and 3/8. The bass trombone provides the bass line, while trombones one and two accompany the main melody in the third trombone. The bell tones from the opening fanfare return in measures twenty and twenty-one. It is interrupted by eighth notes in the outer parts and then returns two more times. On the anacrusis to measure thirty-seven, the dance line introduced by the third trombone occurs in the second trombone and lasts until measure fifty-one. In measure fifty-four, the style changes to a homophonic texture in 5/4 time. The middle parts play legato quarter notes, while the first and fourth parts trade sixteenth-note lines; measures sixty and sixty-one feature octave jumps in the bass trombone. The first trombone plays the melody when the meter returns to 2/4 at the *come prima*. The bell tones reappear again before the “grand

pause” in measure 107. The piece concludes on a G major chord, and aspects to note are style and articulation.

Suite pour Quatour de Trombones – Désiré Dondeyne

Composer: Désiré Dondeyne (1921–2015)

Born in 1921, Désiré Dondeyne had a successful career. He studied at the Paris Conservatory beginning in 1936 and won seven awards.²⁷⁰ In 1954, he began leading the Band of the Guardians of the Peace of Paris (Orchestre des Gardiens de la Paix in Paris), which he would do until 1979.²⁷¹ He also wrote and published a treatise on orchestration for wind ensembles, fanfares, and military bands in 1969.²⁷² He died in 2015.

Arranger: N/A

Title: *Suite pour Quatour de Trombones (Suite for Trombone Quartet)*

Movements: Five Movements

1. Moderato Maestoso
2. Andantino
3. Tempo di Minuetto
4. Chorale – Andante Maestoso (quarter note equals 80 bpm)
5. Scherzo (en 1 Temps) – Vivo (dotted quarter note equals 120 bpm)

The UIL Database contains this work but only requires the second movement.

Duration: 9:00

Publisher: Editions Marc Reift or EMR (Crans-Montana, Switzerland)

Copyright Date: 1949

Copy Quality: Engraved

Availability: Available from numerous merchants; digital download available from EMR

²⁷⁰ The Editorial Staff, “Death of Conductor and Composer Désiré Dondeyne,” [resmusica.com](https://www.resmusica.com/2015/02/12/deces-du-chef-et-compositeur-desire-dondeyne/), last modified February 12, 2015, <https://www.resmusica.com/2015/02/12/deces-du-chef-et-compositeur-desire-dondeyne/>.

²⁷¹ Ibid.

²⁷² Ibid.

Difficulty: Advanced (4)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones[^]; bass trombone*

Overall Range: E2 – C5

Trombone 1: F2 – C5

Trombone 2: G2 – C5

Trombone 3: F2 – A4

Bass Trombone: E2 – G4

Clefs: Trombone 1 (bass); Trombone 2 (bass); Trombone 3 (bass); Bass Trombone (bass);

*A full set of Bb treble clefs are also provided

Mutes: N/A

Dedication: N/A

Publisher Overview/ Score Description: N/A

Technical Considerations: Glissando; Multiple Tonguing

Glissando - While not overly prominent, the music requires trombones one through three to play a glissando. Trombones two and three play their glissandi simultaneously in measures two and fourteen of movement one. Trombone two moves from E4 to F4, and trombone three moves from C#4 to D4. Trombone one plays multiple glissandi that move from A4 to Bb4 in the coda of movement two.

Multiple Tonguing – Movement three's coda is the most apparent moment for multiple tonguing, where all four parts play a homorhythmic line. There are also several moments in movements one (m.7) and five (m. 95-96).

Piece Description:

Désiré Dondeyne's *Suite* requires all four trombonists to be versatile and flexible regarding style. The main throughline through all five movements is a sense of levity. Movement one, entitled "Moderato Maestoso," is best felt in 8 by the performers to accommodate the 32nd and extended 16th note runs. Lightness and a bouncy playing style will also help facilitate this piece, as many lines traverse several partials in all four parts. The bass trombone part moves from G1 to D4, the third trombone part moves from D3 to G4, the second trombone part moves from G3 to B4, and the first trombone part moves from D3 to C5. Multiple tonguing is essential for the first three parts. For a specific example, refer to measure 7 (parts 1 and 2) or 10 (part 3). The movement's structure contains four sections. In sections one and three, trombones one and four are in octaves that interact with a countermelody in trombones two and three. The second section begins with a solo in the second trombone part that expands into a melody with the first trombone and then morphs into a fugue-like line. Section four departs from the march-like style to a more vaudeville style that features a line of oscillating 16th-note whole steps. Items to consider are multiple tonguing, dynamics, glissandi, and ensemble playing.

The second movement, "Andantino," is a ballad. Most of the movement is a solo melody for the first trombone (though not explicitly notated as such) that utilizes the G major triad in several ways. The other three parts often play accompaniment lines, but the third trombone part introduces a chromatic melody in measure seventeen that bridges the D.S. al coda. At the coda, the first trombone solo line becomes "jazzier" and includes multiple glissandi from A4 to Bb4, and the second trombone plays a triplet line underneath. The movement ends with a consonant G major triad. Even though this is the suite's most approachable movement, items to consider are style and tone color.

The third movement dances, as it is a minuet-esque composition. The third trombone begins with the melody, while trombones two and four provide accompaniment. This melody utilizes ascending perfect fourths and minor thirds to create a catchy tune. In measure nine, trombone one takes over the melody an octave higher, and trombones two and four switch to a brilliant countermelody. The first trombone part plays the bass line, while the other four parts play interconnected melodic material in the B section, which features more lines traversing the instrument's range. The bass trombone then gets a solo that showcases the instrument quite well. The coda is the most challenging section, requiring clean ensemble playing and multiple tonguing; it also ends on a G major triad. Items worth addressing include articulation, style, and ensemble cohesiveness.

Movement four – the chorale – is the outlier of the suite due to its regal character. Many phrases are separated by a quarter rest so that the performers can stretch the time if they choose to; the various rests serve as pseudo fermatas. While the first trombone dominates the melody for most of the tune, the other three parts dictate the harmonic motion, as evidenced by the opening line in the bass trombone. The greatest challenge of this movement is intonation. The chords do not always move as expected, and different inversions occur, requiring the ensemble to listen and adjust accordingly. Items to consider are intonation, tone color, and rubato.

The fifth movement, “Scherzo,” is an off-kilter dance due to the counterintuitive combination of the melody and the accompaniment; it takes time to get used to. The first trombone is the primary source for the melody. The melody has great levity and asks the performer to play it as such. The other sections incorporate melodic interplay between all four parts. The harmony moves to several distant spots, allowing various ideas to weave together.

Toward the piece's conclusion, ensemble communication is necessary before the final G major triad. Items to consider are time, multiple tonguing, and style.

Scherzo e Corale per Quattro Trombone – Frigyes Hidas

Composer: Frigyes Hidas (1928–2007)

Born in 1928, Frigyes Hidas studied composition with Janos Visky at the Frenec Liszt Academy of Music.²⁷³ During his career, he was the music director of the Hungarian National Theatre (1951-1966) and the municipal Operetta Theatre (1974-1979).²⁷⁴ In 1979, he decided to solely focus his energy on composing.²⁷⁵ He was awarded the Erkel prize in 1959 and 1980, the Bela Bartok-Ditta Pasztory in 1993, and was decorated with the title of Merited Artist in 1987.²⁷⁶ His woodwind and brass chamber music and wind ensemble music is what he is most known for; the style is accessible yet demanding. Some of his other works for trombone/bass trombone include *Fantasia for Trombone* (1979), *Introduction and Fughetta for Two Trombones* (1979), and *Rhapsody for Bass Trombone and Wind Band* (1986). He died in 2007.

Arranger: N/A

Title: *Scherzo e Corale per Quattro Trombone* (*Scherzo and Chorale for Four Trombones*)

Movements: One Movement

Duration: 4:00

Publisher: Editio Musica Budapest or EMB (Budapest, Hungary)

Copyright Date: 1979

Copy Quality: Engraved

Availability: Available from numerous merchants; no digital download available

Difficulty: Advanced (4)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones; bass trombone*

²⁷³ “Frigyes Hidas,” Composers, Editio Musica Budapest, accessed March 10, 2025, <https://www.umpemb.com/en-US/Composers/H/Hidas-Frigyes.aspx>.

²⁷⁴ Ibid.

²⁷⁵ Ibid.

²⁷⁶ Ibid.

Overall Range: C#2 – C5

Trombone 1: F#3 – C5

Trombone 2: D#3 – G#4

Trombone 3: A2 – E4

Bass Trombone: C#2 – C#4

Clefs: Trombone 1 (tenor, bass); Trombone 2 (bass); Trombone 3 (bass); Bass Trombone (bass)

Mutes: N/A

Dedication: N/A

Publisher Overview/Score Description: N/A

Technical Considerations: Dynamic Contrast; Mixed Meter

Dynamic Contrast – The composer does not provide constant guidance or instruction concerning dynamics in the Scherzo. Occasionally, particular dynamics are designated for specific lines, and a couple of crescendos are attached to key moments. The Chorale is only marked “*piu forte*” at its beginning. With all the counting and lack of dynamic instruction, playing everything at mezzo forte could be easy for the ensemble. Exploring ways to broaden dynamic expression is essential to perform this work.

Mixed Meter – The Scherzo features varied time signatures for nearly every measure. The only four meters that occur for multiple adjacent measures are 7/8, 8/8, 9/8, and 6/8. The 8/8 only has one stretch of two adjacent meters in the piece; it appears in measures fifty-four and fifty-five. The 7/8 also only has one stretch of adjacent measures in the piece; it occurs in measures seventy-three and seventy-four. The 9/8 only has one stretch of adjacent measures, but it is slightly longer than the other two meters. It is five measures (m. 98-102). The 6/8 features the highest frequency of adjacent measures in the

section, with four occurrences. The first two are only three measures long and happen within an eight-measure span separated by two measures (m. 20-22; m. 25-27). The other two occurrences happen between measures sixty-four and eighty. The first spans seven measures (m. 64-70), and the second is six measures long (m. 75-80), with a four-measure gap between them. Considering this, the eighth-note subdivision and definable metric emphasis are essential for effective performance; metronome work will most likely be necessary.

Piece Description:

This short work by Frigyes Hidas is a relatively obscure composition within the repertoire. It is challenging metrically while being approachable in most other aspects. The Scherzo, marked “Allegro” by the composer, is homorhythmic, featuring a meter change in almost every measure. The most prominent meters are 2/4, 2/8, 5/8, 6/8, 7/8, 8/8, 9/8, and 10/8, so the eighth note pulse is central to the section’s structure. Through all the uncertainty of the meter changes, a seven-measure refrain idea provides the section with cohesion; in the first 103 measures of the “Scherzo,” it occurs five times. The first occurrence is in measures one through seven. The second occurrence is a restatement in measures thirteen through nineteen. The third occurrence is almost a restatement but includes two 5/8 measures at its conclusion rather than a 2/4 and 5/8 measure; it lasts from measure thirty through thirty-six. The fourth occurrence is a restatement in measures eighty-one through eighty-seven. The fifth occurrence contains the most disparity as the last two bars are in 9/8 rather than the established 2/4 and 5/8 time; it occurs from measures ninety-three through ninety-nine. In between these refrains occur “episodes” of varying length and content. The first occurs from measures eight through twelve, only lasting five measures long, and features a generally homorhythmic texture with some deviation in the

third and fourth parts. The second episode is ten measures long, making it twice as long as its predecessor. It contains homorhythmic portions in the asymmetrical meters and dialogic passages that split the ensemble into two groups. Group one is trombones one and two, and group two is trombones three and four. The third episode is the longest at forty-three measures, quadrupling the length of the second episode. The dialogic construction of the music continues for its first thirteen measures while simultaneously featuring the third trombone on an ascending A Lydian scale underneath sustained notes in the top two parts. The subsequent eight measures return to a more homorhythmic texture. The final twenty-two measures combine both ideas; some motives oscillate between upper and lower neighbors while others move diatonically in stepwise motion. It concludes with a crescendo and a two-count pause. The final episode is only three measures long and bridges the last two refrains, culminating in the section's climax; it concludes with a ritardando that rests on a D7 chord. The Chorale, marked "Lento" by the composer, begins in measure 104 following a molto ritardando and lasts for the work's remaining twenty-one measures. The first trombone part is the primary melodic source throughout the Chorale; its line generally contains stepwise motion (both diatonic and chromatic) with the occasional skip and leap. The tessitura is also relatively high, switching between bass and tenor clef. The accompaniment in the lower three parts chiefly provides harmony support for the melody via chromatic quarter notes, half notes, and the occasional eighth note. The harmony is generally triadic but does not exhibit any identifiable function. It also contains quartal/quintal harmonies and perfect fifths in parallel motion (m. 107), and the piece ends on an E major triad. Items to consider are rhythm, meter/metrical emphasis, and intonation.

Suite for Four Trombones – Gordon Jacob

Composer: Gordon Jacob (1895–1984)

Born in 1895, Jacob became one of the most influential composers of the twentieth century. He became a lecturer at the Royal College of Music in London, where he studied in 1926.²⁷⁷ Jacob taught students/composers such as Malcolm Arnold, and would remain there until 1966.²⁷⁸ Many of Jacob's literary works, such as *Orchestral Techniques* (1931), *The Composer and His Art* (1955), and *The Elements of Orchestration* (1962), continue to be highly regarded in modern times.²⁷⁹ Additional works for trombone include *Two Madrigals for Trombone Quartet* (1990) and *Concerto for Trombone and Orchestra* (1956). Jacob died in 1984.

Arranger: N/A

Title: Suite for Four Trombones

Movements: Five Movements

1. Intrada – Poco Maestoso (quarter note equals 80 bpm)
2. Sarabanda – Lento (half note equals 52 bpm)
3. Alla Marcia – Allegro non troppo (quarter note equals 80 bpm)
4. Spirituale – Adagio (quarter note equals 44 bpm)
5. Finale Alla Fuga – Maestoso (half note equals 76 bpm)

The UIL Database contains this work but does not provide any movement specifications.

Duration: 10:00

Publisher: Boosey & Hawkes (New York)

²⁷⁷ "Gordon Jacob," Composer Index, Boosey & Hawkes, accessed February 10, 2025.

²⁷⁸ Ibid.

²⁷⁹ Ibid.

Copyright Date: 1968

Copy Quality: Engraved

Availability: Available from several merchants; no digital download

Difficulty: Advanced (4)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones; bass trombone*

Overall Range: E2 – Bb4

Trombone 1: Db3 – Bb4

Trombone 2: Bb2 – Gb4

Trombone 3: F2 – Eb4

Bass Trombone: E2 – Eb4

Clefs: Trombone 1 (tenor, bass); Trombone 2 (tenor, bass); Trombone 3 (bass); Trombone 4 (bass)

Mutes: Movement 4; Trombone 1 (cup mute); Trombone 2 (straight mute); Trombone 3 (straight mute); Trombone 4 (straight mute)

Dedication: The London Trombone Quartet

Publisher Overview/Score Description: N/A

Technical Considerations: Articulation; Intonation

Articulation – Jacob concisely communicates his intent with articulation markings throughout the *Suite*. The two markings of the most concern are the staccato and marcato accents. The staccato notes must not be so dry and detached that the technique leads to tongue stops or “clipping” the notes with a “tuht” articulation. Separation with resonance is more appropriate. A primary example comes from the third movement where all ensemble members must avoid clipping the melodic content. As for the marcato-accented

notes, playing with a firm onset while avoiding a “punchy” sound is paramount. There are two examples, the first of which occurs during the third movement in the first trombone part; this articulation is essential to an interruptive phrase. The second example comes from the fifth movement, where it is necessary to avoid punchy onsets in the fugal sections; the first trombonist must establish the style here, and the rest of the ensemble must follow.

Intonation – Intonation accuracy is most prevalent in the first movement, “Intrada,” the second movement, “Sarabanda,” and the fourth movement, “Spirituale.” In the first movement, the primary concern is the prominence of unisons across the ensemble. For instance, the first measure of the work is a unison Bb3. In the second movement, the harmonies constantly shift within sustained notes; some chords are triadic, while others are not. It is imperative for each ensemble member to understand their role within each chord to achieve proper adjustment and intonation. In the fourth movement, the mutes are the primary reason intonation might be an issue. Ensemble listening will be essential due to the two kinds of mute (cup/straight) and the effects they have on intonation.

Piece Description:

This work by Gordon Jacob was instrumental in the genre’s development. The first movement, “Intrada,” is a “sostenuto” fanfare that begins in unison across the ensemble. On the anacruis to measure four, the parts split into harmony; parts one and three ascend from Bb3 to C4, and parts two and four descend from Bb3 to Ab3. In measure four, independent of the previous note’s direction, the first and second parts ascend as the third and fourth parts descend in parallel thirds. This idea continues until measure seven when all four parts break into two chords (F7 and Gb°). The next two measures feature descending melodic material in all four

parts via arpeggiated lines. The “Allegro” begins with a meter switch to 12/8 time in measure ten. It features a moving line in the top three parts. The opening “Maestoso” returns in measure sixteen with a single 3/2 measure. The movement concludes with a poco ritardando over marcato accented quarter notes and Bb major triad marked with sforzando. Items to consider are intonation, note length, and style.

The second movement, “Sarabanda,” opens with stacked minor sevenths. The first trombone part is the primary melodic voice, often playing melodic passages while the rest of the ensemble plays sustained notes that utilize the upper/lower neighbors. The phrase range remains within a perfect fourth before expanding via an ascending line to F4. At Rehearsal A, the music becomes more homorhythmic, with occasional moving notes in the inner voices. The second trombone (measures four, ten, and twenty-one) and the bass trombone (three, nine, and twenty) each have three measures that include melodic variation underneath sustained notes in the top part. Contrastingly, the third trombone only does this once (measure fourteen). Items to consider are intonation, tone color, and phrasing.

The third movement, “Alla Marcia,” is a slower march that circulates the melody among ensemble members. Three ideas comprise this movement—the melody, interruption, and accompaniment. The first idea is the main melodic motive, which contains note repetition and has a three-measure duration. The first measure has four eighth notes on the same pitch, the second measure utilizes its upper and lower neighbor, and the third measure is a descending three-note idea. The second trombone introduces this melody in measure one, beginning on Bb3. It is then restated by the bass trombone in measures thirteen through fifteen and transposed in measures seven through twelve in the first and third trombones. In addition to these restatements and transpositions, there are two variations; the first occurs in the second and third trombone

parts in measures five, seventeen, and thirty-one. Its only difference is four sixteenth notes on the second beat of the motive's second measure. The second variation occurs once in the second trombone in measures twenty-four through twenty-six. In the second measure, the note direction is inverted, as is the placement of the sixteenth notes. The second idea is a marcato-accented interruptory passage in the first trombone. It occurs three times between Rehearsal A and the movement's conclusion (m. 20-23; m. 27-30; m. 36-37). The third idea is an accompaniment figure, primarily comprised of eight notes on the beat. Items to consider are articulation, style, and tempo.

The fourth movement, "Spirituale," is a quasi-hymn and solo for the first trombonist. The solo line is pentatonic except for measures eleven through fourteen, yielding an antiquated timbre. The use of the cup mute and melodic skips, as well as the presence of dotted rhythms (e.g., the Scottish snap), also contribute to this feeling. The other three parts provide (behind straight mute) provide the accompaniment, in a divergent timbre. Each accompaniment part repeats its motive in thirteen of the twenty-two measures, with a slight difference in measures eleven through fourteen and eighteen. Measures nineteen and twenty yield the melody to the second and third trombones and prepare the movement's conclusion on a Gb major triad; items to consider are intonation and style.

The fifth movement, "Finale Alla Fuga," is in ABA form, with the fugue being the "two A" sections and the "B" section being a lyric episode. The general characteristics of the fugue include marcato-accented sustained notes and driving stepwise eighth-note lines. The first trombone begins the movement with the typical distance between entrances being three measures; however, the bass trombone entrance is delayed by an extra measure one time; the resulting texture is contrapuntal, and the bass trombone has the last fugal entrance before the

transitional material leads to the “B” section, where the first trombone plays the melody and the second and third parts provide chromatic quarter-notes as accompaniment. This section concludes with a C7 chord. The fugue returns in the next measure, and the movement concludes with an F major triad. Items to consider are part independence, style, and intonation.

Recitative and Fugue for Trombone Quartet – Patrick McCarty

Composer: Patrick McCarty (1928–2015)

Born in 1928, Patrick McCarty studied at numerous institutions including West Virginia University and the Eastman School of Music at Rochester University.²⁸⁰ As a teacher and educator, he taught at East Carolina College, Newton State College, and Loyola University;²⁸¹ as a performer, he was a member of the Hanna Theater Orchestra, Palace Theater Orchestra, and Front Row Theater Orchestra (all in Cleveland) as well as Canton Symphony Orchestra and the Ohio Chamber Orchestra.²⁸² Other works he composed for trombone include *Sonata for Bass Trombone* (1962) and *Aria and Rondo for Trombone* (1981). He died in 2015.

Arranger: N/A

Title: *Recitative and Fugue for Trombone Quartet*

Movements: Two Movements

1. Recitative (quarter note equals 168 bpm)
2. Fugue – Quick (dotted quarter note equals 60 bpm)

The UIL Database contains this work but does not provide any movement specifications.

Included in the NYSSMA Solo & Ensemble Catalog.

Duration: 4:00

Publisher: Robert King Music owned by Alphonse Leduc Editions Musicales (Pembroke, MA)

Copyright Date: 1961

Copy Quality: Engraved

²⁸⁰ “McCarty, Patrick,” Heritage Encyclopedia of Band Music, accessed April 1, 2025, <https://hebm.info/SearchResults.aspx?ID=16567>.

²⁸¹ Ibid.

²⁸² “Patrick McCarty,” Orchestra Bios, American Composers Orchestra, accessed April 1, 2025, https://archive.americancomposers.org/orchestra-new/orchestra_bios-htm/.

Availability: Available from numerous merchants; no digital download available

Difficulty: Advanced (4)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones; bass trombone*

Overall Range: D2 – Bb4

Trombone 1: Eb3 – Bb4

Trombone 2: Cb3 – Ab4

Trombone 3: Gb2 – E4

Bass Trombone: D2 – Db4

Clefs: Trombone 1 (bass); Trombone 2 (bass); Trombone 3 (bass); Bass Trombone (bass)

Mutes: N/A

Dedication: N/A

Publisher Overview/Description(s) in Literature:

Hickey's Music

“Modern/tonal. Opens with a strong octave unison figure that soon breaks into a chorale.

Second movement is attacca, up-tempo in 6/8, with some mixed meter towards the end.

The second movement's texture is characterized by running or trading 16th note figures in all four parts, as well as homophonic rhythms. All bass clef. Score & parts.”²⁸³

Technical Considerations: Intonation; Rhythm

Intonation – This aspect of playing is crucial for both movements, especially for the first movement. The presence of both triadic and quartal/quintal harmony in this movement requires attention from all ensemble members. Each performer must know their role within each chord and balance accordingly; blending and keeping one's sound “in tone”

²⁸³ “McCarty, Patrick Recitative and Fugue,” Trombone Quartets, Hickeys.com, accessed April 1, 2025, <https://www.hickeys.com/search/products/sku007852.php>.

is critical to performing this movement. A prime example is the last seven measures (measures 16-22), where the harmony progresses through the following chords:

Gb major seventh chord in root position (no enharmonic pitches)

E minor triad in first inversion (no enharmonic pitches)

Ab major triad in root position (no enharmonic pitches)

Quasi Ab minor triad in root position (B natural instead of Cb)

Quasi Eb minor triad in root position (A# instead of Bb)

Quasi Cb major triad in first inversion (B instead of Cb)

Quasi G minor triad in second inversion (A# instead of B)

G major triad in second inversion (no enharmonic pitches)

In the second movement, the moment where intonation, achieved through balance and blend, is critical three measures before Rehearsal D (the hemiola in measures 40-42).

There are three chords in each measure; they are all the same but in different inversions.

The three chords are:

Quasi Ab minor triad (B natural instead of Cb)

C minor triad (no enharmonic pitches)

Quasi E minor triad (Cb instead of B natural)

Listening across the ensemble will be crucial for an accurate performance.

Rhythm – The ensemble must address rhythmic accuracy in the second movement. With the syncopation via a blend of sixteenth, eighth, and quarter notes, it is easy to lose or misplace the big beats of each measure. It is also easy to rush rhythms if the tempo and style are not established quickly. A prime example is in measures nine through sixteen, where all four parts contain variations of the primary rhythms (two sixteenth notes and

two eighth notes; quarter note, eighth note, eighth note, quarter note; four sixteenth notes and one eighth note) layered on each other. A second example is the hemiola (measures 40-42) mentioned in the intonation section. A third example is the final eight measures of the work (measures 48-55). The meter switches from 6/8 to 2/4 in this section, and the sixteenth-note triplet and dotted-eighth note become the primary rhythms; the syncopation moves to the sixteenth-note level. Marking the big beats with slashes and using the metronome will be crucial for accurate performance.

Piece Description:

This work by Patrick McCarty is a repertoire standard that contains two movements connected with a caesura. The first movement, “Recitative,” is a slow movement that showcases the rich sonorities the trombone can create. It begins with a declamatory unison statement in octaves (trombones 1 and 2 are in unison; trombones three and four are in unison an octave lower). The forte dynamic quickly grows to fortissimo on an octave between Ab³ and Ab⁴; a breath mark follows this. In measure three, the ensemble pairings rotate as the first and third trombones and the other two parts descend to create contrary motion. This motion leads to a Gb major triad in measure four and an F minor seventh chord in measure five. In measure six, the first trombone has a short melodic phrase that leads to a chord that resembles a C minor chord; however, it contains a D^{#3} instead of Eb³. The subsequent chords move between a triadic and quartal/quintal construction before the unison octave returns. This section culminates with C⁴ moving to Ab⁴ in the top two parts and to D⁴ in the bottom two parts. It concludes on a Gb major seventh chord in third inversion. The last seven measures of this movement continue the chordal texture. The first, third, and fourth (bass) trombones only have whole notes, while the second trombone has oscillating quarter notes that change the quality of the chords. Various

accidentals prevent these sonorities from being traditionally major or minor. The movement concludes with a G major triad that serves as a V chord to the downbeat of movement two. Items to consider are balance and blend, ensemble playing, and intonation.

The second movement, “Fugue,” begins with the bass trombone, which has the first statement of the fugue’s subject. It contains leaps and stepwise motion within a slightly syncopated rhythmic structure. The first trombone has the second statement of the subject in measure five. This version is not an exact transposition but retains a similar interval direction and size. The third trombone has the third iteration of the subject in measure nine. The first two measures are a direct transposition of the bass trombone line (a tritone higher), and the last two measures contain slightly different material. The second trombone has the last statement of the subject in measure thirteen; it is transposed up a minor seventh from the bass trombone and an augmented fourth from the third trombone. While these staggered entrances create the fugal texture, the accompaniment contains two ideas. The first is a continuation of the syncopated rhythm found in measures three and four; this typically lasts for two measures immediately after the statement has concluded. The second is one of the rhythms from the subject (two sixteenth notes and two eighth notes) and six sixteenth notes. At Rehearsal B, the fugue vanishes as the texture becomes homorhythmic via constant sixteenth notes. Four measures later, the subdivision switches to eighth notes that are interrupted by an ensemble-wide staggered angular line from Eb3 to A4. The texture remains homorhythmic, with a hemiola occurring three measures before Rehearsal C. In this rehearsal letter’s sixth measure, the ensemble divides into two pairs. This configuration juxtaposes the first and third trombones with the second and fourth parts. In measure eight, the pairings rotate as the second part joins the first and the third joins the fourth. The following three measures (leading to Rehearsal D) contain a hemiola, complemented by a

decrescendo. The original pairings return in the third measure of Rehearsal D before the music switches from 6/8 to 2/4. The tempo slows as the dotted quarter becomes the quarter note; it is conducive to the sixteenth-note triplets and the dotted rhythms that permeate the rest of the piece. It concludes on a majestic Eb major triad. Items to consider are dynamics, rhythm, and style.

Suite voor vier bazuinen in ut – Arthur Meulemans

Composer: Arthur Meulemans (1884–1966)

Born in 1884, Arthur Meulemans was a prolific composer and a leading Flemish (Belgian) figure in the early twentieth century. He wrote his first work in 1902, and shortly before the onset of World War I, his work *Kinderliederen* (1913) was awarded the Karel Boury Prize by the Flemish Academy.²⁸⁴ Throughout his career he wrote fifteen symphonies, more than one hundred concertante works for nearly all orchestral instruments, in addition to a variety of vocal music, including three operas, oratoria, and cantatas.²⁸⁵ French impressionism significantly influenced his orchestral style and musical language.²⁸⁶ Some of his solo works for trombone include *Rhapsody for Trombone and Orchestra* (1941) and *Concertino for Trombone and Orchestra* (1953).²⁸⁷ Many of his works remain unpublished.²⁸⁸ He died in 1966.

Arranger: N/A

Title: *Suite voor vier bazuinen in ut* (*Suite for Four Trombones in C*)

Movements: Four Movements

1. Andante con moto (quarter note equals 66 bpm)
2. Allegretto scherzando (quarter note equals 108 bpm)
3. Adagio (quarter note equals 50 bpm)
4. Allegro marciale (quarter note equals 120 bpm)

Duration: 10:00

Publisher: Musikproduktion Höflich (Munich. Germany)

²⁸⁴ Hubert Culbot, “Arthur Meulemans (1884–1966),” Music Web International. Last modified 2002. https://www.musicweb-international.com/classrev/2002/Oct02/Meulemans_Culot.htm.

²⁸⁵ Meulemans, *Suite voor vier bazuinen in ut* (Musikproduktion Höflich, 2020).

²⁸⁶ “Arthur Meulemans,” Composers, Naxos, Accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.naxos.com/Bio/Person/Arthur_Meulemans/24630.

²⁸⁷ Meulemans, *Suite voor vier bazuinen in ut*.

²⁸⁸ Culbot, “Arthur Meulemans (1884–1966).”

Copyright Date: 1942/2020

Copy Quality: Engraved

Availability: Available from several merchants, but it is recommended this critical edition is purchased from Musikproduktion Hoeflich as it is part of their “Flemish Collection;” no digital download is available

Difficulty: Advanced (4)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones; bass trombone*

Overall Range: F2 – C5

Trombone 1: B2 – C5

Trombone 2: A2 – A4

Trombone 3: G2 – Eb4

Bass Trombone: F2 – C4

Clefs: Trombone 1 (tenor, bass); Trombone 2 (tenor, bass); Trombone 3 (bass); Bass Trombone (bass)

Mutes: N/A

Dedication: N/A

Publisher Overview/Score Description:

Jan Dewilde

“Meulemans, who conducted the Brussels Radio Orchestra from 1930 onward, already wrote his *Suite voor vier bazuinen in ut* in 1942, but it is unclear whether he had a specific ensemble in mind while composing. To increase the chances of performance of his suite, he also provided the option to execute the piece with four cellos.”²⁸⁹

²⁸⁹ Meulemans, *Suite voor vier bazuinen in ut*.

Technical Considerations: Articulation; Style; Tessitura

Articulation – Meulemans’ suite contains a mixture of unarticulated and highly articulated passages. The first and third movements have minimal articulation markings beyond notated slurs, except on beat three of measure ten. The second movement includes staccato, slur, accent, and hybrid articulations. The staccato and slurred notes appear within different textures. Measure forty-one contains the only accents, and the hybrid articulation combines a tenuto with a staccato. Determining the appropriate note length requires careful attention, as this articulation is integral to the scherzando’s quarter-note melody. In the fourth movement, traditional tenuto markings and marcato accents are critical to its style. Following these articulations accurately is crucial for performing this work.

Style – Each movement of this suite has a unique style. The first movement, a fanfare, features primarily legato music. The second movement, a dance, must remain light and buoyant. The third movement, the suite’s sole song, provides most of its lyrical melodies. The fourth movement, a march, incorporates several brief legato sections but primarily emphasizes stronger onsets. Ensuring the distinctiveness of these four movements is crucial for performing this work.

Tessitura – This musical element is prominent throughout the piece but is most prevalent in the first trombone part in the second movement. The part rarely descends below C4. In measures thirteen through twenty-eight, the part only has two C4s, with the music remaining above the staff in tenor clef. This passage includes nine C5s.

Piece Description:

This work by Arthur Meulemans is a lesser-known piece and one of the earlier trombone quartets written in the twentieth century. The first movement, “Andante con moto,” is concise, spanning thirty measures; the form centers around a motive (triplet in a dotted eighth, sixteenth, and eighth configuration) that begins in unison before splitting into harmony. It begins with a fanfare motive in unison on the anacrusis to measure two. In measure two, the music transitions into harmony; the two chords present are a C major triad and a Bb major triad in second inversion. Following a breath mark, the fanfare rhythm continues in all four parts in measures three and five. The occurrence in measure three does not have the fanfare on beat three and features the lower three parts playing a descending trichord; the first part also descends but outlines a C major triad. In measure five, the upper three parts oscillate between two notes (D4-E4; B3-C4; G3-A3), causing the harmony to alternate between a G major triad and an A minor triad (both in root position); simultaneously, the bass trombone has two legato quarter notes and two legato eighth notes. The remaining measures of the first phrase contain legato quarter notes, a single triplet, and a sixteenth note on the “a” of beat three in measure six. The second phrase begins with the anacrusis to measure ten. The refrain finishes in measure ten, and a first trombone solo commences at a forte dynamic level in measure eleven. The solo line combines chromatic motion, skips, and leaps, and the distance between notes on beats two and three shrinks from a perfect fifth to a minor third; the lower three parts provide quarter-note accompaniment. In measure thirteen, the texture switches to a slightly more contrapuntal configuration through ensemble duos for one measure. The duos are not homorhythmic, but the first and third trombones have triplets intermingled with quarter notes, while the second and bass trombones have eighth notes. The first and fourth trombones move in contrary motion in the subsequent two measures. The fanfare rhythm returns in measure sixteen as part of a crescendo

to a forte dynamic level on beat three. A legato style emerges two beats before measure twenty, lasting for several more measures. The refrain returns for the final time with the anacrusis to measure twenty-three, and the remaining eight measures are defined by an octave jump in the outer two parts and oscillation between half steps and whole steps. The movement concludes with a C major triad at a piano dynamic level. Essential considerations are dynamics and style.

The second movement, “Allegretto Scherzando,” is in an ABA form, specifically binary form, via the Da Capo at the end of the “B” section. The “A” section is an animated dance section driven by a motor rhythm centered around perfect fourth and perfect fifth intervals depending on the direction of the leap. The melody begins in the third trombone in measure two. It contains chromatic quarter notes and a triplet rhythm reminiscent of the first movement and concludes on a sustained note. The melody passes to the bass trombone in measure five and is generally a perfect fourth lower. In measures eleven and twelve, there is a brief homorhythmic section before the first trombone becomes the primary melodic voice in measure thirteen. The melody consists primarily of stepwise motion but ascends to C5, and the tessitura remains high afterward. Underneath this melody, the second and third trombones have half notes, and the bass trombone plays a quarter-note bass line. In measure eighteen, the homorhythmic texture returns, lasting until measure twenty-nine. The primary scherzo melody returns in measure thirty in the bass trombone, which passes it to the third trombone in measure thirty-three. The primary difference in this recurrence is that the melody features an inverted pitch direction. Several of the notes that previously descended now ascend. The homorhythmic section returns until the downbeat of measure forty-eight, where a unison octave (G3 in the first and second trombones; G2 in the third and fourth trombones) occurs. The “A” section concludes with a minor seventh. The “B” section begins in measure fifty-three. The bottom three parts provide half-note and

quarter-note accompaniment, while the first trombone plays the melody. The melody is four sixteenth notes on beat two, but they are unconventionally beamed in this edition; the first trombone remains the primary melodic voice until measure sixty-four. The “B” section concludes with a rhythmic figure in the second and third trombones and sustained notes in the outer parts. The music returns to the beginning, and after moving through the “A” section, the movement concludes on a unison octave G. Essential considerations are dynamics, style, and tessitura.

The third movement, “Adagio,” is the suite’s sole slow and lyrical movement. It begins with a solo in the bass trombone that consists of primarily disjunct motion. The upper three parts enter in measure three on beat two, with accompaniment lines providing rhythmic support during the solo’s sustained pitches. While the upper three parts decrescendo in measure five, the bass trombone crescendos, leading to a sforzando attack by the ensemble in measure six. In measure seven, the texture transitions to a more contrapuntal texture that mixes independent lines with homorhythmic lines. The homorhythmic passages primarily occur between measures ten and fourteen, and the contrapuntal lines occur between measures in two sections (m. 7-10; m. 14-16). Except for several counts in the subsequent eleven measures, the second trombone line is rhythmically identical to the first trombone part. A similar pattern occurs between the third and fourth trombones; however, there is a greater deviation in the third trombone during measures fourteen through sixteen. The exceptions are typically two eighths or three triplets instead of a quarter note. In measure seventeen, the tempo increases to sixty-six beats per minute, and the texture becomes completely homorhythmic, highlighting quarter notes in stepwise motion and skips. Except for triplets in the first and second trombones in measure twenty, a triplet in measure twenty-five in the third trombone, a dotted half note in measure twenty-four, and a half

note in the upper three parts in measure twenty-seven, this quarter-note material continues across the ensemble until measure twenty-eight. The bass trombone separates from the upper three parts in measure thirty, providing a syncopated line. The upper three parts have a homorhythmic line over the bass trombone line that begins on beat two in measures thirty and thirty-one and prioritizes quarter notes and triplets. In measure thirty-four, the homorhythmic texture dissipates into a division of the ensemble. The first trombone continues with the second trombone until measure thirty-six, becoming a supporting voice. The third trombone is the primary melodic voice for the final three measures. The movement concludes with an F major triad. Essential considerations are dynamics, intonation, and style.

The fourth movement, “Allegro marciale,” is a march in an ABA’ form. It begins with a prominent first trombone solo and accompaniment on the offbeats in the lower three parts. The melody contains disjunct motion within triplets and dotted-eighth sixteenth-note rhythms. In measure nine, the texture becomes homorhythmic, which, after a triplet, initiates a descending chromatic line beginning on a D minor triad. In measure fifteen, the first-trombone melody begins, continuing until measure twenty-four, where an *allargando* occurs without prior indication. The subsequent four measures alternate between the tempo and the *allargando*. The faster tempo returns on the anacrusis to measure twenty-nine, but the style becomes legato. In measure thirty-five, the style changes to a quasi-scherzo; the first and fourth trombones provide an eighth-note accompaniment, and the second and third trombones have a melody consisting of sustained notes and dotted-eighth sixteenth rhythms. In measure forty-seven, the bass trombone contrasts with the other three trombone parts. The bass trombone plays an eighth note and two sixteenths on beat one, while the upper three parts play the same rhythm on beat two. This dialogue continues for five measures until the bass trombone becomes the primary melodic

voice; the melody is highly chromatic and features both ascending and descending motion. The legato style returns in measure fifty-seven and lasts ten measures. In measure sixty-seven, the quasi-scherzo returns for only four measures. The opening material returns in measure eighty until a unison octave in measure 109 (G4 in trombones one and two; G3 in trombones three and four). The movement and piece conclude with a C major triad. Essential considerations are articulation, intonation, and style.

6 Pieces for 4 Trombones – Vaclav Nelhybel

Composer: Vaclav Nelhybel (1919–1996)

Born in 1919, Vaclav Nelhybel studied composition and conducting at the Conservatory of Music in Prague as well as musicology at Prague University and the University of Fribourg (Switzerland).²⁹⁰ Following the end of World War II, he took on the role of lecturer at the University of Fribourg, composer/conductor affiliated with the Swiss National Radio, and the musical director of Radio Free Europe (Munich, Germany).²⁹¹ In 1957, he immigrated to the United States becoming a citizen in 1962.²⁹² Throughout his career, he composed four hundred published works and at least two hundred unpublished works.²⁹³ “The most striking general characteristic of his music is its linear-modal orientation. His concern with the autonomy of melodic line leads to the second, an equally important characteristic, that of movement and pulsation, or rhythm and meter.”²⁹⁴ One of his other works for trombones is *Tower Music* (1977). He passed away in 1996.

Arranger: N/A

Title: *6 Pieces for 4 Four Trombones*

Movements: Six Movements

1. Allegretto
2. Moderato
3. Molto vivo
4. Molto marcato

²⁹⁰ “Vaclav Nelhybel Biography,” Academics, University of Scranton, accessed March 10, 2025, <https://www.scranton.edu/academics/performance-music/nelhybel/bio.shtml>.

²⁹¹ Ibid.

²⁹² Ibid.

²⁹³ Ibid.

²⁹⁴ Ibid.

5. Andante moderato

6. Con brio

The UIL Database contains this work but does not provide any movement specifications.

Duration: 4:30

Publisher: General Music Publishing (New York)

Copyright Date: 1966

Copy Quality: Engraved

Availability: Out of print; available via ILL

Difficulty: Advanced (4)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones; bass trombone*

Overall Range: E2 – Bb4

Trombone 1: E2 – Bb4

Trombone 2: E2 – Gb4

Trombone 3: E2 – A4

Bass Trombone: E2 – F4

Clefs: Trombone 1 (bass); Trombone 2 (bass); Trombone 3 (bass); Bass Trombone (bass)

Mutes: Straight mute in Movement five for all four parts

Dedication: N/A

Publisher Overview/Score Description: N/A

Technical Considerations: Articulation; Glissando; Time

Articulation – Nelhybel is precise with his articulation markings; rarely does a note not have a marking, whether that be an accent, marcato accent, slur, staccato, or tenuto. It is

important to recognize that different articulations can occur in different parts simultaneously. For example, in the third and fourth measures of movement two, the first trombone has an accent on the downbeat, the second trombone has a tenuto followed by a slur, the third trombone has a tenuto slurred to a staccato, and the bass trombone has a staccato and a tenuto slurred to a staccato. In addition to the more traditional appearances of these articulations, hybrid articulations are also present throughout the work. The most prominent combinations are the accent with tenuto (Movement 1), tenuto with a slur (Movement 2), and accent with a slur (Movement 2; Movement 3; Movement 4; Movement 5; Movement 6). Often, a staccato occurs in the second note of the accented slur motif.

Glissando – The glissando is integral to this work. In the first movement, the glissando is a crucial component of its structure. Trombone one glissandos from E3 to B2, Bb2 to E2, D4 to B3, G4 to E4 and B2 to E3; fifth position is required for the E4 in measure twenty. Trombone two glissandos from E3 to B2, Bb2 to E2, D4 to B3, and B2 to E3. Trombone three glissandos from C3 to F3, Bb2 to E2, E2 to Bb2, D#3 to B2, B3 to G#3; seventh position is required for the G#3 in measure twenty. Trombone four glissandos from C3 to F3, Bb2 to E2, E2 to Bb2, F2 to E2, G#3 to E3; seventh position is required for the E3 in measures twenty. In the third movement, the opening line in the upper three parts has a grace note that includes a glissando from D4 to F4; fourth position is required for the D4. The second glissando occurs in measures eleven and twelve. The first trombone glissandos from Eb4 to Ab4; sixth position is required for the Eb4, and first position is required for the Ab4. The second trombone glissandos from C4 to F4; sixth position is required for the C4. The third trombone glissandos from A3 to D4; sixth position is

required for the A3. The fourth trombone glissandos from F3 to Bb3; sixth position is required for the F3.

Time – While keeping consistent time is crucial for any piece and every movement of this work, it is essential in movements three and four. Movement three contains a composite melody that each part supplies one-quarter of for most of its duration. It is imperative that each player within the ensemble does not react to the other parts but anticipates their entrances and enters accurately. The same issue arises in movement four but to a lesser degree because of a slower tempo and slightly less technical line.

Piece Description:

This work by Vaclav Nelhybel is a collection of six short movements, most containing between eleven and eighteen measures and approximately thirty seconds in duration. The first movement, “Allegretto,” focuses on the glissando and its incorporation within two-measure fragments. The first measure features a unison E2 across the ensemble and a homorhythmic (three eighth notes) texture. The rhythm continues in the third and fourth trombones, as does the unison in the second measure; however, the first and second trombone’s rhythm shifts by one count. The two measures feature the group splitting into two pairings and contains a four-note motive that alternates. The third and fourth trombones begin the idea in ascending fashion, which contains a glissando from C3 to F3; the first and second trombones answer with an inverted descending line that contains a glissando from E3 to B3. The two pairings overlap on beat three, creating a palindrome. The material from the second measure and the palindrome occur in the following two measures, establishing the foundation for the subsequent motive (a glissando from Bb3 to E2). In measure thirteen, the ensemble has a sforzando on beat two that glissandos to the downbeat of measure fourteen (except for the second trombone). The initial chord is dissonant,

containing F2, D#3, E3, and D4; the second chord is a perfect fifth in (E2-B2; E3-B3) in octaves. The opening material returns in measure sixteen, and another sforzando attack occurs on the second beat of measure nineteen. The initial chord contains G#3, B3, D4, and G4, while the second chord is an E major triad. The movement ends with a glissando up to E3 from B2 in the higher two parts and a glissando down to E2 from Bb2 in the lower two parts. The final note is a unison E2; items to consider are articulation and glissandos.

The second movement, “Moderato,” is the slowest and longest movement of the work. It begins with a melody in the first trombone, marked “molto espressivo rubato” by the composer. The central pitch of this legato melody is D4, which occurs seven times. In measure three, the rest of the ensemble enters once the first trombone plays a whole note B4 on the downbeat. The second trombone plays a three-note rhythmic pattern, while the bottom two parts play two-note fragments offset by one count. The second trombone rhythmic pattern is never present when the first melody sounds. In measure nine, the first trombone melody returns for a third time, ascending to A4 on the upbeat of beat 4; the rhythmic pattern in the second trombone returns in measure eleven. In the final five measures, the first trombone holds sustained notes while the rest of the ensemble plays accented quarter notes and shorter sustained notes that the composer marks with crescendos. The movement ends on a G major triad; items to consider are articulation, dynamic contrast, and phrasing.

The third movement, “Molto vivo,” is the work’s fastest and most challenging movement. It begins with a glissando from D4 to F4 in the upper three parts, introducing a composite melody to which each part contributes. The first and third trombones play descending lines on beats one and three, while the second and fourth trombones play ascending lines on beats two and four. Over the subsequent three measures, the order of the parts varies, as does

each fragment's direction. In measure five, the upper two trombones rest while the bottom two parts play two ascending lines that span almost two octaves. The first idea occurs on beats one and two, while the second idea begins anew and appears on beats three and four. The bottom three parts interact compositely for the following four measures, as the first trombone primarily plays eighth notes on the downbeat. On beat four of measure eleven, the ensemble plays a dotted-quarter note F7 chord that shifts to a Bb7 chord via glissando. The movement ends on F, spanning two octaves (F2, F3, F4).

The fourth movement, "Molto marcato," is a fanfare that features another composite melody via staggered entrances. The first, second, and fourth trombones have angular lines featuring large melodic leaps, while the third trombone has a stepwise melodic line. In measure four, the bass trombone enters on the upbeat of two, leading to a syncopated line lasting over two measures. This syncopated line becomes the primary source of cohesion throughout the movement, passing to the second trombone, then the third trombone, back to the second trombone, and concluding with the first trombone. All this interaction across the ensemble culminates with a fortissimo G major triad that leads into an F# half diminished seventh chord in first inversion and concludes with an E major triad. Items to consider are articulation and time.

The fifth movement, "Andante moderato," features a muted ensemble split into pairs. The third and fourth trombones begin this movement, playing on beats one, three, and the upbeat of four. The first and second trombones enter on beat four and play on the subsequent beats that the other trombones do not (typically beat two). This texture lasts for ten measures (with a slight change in measures nine and ten), is mainly stepwise with the occasional skip, and utilizes accents and marcato accents. The texture becomes homorhythmic for two measures, leading to a Gb major seventh chord before the alternating texture returns. The groups alternate every eighth

note, producing a seamless sequence of eighth notes in measure thirteen; this leads to a final homorhythmic section in the final three measures. The first trombone glissandos from Bb2 to F2, and the movement concludes on a unison F2. Items to consider are articulation, intonation, and time.

The sixth movement, “Con brio,” is a dance that features the bass trombone. It begins with the top three parts outlining a Bb major triad for two beats; the bass trombone enters on the upbeat of beat three. Its melody contains three four-note motives separated by an eighth note. The top three parts accompany the bass trombone melody as it changes rhythms and notes. In measure seven, a cascading line outlining an F major triad descends across the ensemble; then, in measure eight, the music recycles, and a cascading Eb major triad ensues. The following two measures feature a homorhythmic texture containing dense harmony. The movement and work conclude with a Bb major triad. Items to consider are articulation, dynamic contrast, and style.

Suite for Trombone Quartet, Op. 82 – Flor Peeters

Composer: Flor Peeters (1903–1986)

Born in 1903, Flor Peeters was a highly regarded composer and organist of the twentieth century. He was the youngest laureate at the Lemmens Institute in Mechelen to win the Prix Lemmens – Tinel (1923).²⁹⁵ In 1925, he became the first organist at the Cathedral and head organ teacher at the Lemmens Institute; he taught there from 1923 to 1952.²⁹⁶ He was also the director of the Flemish Conservatory from 1952 to 1968.²⁹⁷ As a performer, his career expanded outside of continental Europe exponentially following World War II.²⁹⁸ As a composer, characteristics of his compositions often include a preference for classical forms, the use of polyrhythm, and polytonality;²⁹⁹ they are also primarily for keyboard and choir. He died in 1986.

Arranger: N/A

Title: *Suite for Four Trombones, Op. 82*

Movements: Four Movements

1. Entrata (quarter note equals 56 bpm)
2. Lied (quarter note equals 63 bpm)
3. Dans (half note equals 100 bpm)
4. Final (quarter note equals 126 bpm)

The UIL Database contains this work but does not provide any movement specifications.

Duration: 7:00

²⁹⁵ “Flor Peeters,” Biographies of Poets & Composers, Bach-Cantatas.com, last modified June 20, 2017, <https://www.bach-cantatas.com/Lib/Peeters-Flor.htm>.

²⁹⁶ Ibid.

²⁹⁷ Ibid.

²⁹⁸ Ibid.

²⁹⁹ Ibid.

Publisher: Edition Peters (New York, NY) owned by Wise Music Group

Copyright Date: 1959

Copy Quality: Engraved

Availability: Available from numerous merchants; no digital download

Difficulty: Advanced (4)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones; bass trombone

Overall Range: C2 – B4

Trombone 1: D3 – B4

Trombone 2: Bb2 – G4

Trombone 3: Eb2 – E4

Bass Trombone: C2 – E4

Clefs: Trombone 1 (tenor); Trombone 2 (tenor, bass); Trombone 3 (bass); Bass Trombone (bass)

Mutes: N/A

Dedication: Edward van Haes and his Trombone Quartet

Publisher Overview/Score Description: N/A

Technical Considerations: Rhythm; Phrasing; Meter; Multiple Tonguing

Rhythm – This topic is pertinent concerning the first movement. While the tempo is slow, the thirty-second notes that the players across the ensemble present a challenge; it is almost easier at a slightly faster tempo. Additionally, the music requires each musician to be comfortable with quick subdivision changes; it often moves between triplets and sixteenth as quickly as every beat, which elicits two responses. The first is a longer sixteenth note that feels closer to triplets, and the second is a shorter sixteenth note closer to the thirty-second note. Watch out for measure thirty.

Phrasing – This topic is pertinent to every movement of this suite but is vital to the second movement. The first trombone must lead the group with confident musical decisions and the rest of the ensemble must be willing to follow.

Meter – Movement three's meter presents a challenge because it alternates back and forth between 5/4 and 4/4. To assistance with the music's readability, the composer wrote dashed bar lines to separate the big beats of the 5/4 bars. The pattern is typically two plus 3 (2 + 3). The 7/4 can also be tricky, so the bass trombone and first trombone must lead. Finally, the 3/4 needs to move briskly but not get out of control.

Multiple Tonguing – Double tonguing may be necessary for movement four in all parts, specifically measures forty-two through forty-five.

Piece Description:

This work by Flor Peeters is a hallmark of the trombone quartet repertoire and has been recorded by many ensembles such as the LaTeX Trombone Quartet and the Tritone Trombone Quartet. The suite begins with a fanfare-dominated "Entrata" that often pits the bass trombonist, a quasi-solo, against the other three parts. The bass trombone begins the movement with the primary motive, which contains an eighth note, a sixteenth rest, two thirty-second notes, and two quarter notes. In the subsequent two measures, trombones one through three play a similar line that adds syncopation on beats three and four. In measure four, the bass trombone restates the theme, and measure five is the first occurrence of the bass trombone playing an independent line against the rest of the ensemble; this texture is the dominant force of the movement. As the music progresses, Peeters mixes full ensemble playing with smaller group configurations; measure twenty is a perfect example of this because he either leaves the first or fourth trombonist out of various lines. Measure thirty could present issues due to a rhythm change that breaks the

standard, and the movement ends on a c major triad. Several items worth considering are rhythm, dynamic contrast, and style.

The second movement, “Lied,” is a beautiful song that primarily features the first trombone in a soloistic manner. The solo line mainly contains stepwise motion and repeated notes, conducive to rubato and expressive musicality. The other three parts supply the harmonic progression and motion underneath the solo through accompaniment lines. The most challenging section is the last five measures of the movement, where three subsequent phrases start on one dynamic level louder than the previous; it begins at mezzo forte, moves to forte, and ends on fortissimo. This section requires the second trombone to leap an octave and the first trombone to leap a 10th. Items to consider are rubato, dynamic contrast, and legato playing.

The third movement is the first fast movement of the suite; it has three unique sections. The first alternates between 5/4 and 4/4, the second is in 7/4, and the third is a waltz in ¾. While not a rondo, the form plays out this way as the alternating 5/4 – 4/4 section connects each unique section. The form is 1 – 2 – 1 – 3 – 1 – 2 – 1. This movement’s foundation (outside the waltz) is the third trombone part, which receives help from the second and fourth trombones. The part only plays four different notes but anchors the melody in the first two sections. In section one, the first trombone plays the melodic line, while the second trombone provides harmony, and trombones three and four play the ostinato (notes occur on beats 1, 3, and 5 of the 5/4 and beats 1, 3, and 4 of the 4/4). In the second section (7/4), the first and second trombones join trombone three in the ostinato, while the bass trombone carries the melodic line until measure fifteen. Then, the first trombone takes over the melody, and the bass trombone returns to ostinato duty. The waltz section, labeled “Cantando (e vibrato),” moves to a key signature with four sharps; it also pairs the first and third trombones against the second and fourth trombones. The first and

third trombones play a diatonic melody a sixth apart, while the other two parts play the accompaniment part. The accompaniment line is difficult because the parts do not play the same rhythm but alternate beats (i.e., when trombone two plays on beats one and three, trombone four plays on beat two). The movement ends on a perfect fifth, featuring three different As and an E4 in trombone two. Time and style are the biggest factors in this movement.

The fourth movement, “Final,” is probably the most technically difficult of the suite; simultaneously, it also features the most diatonic runs across the ensemble. The melody begins in the first trombone, featuring steps and skips within a G major scale; simultaneously, trombones two and three play a motor rhythm a perfect fifth apart. In measure five, the bass trombone plays an interrupting line that breaks the status quo; it also creates an “Anything You Can Do, I Can Do Better”³⁰⁰ scenario with trombone one. In measure eighteen, the ensemble passes around a two-measure motive borrowed from the original melody that trombone three starts. A short homorhythmic section follows, featuring syncopation and four major seventh chords (A, G, Bb, and Ab). Measures forty-two through forty-five is the most technically challenging section, which may require double tonguing. The opening melody returns, and the work concludes with a three-measure allargando that calls back to the opening “Entrata.” Items to consider are tempo, style, articulation, and time.

³⁰⁰ Irving Berlin, “Anything You Can Do (I Can Do Better),” in *Annie Get Your Gun Vocal Selections* (Milwaukee, WI: Hal Leonard, 1990).

Chaconne and March for Trombone Quartet – William Presser

Composer: William Presser (1916–2004)

Born in 1916, William Presser received his B.A. from Alma College, M.M. from the University of Michigan, and Ph.D. from the Eastman School of Music, which he finished after being drafted into the military in 1943.³⁰¹ His teachers were Herman Genhart, Roy Harris, Guy Fraser Harrison, Thor Johnson, Pierre Monteux, Gardner Read, and Bernard Rogers.³⁰² He taught at numerous institutions throughout this career, including a near thirty-year tenure at The University of Southern Mississippi (1953-1981).³⁰³ In 1961, he founded Tritone Press and Tenuto Publications.³⁰⁴ His other notable works for trombone include *Sonatina for Trombone and Piano* (1962/1990), *Rondo for Trombone and Strings* (1964), *Suite of Fanfares* (1972), and *Three Folktales for Bass Trombone* (1977). He died in 2004.

Arranger: N/A

Title: *Chaconne and March for Trombone Quartet*

Movements: Two Movements

1. Chaconne (quarter note equals 82 bpm)
2. March (quartet note equals 132 bpm)

Included in the NYSSMA Solo & Ensemble Catalog.

Duration: 5:00

Publisher: Tenuto Publications owned by Theodore Presser (Bryn Mawr, PA)

Copyright Date: 1973

Copy Quality: Engraved

³⁰¹ “William Presser Original Music Scores,” Collections, The University of Southern Mississippi, last modified January 17, 2020, <https://specialcollections.usm.edu/repositories/3/resources/574>.

³⁰² William Presser, *Chaconne and March for Trombone Quartet* (Tenuto Publications, 1973).

³⁰³ Ibid.

³⁰⁴ The University of Southern Mississippi, “William Presser Scores.”

Availability: Available from numerous merchants; no digital download available

Difficulty: Advanced (4)

Instrumentation: Two tenor trombones; two bass trombones (the third part is playable on tenor)

Overall Range: Ab1 – C5

Trombone 1: E2 – C5

Trombone 2: Bb1 – A4

Trombone 3: C2 – Bb4

Bass Trombone: Ab1 – G#4

Clefs: Trombone 1 (tenor, bass); Trombone 2 (bass); Trombone 3/Bass Trombone (bass); Bass Trombone (bass)

Mutes: Straight Mute (Trombones 1-3 in the last six measures of movement two)

Dedication: N/A

Publisher Overview/Score Description: N/A

Technical Considerations: Note Accuracy; Range; Style

Note Accuracy – While playing the correct notes is essential to the performance of any work, there are passages in this quartet that warrant discussion. Presser includes several scalar lines in both movements. In the first movement, the primary technical challenge is from measures forty-three to fifty-three in the second trombone, which has four scalar lines. The first one closely resembles an octatonic scale except for two adjacent whole steps (G#3 to F#3). The second line is similar but removes three accidentals (A#, G#, and the lower C#). The third line removes F#3 and the higher C# while adding Eb, Bb, and Ab at the scale's bottom. The fourth line no longer starts on D; it starts on Bb3 and adds an Ab at the scale's top. The two passages in the second movement occur in measures

fifty-three through fifty-six in the first trombone and 113 through 116 in the third and fourth trombones. The first trombone scalar line is a descending Bb scale starting in Bb4. The lines in the lower two trombones are a G major scale, starting on F#4. Ensuring these notes are accurate, especially in the second trombone part (movement one), is essential.

Range – Range may present a difficulty in higher and lower registers. The first trombone only ascends to C5 once in the second movement (m. 113-114), but it has numerous Bb4s and B4s across both movements. Conversely, there are instances in which the third trombone descends below the bass trombone (e.g., m. 9 in movement one, m. 26-27 in movement two, and m. 50 in movement two), and it also has a Bb4 in measure 140. A bass trombone is recommended for this part if practical. Additionally, all four parts have octave leaps in both movements. Among several examples, one occurs in measure three in all four parts, which must leap from Eb3 to Eb4; the first trombone leaps from Bb3 to B4 in measure forty-five. Flexibility across registers is critical for performing this work.

Style – This aspect is most relevant for the second movement due to the pronounced contrasts in articulation. The “A” section’s notes should not be overly short; sustain their full duration and focus on a resonant tone. The “B” section, characterized by extended legato phrases, should be distinct from the outer “A” sections. Using a combination of legato tongue, lip slurs, and natural slurs will produce this distinction.

Piece Description:

This quartet by William Presser is an underperformed work that requires the use of two bass trombones as the third trombone descends to C2 on multiple occasions. The first movement, “Chaconne,” begins with a unison line across the ensemble on an anacrusis to measure one. The unison lasts until beat three of measure five, where the ensemble divides into duos. Beat two

features a C3 in all four parts, and on beat three, the upper two parts ascend to D3 and eventually Eb3, while the lower two parts descend to Bb2 and eventually Ab2. On the anacrusis to measure seven, the bass trombone initiates a contrapuntal texture primarily comprised of two-measure segments. Its line consists of perfect fourth leaps. The first trombone enters on beat two of measure seven with a line that begins identically to the bass trombone; however, it diverges from that pattern on beat three of measure eight and emphasizes stepwise motion and chromaticism. The third trombone enters on the upbeat of beat one in measure nine with an octave leap from Eb2 to Eb3 followed by mostly stepwise motion. Measure ten is the most active of the early contrapuntal measures because the second trombone enters on beat two with a line similar to the first trombone line yet distinct (ascends to C4 and note durations are slightly different). The bass trombone enters on the anacrusis to measure eleven with a line featuring more stepwise motion. In measure fifteen, the bass trombone plays the octave jump that the third trombone plays in measure nine; conversely, the upper three parts begin a homorhythmic line (in harmony) on the anacrusis to measure sixteen. This homorhythmic line is characterized by initial leaps of a perfect fifth or more followed by stepwise motion and tied sustained notes. These two elements converge on beat two of measure twenty-three at a forte dynamic that follows a crescendo in measure twenty-two. On the anacrusis to measure twenty-five, the first trombone initiates the second contrapuntal section, with the third trombone entering in the next measure, the second trombone entering in measure twenty-seven, and the bass trombone entering measure twenty-eight. This contrapuntal section includes the two-measure segments like its predecessor and longer phrases in the third trombone. A second homorhythmic section begins on the anacrusis to measure thirty-one in the first and second trombones; the third trombone joins them on the downbeat of measure thirty-one, and the bass trombone maintains its contrast with the ensemble.

This texture lasts six measures before becoming more homophonic and features a melody in the first trombone for the following nineteen measures. Disjunct motion (perfect fourth, perfect fifth, and octave leaps), a switch to tenor clef in measure forty-five, and numerous accidentals define this melody's character. During this section, the second trombone provides a countermelody that utilizes leaps and eighth-note runs. In measure forty-three, the part has the first of four descending eighth-note lines at a forte dynamic level. Finally, the third and bass trombones establish a harmonic foundation through a walking bass line. The movement's climax occurs in measures fifty-four through fifty-six, which juxtaposes the bass trombone against the upper three parts again. The movement concludes with a perfect fifth (F2, C3, and F3) at a piano dynamic. Elements requiring attention are dynamics, notes, and style.

The second movement, "March," is structured stylistically as an ABA form by the composer since the two outer sections are more articulated and the middle section is legato. It begins on an anacrusis to measure one in the first trombone, the primary melodic voice. This melody combines stepwise motion and skips to form a compelling seven-measure melody. After four and a half measures of rest, the melody reenters on the anacrusis to measure thirteen. It maintains the style from the opening seven measures while incorporating more note repetition; it is also four measures longer and reappears more rapidly on the anacrusis to measure twenty. This statement at measure twenty is identical to the opening statement. The texture begins transitioning to a less homophonic texture in measure thirty-six. While the first trombone has all this melodic material, the lower three trombone parts have accompaniment figures. Many of these measures contain quarter notes on the beat or single eighth notes on the upbeats; however, they play a melodic interjection in measures eight through twelve, featuring eighth note figures within a crescendo in measures twenty-two and twenty-three in support of the first trombone.

Beginning in measure twenty-eight, the lower parts become more active, leading to a bass trombone solo passage in measure thirty-six. In measure thirty-six, the second trombone joins the first trombone in harmony, and the third and bass trombones alternate four-measure phrases. Simultaneously, a crescendo occurs within this melodic texture, culminating with a fortissimo G minor triad in first inversion in measure fifty-three. Following this moment, a decrescendo occurs, and the outer voices move in contrary motion, leading to a shift to a legato style. This section is homorhythmic in the upper three parts, while the bass trombone provides articulated notes on the downbeat of every measure. It lasts almost thirty measures and will challenge the first and second trombone's range and endurance. In measure eighty-five, the material from the opening section returns; however, it is not fully reprised as the composer juxtaposes it against the melodic content of the "B" section. On the anacrusis to measure one hundred, a fragment of the opening line occurs in staggered entrances across the ensemble. They lead to sustained notes in multiple instances. In measure 111, a new idea begins that crescendos quickly to fortissimo in measure 113 and features a descending scale in the third and fourth trombones (m. 114–116). On the anacrusis to measure 117, the first trombone reintroduces the opening melody, although it ascends to Bb4 in measure 124; the second trombone plays a variation, starting in measure 121. Over the next twenty measures, the ensemble is in duos, playing lines that resemble dialogue. In measure 155, the main melody in the first trombone occurs again; however, the lower parts are more active. Starting in measure 169, melodic fragments are distributed among the ensemble, and new syncopated rhythms occur (m. 176–179). Beginning in measure 183, the top three parts require a straight mute. These must be readily available because the first trombone has three counts, and the third has four counts to insert the mute. The work concludes with a pianissimo G minor triad. Elements requiring attention are dynamics, endurance, range, and style.

Burlesque for Trombone Quartet – Alan Raph

Composer: Alan Raph (1933–2023)

Born in 1933, Alan Raph, primarily a bass trombonist, received a Bachelor of Science – Music Education degree from New York University and a Master of Arts degree from the Music Education Teachers College Columbia University.³⁰⁵ He was the primary call player for commercial recording on bass trombone and tuba in New York City during the 1960s and 1970s.³⁰⁶ He founded the Danbury Brass Band in 1973, serving as its conductor until his death.³⁰⁷ He wrote many pedagogical texts such as *Trombonisms* with Bill Watrous (1983) and *Double Valve Bass Trombone* (2000/2019);³⁰⁸ he also made editions of Arban and Bordogni.³⁰⁹ One of his solo works for bass trombone is *Rock* (1970). He died in 2023.

Arranger: N/A

Title: *Burlesque for Trombone Quartet*

Movements: One Movement

Duration: 2:00

Publisher: Wiltshire Music Company (Massapequa, NY)

Copyright Date: 1956

Copy Quality: Manuscript

Availability: Available from numerous merchants; no digital download available

Difficulty: Advanced (4)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones; bass trombone

³⁰⁵ “Alan Raph,” Trombone Page of the World, last modified October 15, 2020, http://www.trombone-usa.com/raph_alan_bio.htm.

³⁰⁶ “Alan Raph Obituary,” Danbury News Times, last modified December 10, 2023, <https://www.legacy.com/us/obituaries/newstimes/name/alan-raph-obituary?id=53804454>.

³⁰⁷ Danbury News Times, “Alan Raph Obituary.”

³⁰⁸ Trombone Page of the Word, “Alan Raph.”

³⁰⁹ Danbury News Times, “Alan Raph Obituary.”

Overall Range: Bb1 – Cb5

Trombone 1: G3 – Cb5

Trombone 2: Eb3 – A4

Trombone 3: F2 – E4

Bass Trombone: Bb1 – C4

Clefs: Trombone 1 (tenor); Trombone 2 (bass); Trombone 3 (bass); Bass Trombone (bass)

Mutes: N/A

Dedication: Gabriel Masson and The Trombone Quartet of Paris

Publisher Overview/Score Description: N/A

Technical Considerations: Articulation; Dynamics; Rhythm

Articulation – Raph provides precise notation of specific articulations, as there is a blend of slur, staccato, tenuto, and accent articulation markings. Much like rhythm, adhering to these instructions is critical for achieving the correct style. A primary example of this mixture is the music content from Rehearsal B to Rehearsal C.

Dynamics – Raph provides dynamic instructions and phrase markings throughout the majority of the composition, especially from Rehearsal C to the conclusion. Conversely, the work's beginning to Rehearsal C lacks such instructions. The ensemble must determine suitable dynamic and phrasing interpretations in this section; otherwise, the repetitive nature of the melody and bass line may result in a lack of variety and engagement.

Rhythm – This short work incorporates numerous dance rhythms since Burlesque is a dance style. Playing with crisp, accurate rhythms is crucial for stylistic integrity and ensemble cohesion. With regard to multiple melodic ideas, syncopation on the eighth-

note and sixteenth-note levels is prevalent primarily in the middle section. The first example of this occurs in the first measure of Rehearsal B; this construction primarily utilizes eighth-note syncopation. In the fifth measure of Rehearsal B, sixteenth-note level syncopation occurs in the third trombone. Such syncopation also appears in the first trombone melody seven measures from the work's conclusion. These types of rhythms also occur in the accompaniment part.

Piece Description:

This work by Alan Raph is a concise showpiece whose character is formed by a combination of jazz-infused levity and playfulness; its form is a quasi-ABA form with a longer middle section. It begins with a bass trombone melody that contains disjunct motion via leaps (some as large as a major ninth). Simultaneously, the higher three parts have offbeat accompaniment. Both these ideas last for two measures. In measure three (Rehearsal A), the bass trombone line from the previous two measures becomes a bass-line figure, and the first trombone becomes the primary melodic voice. The melody is a dance figure that lasts two measures and contains stepwise motion and skips. Its slurs and accidentals convey a lively character, and it concludes with a larger leap. Measures three, five, and seven are identical, while measures four, six, and eight contain more rhythmic diversity (measure six has two dotted quarter notes, while the other two measures have two eighth notes, a quarter note, and an eighth note). The second and third trombones continue with offbeat accompaniment. In measure nine, the texture becomes homorhythmic. All four parts have eight eighth notes; the first six eighth notes are played with a crescendo to beat three; beat four is a subito piano. The eighth notes continue through beats one and two in the next measure. On beats three and four, the third and fourth trombones have eighth notes that facilitate the reintroduction of the melody from measures three through six. At

Rehearsal B, the style shifts from more articulate to legato, and syncopation becomes more prevalent. It begins with all four parts descending; they line up homorhythmically on beats three and four. The subsequent four measures are more contrapuntal in the top three parts, mixing syncopated lines on the sixteenth-note level. The measure before Rehearsal C is homorhythmic, beginning on the “e” of beat one. Rehearsal C continues with the legato material in a mostly homorhythmic texture (there is some variation in the outer voices). It culminates with repeated sixteenth notes crescendoing to a cadence in C major. At Rehearsal D, the tempo’s speed decreases, and quasi-solo lines comprised of triplets occur in the first and third trombones. The first three triplets in both lines contain skips, and the fourth one contains only one note (Ab3 in trombone one; F2 in trombone three). In the next measure, the triplet idea continues; however, the composer includes the second trombone. The measure before “Tempo 1,” which is eight measures for the work’s conclusion, features an ascending triplet line in the top two parts. Conversely, the third trombone supports the bass trombone in providing the bass line. The section marked “Tempo 1” initially resembles Rehearsal A, with the only difference being that the melody line is a minor third higher. As with the beginning, this refrain occurs in five of the last eight measures; however, the first two intermittent measures are mostly homorhythmic (again, there is some slight variation in the bass trombone). In the penultimate measure, a crescendo and a ritardando facilitate the work’s resolution and conclusion on an Eb major triad in the next measure. Items to consider are articulation, dynamics, rhythm, and style.

Concert Piece for Four Trombones – Fisher Tull

Composer: Fisher Tull (1934–1994)

Born in 1934, Fisher Tull received his B.M. (1956), M.M (1957), and Ph.D. (1965) from the University of North Texas;³¹⁰ his teachers were John Haynie (trumpet), Frank Mainous (theory), John Ottman (theory), and Samuel Adler (composition).³¹¹ In 1957, he accepted a position at Sam Houston State University (SHSU), where he would serve as the Chair of the Department of Music from 1965 to 1982.³¹² As an educator, he was named a Piper Professor by the Minnie Stevens Piper Foundation of Texas and a Distinguished Professor of Music by SHSU in addition to a wide range of other honors.³¹³ As a composer:

His musical style ranges from neo-classical to the more experimental. His music is diverse, exhibiting rhythmically vibrant melodies, sometimes reminiscent of Bartok and Hindemith, borrowing from liturgical music, and his obvious skill in Baroque counterpoint. Two popular styles of Post-War American music include the fascination with rhythm and the focus on neo-romantic melodies and lush harmony. His music demonstrates fluency in both styles, showing his versatility in and command of musical language.³¹⁴

His first major works after working with Adler were for brass ensemble and eventually for concert band (e.g., *Sketches on a Tudor Psalm* – 1971).³¹⁵ His other notable work for trombone is *Chamber Concerto for Trombone and Woodwind Quintet* (1991); he passed away in 1994.

Arranger: N/A

Title: *Concert Piece for Four Trombones*

Movements: Three Movements

1. Allegro (quarter note equals 128 bpm)

³¹⁰ Fisher Tull, *Concert Piece for Trombone Quartet* (International Trombone Association Press, 1996).

³¹¹ Ibid.

³¹² Ibid.

³¹³ Ibid.

³¹⁴ Sheryl K. Murphy-Manley, “A Tribute to Fisher Tull,” Biography, Fishertull.com, accessed April 8, 2025, <http://fishertull.com/bio/>.

³¹⁵ Tull, *Concert Piece for Trombone Quartet*.

2. Very Slowly (quarter note equals 56 bpm)

3. Allegro Molto (quarter note equals 144 bpm)

Duration: 9:00

Publisher: International Trombone Association Manuscript Press owned by Southern Music
(San Antonio, TX)

Copyright Date: 1968/1996

Copy Quality: Engraved

Availability: Available from numerous merchants; digital download available from Warwick
Music

Difficulty: Advanced (4)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones; bass trombone

Overall Range: C2 – C5

Trombone 1: A2 – C5

Trombone 2: A2 – A4

Trombone 3: G2 – A4

Bass Trombone: C2 – E4

Clefs: Trombone 1 (tenor); Trombone 2 (tenor, bass); Trombone 3 (tenor, bass); Bass Trombone
(bass)

Mutes: Straight mute in all four parts (Movement 3 – measures 79 – 103); bass trombone is open
in measure 98 (parts 1- 3 in measures 104-106)

Dedication: N/A

Publisher Overview/Score Description:

Warwick Music

“For four trombones. *Concert Piece*, a well-written, nine-movement work, is scored for four trombones. Its highly energetic and rhythmically-charged outer movements are contrasted by a slow, lyrical, middle movement. A great display piece. *Concert Piece* is the required composition for the final round of the 2003 ITA Quartet Competition.”³¹⁶

Fisher Tull

“*Concert Piece* for four trombones was composed in 1968. The three movements are set in the traditional fast – slow – fast. The highly energetic and rhythmically charged outer movements are contrasted by the lyrical melody and legato accompaniment in the middle movement.”³¹⁷

Technical Considerations: Flutter-Tongue; Glissando; Multiple Tonguing; Scoops

Flutter-Tongue – This effect occurs solely in the first movement of this work and is designated by three slashes across the note’s stem. The first occurrence is in measure sixty-four within a fortississimo section. The second occurrence is in measure seventy-one within a crescendo. Growling serves as an appropriate alternative if an ensemble member cannot flutter-tongue.

Glissando – This effect occurs solely in the work’s first movement. The first occurrence spans measures twenty to twenty-eight. In measures twenty-three and twenty-four, the first trombonist must use fourth position for the A4 to glissando from C5 to A4; this occurs in measures twenty-six and twenty-seven. In measures twenty-eight and twenty-nine, the second trombonist must use fourth position for D4 to glissando from F4 to D4. The second occurrence is in measure thirty. The first trombonist must use fifth position

³¹⁶ Fisher Tull, “Fisher Tull: Concert Piece – Trombone Quartet,” ITA Press, Warwick Music, accessed April 8, 2025, <https://www.warwickmusic.com/p/iewc/>.

³¹⁷ Tull, *Concert Piece for Trombone Quartet*.

for Bb3 to glissando from Db4 to Bb3, and no alternate position is available for the third trombonist's glissando. The third occurrence is in measure thirty-five. The third trombone must use fifth position for C#4 to glissando from E4 to C#4, and the fourth trombone must use fifth position for the Bb3 to glissando from Bb3 to Db4. The fourth occurrence spans measures fifty to fifty-eight. In measure fifty-two, the third trombonist must use fifth position for C#4 to glissando from E4 to C#4. In measures fifty-three and fifty-four, the first trombonist must use fifth position for E4 to glissando from G4 to E4; this occurs in measures fifty-six and fifty-seven. In measures fifty-seven and fifty-eight, the third trombonist must use sixth position for A3 to glissando from C4 to A3.

Multiple Tonguing – This skill is not required but may benefit the ensemble because of the sixteenth notes, even though there are never more than two adjacent sixteenth notes in any motive. There are four measures where this skill could be applied: measures 73, 119, and 120 of movement three.

Scoops – This jazz technique is solely in the third movement. Its first occurrence is in measure nine on beat two, and its second is in measure seventy-five. No alternate positions are necessary.

Piece Description:

This work by Fisher Tull is a modern composition that contains unique harmony that is not triadic, quartal, quintal, or functional and is demanding yet accessible. The first movement, “Allegro,” begins with a repeated section that lasts nine measures. The first six measures contain staggered entrances that overlap with unisons to create a mosaic structure. In measures four through six, the entrances establish a pattern through repetition centered on a single chord that occurs on beat four, containing Eb3, A3, Db4, and Ab4. The first ending returns to a sparser

texture at a piano dynamic level before a crescendo beginning on the upbeat of three drives the music back to the beginning. The second ending retains the piano dynamic level but only lasts one measure and initiates a melodic pattern carried into the next measure, which switches meters to 9/8. In measure twelve, the ensemble divides into pairs, juxtaposing the first and third trombones against the second and fourth trombones. This division transitions to angular lines in the first and second trombones that encompass one measure. Measures seventeen through nineteen are homorhythmic and crescendo to a forte-piano attack by bass trombone on the downbeat of measure twenty. Over the subsequent ten measures, Tull mixes staggered entrances via glissandi (measures twenty through twenty-three; measures twenty-seven and twenty-eight with no glissando), with a homophonic texture containing a first trombone melody (measures twenty-four through twenty-six) and a homorhythmic texture (twenty-nine). These combinations continue over the next forty measures, containing interplay between articulated and legato figures. The movement's climax occurs in measure sixty-four via the preparation of a forte dynamic level in measure sixty and a crescendo in measure sixty-three. In this measure, the dynamic is fortississimo and features a flutter-tongued chord containing E3, B3, F4, and A4. The texture becomes homorhythmic as the music progresses through each measure towards another flutter-tongued chord containing G2, E3, B3, and D4. In measure seventy-nine, the mosaic staggered entrances return, recalling the opening, but a whole step higher. Measures eighty-four through eighty-eight change meters each measure and set up the remaining eleven measures. The movement concludes on a perfect fifth and fourth chord between D and A. Items worth consideration are dynamics, flutter tongue, glissando, and style.

The second movement, "Very slowly," is the shortest of the three movements at fifty-one measures long. It begins with chords in the second, third, and fourth trombones; this version is

the first of three and contains D2, C#3, and F3. The second version occurs in measures twenty, twenty-one, twenty-three, and twenty-four and contains Eb2, D3, and Gb3; the third version occurs in measures forty-five, forty-seven, and forty-eight and contains Db2, C3, and E3. On beat two of measure six, the first trombone enters with a melody that functions as a solo. It is primarily stepwise with intermittent skips and features numerous accidentals over the accompaniment in the lower three parts. It lasts until the downbeat of measure fifteen, when the established homophonic texture is interrupted by a descending melody created by staggered entrances. The first trombone regains the melody on the third beat of measure eighteen. In measure twenty-three, the second, third, and fourth trombones crescendo to the downbeat of measure twenty-five. This texture and ensemble interplay continues for nine measures until the second, third, and fourth trombones each have a melodic fragment in measure thirty-five. The first trombone solo returns in measure forty-three and the movement concludes on a chord containing Db2, C3, E3, and G3. Items to consider are dynamics, intonation, and phrasing.

The third movement, “Allegro molto,” is technically demanding and combines two styles (a dance-like style and a lyrical style). It begins with a homorhythmic section that lasts six measures and repeats. It contains the main melody, a cascading line in the top three parts; the fourth part moves in contrary motion (ascending) against the rest of the ensemble. After the second ending, the lines continue in the opening style, incorporating a scoop across the ensemble in measure nine. In measure eleven, the previous melody diminishes, and a new line featuring sixteenth notes on the “e” of the beat and eighth notes reminiscent of a folk dance. It only lasts four measures but is distributed among the entire ensemble. In measure fifteen, the style changes again to a lyrical song. This style lasts thirteen measures, featuring rich sonorities and a melody in the third trombone. Over the next ten measures, the legato style combines with the folk dance

to create a new character that concludes with an ascending composite melody. The opening melody returns in measure thirty-nine, and it lasts for nearly forty measures (with intermittent interruptions). The folk dance reappears in measure seventy-eight, lasting four measures before the legato section returns for the final time. This time, the ensemble utilizes straight mute. The return to an open sound occurs between measures 103 and 105, except for the bass trombone (measure ninety-nine), and features an ascending composite melody akin to measures thirty-six through thirty-eight. The main difference is that it leads to a sforzando forte piano that intensifies the remainder of the movement to measure 119, where each part experiences independence. In measure 122, the ensemble has another sforzando forte-piano attack with a crescendo that leads into a composite melody across the ensemble in the two penultimate bars. The movement concludes on a Bb major triad without the fifth. Items to consider are articulation, dynamics, multiple tonguing, scoops, and style.

Chapter 6: Level 5 Works

Trombone Quartet, Op. 117 – Derek Bourgeois

Composer: Derek Bourgeois (1941–2017)

Born in 1941, Derek Bourgeois was a prominent British composer, conductor, and educator. He graduated from Cambridge University and studied two years at the Royal College of Music.³¹⁸

His compositional output includes different types of genres, such as symphonies, concertos, operas, and chamber ensembles.³¹⁹ Between 1970 and 2002, he served as a Bristol University (1970-1984), conducted the Sun Life Band (1980-1983), served as the Music Director of the National Youth Orchestra, founded the National Youth Chamber Orchestra of Great Britain (1985), and became the Artistic Director of the Bristol Philharmonic Orchestra (1990).³²⁰ He died in 2017.

Arranger: N/A

Title: *Trombone Quartet*, Op. 117

Movements: Three Movements

1. Allegro Vivace (quartet note equals 116 bpm)
2. Adagio Molto (eighth note equals 72 bpm)
3. Presto (dotted half note equals 84 bpm)

Duration: 12:00

Publisher: Editions Marc Reift or EMR (Crans-Monatan, Switzerland)

Copyright Date: 1993

Copy Quality: Engraved

³¹⁸ “Biography,” [Derekbourgeois.com](https://www.derekbourgeois.com/biograph.htm), accessed February 24, 2025, <https://www.derekbourgeois.com/biograph.htm>.

³¹⁹ Ibid.

³²⁰ Ibid.

Availability: Available from numerous merchants; digital download available from EMR

Difficulty: Virtuoso (5)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones[^]; bass trombone

Overall Range: F#1 – E5

Trombone 1: G2 – E5

Trombone 2: G1 – G4

Trombone 3: G1 – E4

Bass Trombone: F#1 – Bb3

Clefs: Trombone 1 (bass); Trombone 2 (bass); Trombone 3 (bass); Bass Trombone (bass)

*Bb Treble clef copies are provided for all four parts; tenor clef copies are provided for trombones one and two.

Mutes: N/A

Dedication: N/A

Publisher Overview/Score Description: N/A

Technical Considerations: Double Tonguing; Glissando/Ornamentation; Triple Tonguing

Double Tonguing – This technique is necessary for the top three parts in the third movement. The first example occurs at Rehearsal 27 when the meter changes to 4/4. Except for the bass trombone, each part plays one sixteenth-note cell, containing four notes in measures thirty-six and thirty-eight. Double tonguing will help maintain unity throughout the line. Also, the first trombone part has an entire measure of continuous sixteenth notes in measure forty. The second example occurs at Rehearsal 35, primarily in the first trombone in measures eighty-nine and ninety; this passage is arguably the most difficult in the movement. In movement one, double tonguing may be used by the

second and third trombones at Rehearsal 4, and the first trombone between Rehearsals 10 to 12.

Glissando/Ornamentation – These two items are present in the first and third movements. In movement one, the first trombone part contains the single grace note and glissando. The ornamentation is a grace note located in measure five, and the lone glissando is from E4 to D4 in measures twelve and thirteen. In movement three, there is no ornamentation but several glissandi. The glissandi occur in measures ninety-nine and one hundred in the top three parts at a fortissimo dynamic. Some of them are cross-harmonic as they cross partials.

Triple Tonguing – Triple tonguing is essential for movement one. The sixteenth-note triplet introduced in measure nineteen becomes the primary rhythmic device at Rehearsal 3 and requires triple tonguing. This material returns at Rehearsals 12 and 15; the only part in this movement that does not have this rhythmic material is the bass trombone.

Piece Description:

This work by Derek Bourgeois is extremely technical, demanding high-level playing from the entire ensemble. The first movement, “Allegro vivace,” begins with a bass trombone melody comprised of tenuto quarter notes and sixteenth notes on beat three. The quarter notes must be long and unaccented to perform this part effectively. As for the sixteenth notes, they should drive to the downbeat. Simultaneously, the top three parts provide an accompaniment line on the upbeats. The first trombone assumes the melody in measure five, utilizing ornamentation and sixteenth-note triplets. At Rehearsal 1, the first and second trombones play a syncopated line, while the bass trombone has a descending chromatic quarter note line. A glissando in the first part bridges this section to Rehearsal 2, where the opening material returns. In this section,

the first trombone introduces a motive containing sixteenth-note triplets (m. 19); this motive becomes the central idea at Rehearsal 3. At Rehearsal 5, the music switches to 6/8 time. The bottom three parts accompany the first trombone part, which has a descending scalar line comprised of dotted quarter notes and dotted eighth notes that create a duple feel. Each reset of the descending line is associated with an octave or minor/major seventh. This texture ensues for the next thirty measures before the opening bass trombone line reappears four before Rehearsal 10. At Rehearsal 10, the first trombone plays a lengthy sixteenth-note line, while the second trombone has sixteenth-note triplets on each upbeat. At Rehearsal 12, the sixteenth-note triplet line from Rehearsal 3 returns in the top three parts. Simultaneously, the bass trombone has driving sixteenth notes that enhance the texture. The 6/8 time returns in measure ninety-five, but the second trombone part has the melody; the movement concludes with the sixteenth-note triplet line. Items to consider in this movement are multiple tonguing, slide technique, and style.

The second movement, “Adagio molto,” is a beautiful chorale-like texture, featuring increased dialogic exchanges across the ensemble rather than homorhythmic sections. The first trombone is the primary melodic force of the movement, often playing one of three motives. The first motive is a five-note scalar line in measures one and two. It features stepwise motion for the first three eighth notes, followed by a skip to the next eighth note, and concludes with a half note; the composer often writes it in two-measure statements that create a quasi-sequence. The second line, containing eight eighth notes, occurs in measure three. The first five notes ascend, and the last three eighth notes descend. The third line also contains eight eighth notes but breaks them into two four-note cells, each containing two dyads. The second and third trombone parts provide dialogue-like answers to these melodic statements by the first trombone. These responses typically occur on beat three and utilize descending tetrachords or the upper/lower

neighbor. As for the bass trombone, it provides a quarter-note bass line in almost every measure. Finally, the movement has only four homorhythmic measures (m. 18-19; 22-23). Items to consider are intonation, tone, and endurance.

The third movement, “Presto,” presents a technical challenge requiring all four parts to carry the line. The movement begins with a homorhythmic line in the top three parts and a bass line on the strong beats in the bass trombone. The melody this texture produces is jig-like, utilizing upper and lower neighbors and the occasional absence of a note on the second eighth note of each beat; it continues for approximately twenty-eight measures, with different parts playing shorter segments of the melody. At Rehearsal 26, the music switches to an ascending chromatic line in the top three parts; the meter shifts to 4/4 at Rehearsal 27. Here, the main idea is an ascending tetrachord occurring via staggered entrances in trombones one through three; a harmonized half note, dotted quarter note, and eighth note in all four parts follow. In Rehearsal 29, the meter switches back to 12/8 time and features the second trombone. The rest of the parts enter four measures apart in the subsequent sixteen measures. At Rehearsal 33, the second and third trombones provide a motor rhythm in the subsequent measures, while the outer two parts play related moving lines on beats one and four. This configuration eventually gives way to a first trombone melody supported by the second trombone and a pulse provided by the bottom two parts. The meter switches back to 4/4 at Rehearsal 35, and double tonguing becomes necessary. In measures eighty-nine and ninety, the first trombonist has the most challenging line in the entire piece. The meter switches back to 12/8 at Rehearsal 36, and the piece concludes with staggered glissandi in the top three parts, a descending chromatic scale in the bass trombone, and a fortissimo G in octaves. Items to consider are multiple tonguing, style, and tempo/time.

Cinq Pièces a Quatre – Roger Boutry

Composer: Roger Boutry (1932–2019)

Born in 1932, Roger Boutry attended the Paris Conservatory, winning eight prizes while there, including the prestigious Prix de Rome (1954).³²¹ After completing his studies, he taught harmony at the Conservatory from 1962 to 1997 and was the musical director of the Garde Républicaine from 1973 to 1997.³²² His style successfully melded various modern aesthetics and styles.³²³ Some of his other works for trombone include *Chorale Varie for Trombone and Piano* (1956), *Capriccio for Trombone and Piano* (1957), and *Concerto for Trombone and Piano* (1963). Boutry died in 2019.

Arranger: N/A

Title: *Cinq Pièces a Quatre* (Five Pieces for Quartet)

Movements: Five Movements

1. Introduction – Allegro Maestoso (half note equals 168 bpm)
2. Récitatif – Andante Maestoso (quarter note equals 60 bpm)/Allegretto Tranquillo (eighth note equals 168 bpm)
3. Divertissement – Allegro (quartet note equals 144 bpm)
4. Berceuse – Andante Tranquillo (dotted quarter note equals 56 bpm)
5. Final – Presto (dotted quarter note equals 116 bpm)

Included in the NYSSMA Solo & Ensemble Catalog.

Duration: 10:00

Publisher: Alphonse Leduc Editions Musicales (Paris, France)

³²¹ “Roger Boutry,” Composers, Wise Music Classical, accessed April 1, 2025, <https://www.wisemusicclassical.com/composer/4384/Roger-Boutry/>.

³²² Ibid.

³²³ Ibid.

Copyright Date: 1961

Copy Quality: Engraved

Availability: Available from numerous merchants; no digital download available

Difficulty: Virtuoso (5)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones[^]; bass trombone*

Overall Range: E2 – F5

Trombone 1: D#3 – F5

Trombone 2: G#2 – D5

Trombone 3: F2 – B4

Bass Trombone: E2 – G#4

Clefs: Trombone 1 (tenor, bass); Trombone 2 (tenor, bass); Trombone 3 (tenor, bass); Bass Trombone (tenor, bass)

Mutes: N/A

Dedication: N/A

Publisher Overview/Score Description: N/A

Technical Considerations: Glissando; Ornamentation; Range; Rhythm

Glissando – There are two types of glissandi in this work. The first is the cross-harmonic glissando, which entails at least one partial being crossed by the performer. This glissando type occurs in the second movement (measures forty-eight and fifty) and the fifth movement (penultimate measure) and typically includes an octave leap. The second is the traditional glissando, which occurs within the same partial. This glissando type occurs in measures twenty through twenty-three of the third movement. The first and second trombones will need to use sixth position to glissando from C4 to F4, the third

trombone must use sixth position to glissando from A3 to D4, and the fourth trombone must use sixth position to glissando from F3 to Bb3.

Ornamentation – There are two types of ornamentation in this work. The first is the grace note, which is essential to the second movement's character. It occurs in the first seven measures of the second, third, and fourth trombone parts. The second is the scoop, which is essential to the fifth movement's form. It is typically marked by the composer with the text "gliss," and it occurs in measures twenty-nine, thirty-two, thirty-four, and thirty-nine. Three of the four occurrences have no preceding note, so the recommendation is to keep the scoop relatively tight to ensure rhythmic accuracy and unified ensemble playing (all are homorhythmic); the one exception could be measure thirty-nine since it occurs within a duplet.

Range – This work has an extended range and high tessitura for all four parts, especially the first and second trombones. The first trombone has a D5 in most movements and two F5s in the second movement as part of a cross-harmonic glissando (these do not have an ossia). The second trombone ascends to D5 in movements two (cross-harmonic glissando) and three (melodic line).

Rhythm – This work contains extensive syncopation on the eighth and sixteenth note levels. One example of syncopation occurs in measures one through eleven of the first movement; this figure is the sixteenth-eighth-sixteenth dance rhythm. A second example of syncopation occurs in measures twenty-six through thirty-four of the fourth movement. This section, when in 6/8, places emphasis on tied notes that begin at beat one's conclusion and carry into beat two; when in 9/8, the tied notes begin at beat two's conclusion and carry over into beat three. In the fifth movement, a third example of

syncopation occurs in measures sixteen through twenty-two; this section features hemiola-like figures every other bar with two quarter notes beginning on the second eighth note of beat one and an eighth note tied over the bar line. This work also contains numerous levels of subdivision. While this may seem obvious, the difference is that they often occur adjacent to one another within a melodic line. A primary example of various subdivisions is the first trombone solo in measures one through seven of the second movement; the line consistently moves from triplets to sixteenth-note triplets, sixteenth notes to sixteenth-note triplets, or triplets to a quintuplet.

Piece Description:

This quartet by Roger Boutry (like many French trombone quartets and solos) is highly virtuosic, demanding technical and musical proficiency from the entire ensemble. The first movement, “Introduction,” is primarily homorhythmic (except for eighth notes instead of sixteenth notes) and in an ABA’ form. The opening “A” section lasts until Rehearsal 2 and begins with a D major seventh chord. Its musical character is lively and derives from syncopated sixteenth and eighth notes; the primary rhythm is a sixteenth-eighth-sixteenth figure because it occurs in ten of eleven measures. Due to its homorhythmic nature, all four parts remain within a defined tessitura. In three instances, the first trombone descends to B3 while ascending to C#5 and D5; the lower three parts follow a similar pattern. The “B” section begins at Rehearsal 2, differentiated by a dynamic change to piano, a refrain, and the lack of the sixteenth-eighth-sixteenth rhythm. In addition to these syncopated rhythms, subito dynamic changes are prevalent early in this work. The dynamic level is initially piano. After a brief crescendo to mezzo forte in the fourth measure of Rehearsal 2, a pianissimo dynamic lasts one count; the piano dynamic returns on the downbeat of Rehearsal 3. A crescendo then leads to a fortissimo dynamic at

Rehearsal 4. The refrain occurs in the first and third measures of Rehearsal 2 and the first measure of Rehearsal 3. It is characterized by inverted oscillating lines in all four parts; the first and second trombones descend a half and whole step, while the third and fourth trombones ascend a major third. The sixteenth-eighth-sixteenth note rhythm only occurs in the seventh measure of Rehearsal 3. The second “A” section begins at Rehearsal 4 with a slightly different version of the opening material; the sixteenth-eighth-sixteenth rhythm returns to prominence, but there are more dynamic instructions and phrase markings. The movement ends with an F# minor seventh chord that swells. Items to consider are dynamic contrast, extreme range, syncopation, and stylistic unification.

The second movement, “Récitatif,” is in ABA’ form and features a first trombone solo. It begins with a declamatory first trombone solo, resembling a spoken or sung recitative. This solo contains disjunct motion and various forms of subdivision (triplets, sixteenths, quintuplets, and sixteenth-note triplets); it is virtuosic due to its technical and musical demands. During the seven-measure solo, the lower three trombones provide interjections (eighth notes with a grace note). The texture becomes homorhythmic and written *accelerando* through the changing subdivision in measures eight and nine. Following an octave jump in all four parts, the ensemble moves from triplets to sixteenth notes to quintuplets to sixteenth-note triplets. The “B” section begins fourteen measures before Rehearsal 2. The tempo is twenty-four beats faster than the opening, and the texture is completely homorhythmic. The harmony initially sounds tonal before becoming more dissonant (non-functional), and the melodic content mixes stepwise motion with skips within a syncopated line. The phrase is restated at Rehearsal 2, but the material changes slightly. This section concludes with a *decrescendo* from *pianissimo*. At Rehearsal 3, the first trombone solo returns, as do the interjections in the lower three parts; this texture only lasts for

five measures before becoming homorhythmic again. At Rehearsal 4, the first trombone sustains a Db5 and two D5s as the second, third, and fourth trombones play the moving line. The movement has a pseudo-conclusion with an octave jump (trombone one ascends from F4 to F5; trombone two ascends from D4 to D5) and a fermata. This jump occurs again in the second measure of Rehearsal 5, and the rest of the movement contains descending lines and a decrescendo. The movement concludes with a D major seventh chord in second inversion. Items requiring performer attention are dynamic contrasts, grace-note ornamentation, melodic phrasing in the first trombone, and style.

The third movement, “Divertissement,” has a nebulous form that alternates between ensemble divisions and contrapuntal sections. It begins with a divided ensemble—the first and second trombones pair together, as do the third and fourth trombones. The two higher parts play a driving eighth-note line while the two lower parts provide accompaniment. This musical content lasts five measures before the ensemble shares the chromatic melody. At Rehearsal 3, the second and third trombones swap pairings (the first and third trombones have the melody). At Rehearsal 3, the lower three parts provide accompaniment (including two glissandi) underneath a first trombone solo. This solo contains stepwise motion, skips, and leaps, spanning from Eb3 to B4; it also includes two glissandi and mostly accented notes. At Rehearsal 4, the roles reverse as the first trombone provides a quasi-ostinato accompaniment, and the lower three parts have a legato melody. The second trombone leads this melody, which ascends to D5. At Rehearsal 5, the style changes to a marcato style and a homorhythmic texture. It is interrupted by a four-measure phrase where the composer relegates the third and fourth trombones to an accompanimental role; these ideas alternate until Rehearsal 7 and feature mostly chromatic lines. At Rehearsal 7, the third trombone has a prominent role in each of the 4/4 measures but has

accompaniment figures in the asymmetrical meters. Following a breath mark, the second trombone restates its legato melody from earlier in the movement (it ascends to D5 again). This texture lasts until Rehearsal 9, where material from earlier in the movement is restated. The third and fourth trombones provide the melodic content after Rehearsal 10 until the conclusion. Items to consider in this movement are articulative contrast, ensemble balance and blend, and extreme range in trombone two.

The fourth movement, “Berceuse,” follows an ABA form. It begins with another solo in the first trombone part that primarily includes stepwise motion within a D minor pentachord. Underneath that line, the lower three parts provide a delicate, tremulous accompaniment. At Rehearsal 1, the melody changes as the tempo increases and the second trombone joins; the third and fourth trombones continue with accompanimental figures. The opening melody returns at Rehearsal 2 and lasts until Rehearsal 3. Rehearsal 3 begins the “B” section. with a faster tempo due to the “Animato” marking; the texture also becomes homorhythmic. The main challenge of this section is matching style and maintaining rhythmic alignment because there are several fermatas; range and intonation also could pose a challenge. At Rehearsal 5, the music becomes more tranquil, and a ritardando leads to an A major triad fermata, the beat before Rehearsal 6. The second “A” section begins at Rehearsal 6, but it is only the first trombone solo and tremulous accompaniment. The movement ends on a Bb major seventh chord. Items to consider are balance and blend, intonation, and phrasing.

The fifth movement, “Final,” is the shortest of the five movements and has a refrain that provides structural unity. The movement begins with the refrain, a graceful dance characterized by syncopation. All parts primarily comprise stepwise motion; however, skips serve to highlight specific notes. At Rehearsal 2, the texture changes, featuring a sequence of hemiola-like figures.

The refrain occurs at Rehearsal 3 following a breath mark; it lasts six measures before the next new idea occurs. This section's central motif is a scoop in each part to a chord tone of an Eb major seventh chord. As the section progresses, the scoop changes to an Ab major seventh chord and returns to an Eb major seventh chord; this section concludes with a descending chromatic line that leads into the refrain at Rehearsal 5. The two differences in this iteration of the refrain are that the first trombone is absent until Rehearsal 6 and the lower parts all begin on lower pitches. The remaining fifteen measures are highly chromatic and lead to a final cross-harmonic glissando at a fortissimo dynamic ending in a fermata. The movement concludes with a fortississimo eighth note chord on a D major seventh chord in second inversion. Items to consider are glissandi, intonation, extreme range, and stylistic unity.

Trois Pieces pour Quatuor de Trombones – Eugene Bozza

Composer: Eugene Bozza (1905-1991)

Born in 1905, Eugene Bozza would become one of the most versatile composers of the twentieth century. At the Paris Conservatory, he won prizes for violin (1924), conducting (1930), composition (1934), and the Grand Prix de Rome.³²⁴ His music was never labeled with an “ism” like many composers; he also crafted each piece with the specific instruments’ idiom in mind.³²⁵ He was and remains the epitome of the twentieth-century French sound with other works for trombone including *Allegro et Finale for Bass Trombone and Piano*, *Ballade for Trombone and Piano*, *Ciaccona for Trombone and Piano*, *Hommage a Bach for Trombone and Piano*, *New Orleans for Bass Trombone and Piano*, and *Prelude et Allegro for Bass Trombone*. He died in 1991.

Arranger: N/A

Title: *Trois Pieces pour Quatuor de Trombones (Three Pieces for Trombone Quartet)*

Movements: Three Movements

1. Allegro (quarter note equals 120 bpm)
2. Moderato
3. Allegro Vivo (quarter note equals 144-152 bpm)

The UIL Database contains this work and requires a combination of either movements one and two or movements two and three.

Duration: 12:00

Publisher: Alphonse Leduc Editions Musicals owned by the Wise Music Group (Paris, France)

³²⁴ “Eugene Bozza,” Composers, Wise Music Classical, accessed January 30, 2025, <https://www.wisemusicclassical.com/composer/3404/Eug%C3%A8ne-Bozza/>.

³²⁵ “Biography,” Eugenebozza.com, last modified December 17, 2006, <https://www.eugenebozza.com/index.php>.

Copyright Date: 1964

Copy Quality: Engraved

Availability: Available from numerous merchants; no digital download available

Difficulty: Virtuoso (5)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones[^]; bass trombone

Overall Range: Bb1 – D5

Trombone 1: E2 – D5

Trombone 2: F2 – C5

Trombone 3: E2 – F#4

Bass Trombone: Bb1 – D4

Clefs: Trombone 1 (tenor, bass); Trombone 2 (tenor, bass); Trombone 3 (tenor, bass); Bass Trombone (bass)

Mutes: Straight Mute (All four parts in movement 2)

Dedication: N/A

Publisher Overview/ Score Description: N/A

Technical Considerations: Ensemble; Glissando; Multiple Tonguing; Ornamentation; Range

Ensemble Playing – Each ensemble member must be confident with their line without relying upon the parts of other ensemble members, especially during the contrapuntal sections of the first movement. Contrastingly, they must also focus on clarity and rhythmic unity during the homorhythmic sections (which tend to appear with little preparation or setup). Finally, the ensemble must avoid playing anything too heavy or loud; otherwise, the piece will bog down.

Glissando – This technique occurs in the third movement in the fifth, sixth, seventh, and eighth measures of rehearsal nine. It begins with the first trombone and cascades down the ensemble, concluding with the bass trombone. The second and third trombones play two different ones. Most glissandi require seventh position, and the bass trombone must cross a partial.

Multiple Tonguing – Due to the plethora of sixteenth-note lines throughout this eleven-minute work, multiple tonguing could be necessary for some players but not others. A specific moment would be from Rehearsal 6 to Rehearsal 10 of movement three, which will the use of alternate positions via a combination of sixteenth and eighth notes.

Ornamentation – here is minimal ornamentation, but there is in the work's final four measures. The ensemble must play five grace notes. The first occurs on the downbeat of the second measure of rehearsal eleven in movement three. The subsequent ones appear on the upbeat of 2, 1 (next measure), and 2 (next measure). The fifth and final grace note occurs on the last note.

Range – This work requires an extended range for the first and second trombone parts. The first trombone rarely descends below C4 (see opening of the third movement), with notes such as B4, C5, C#4, and D5 being part of rapid sixteenth note passages in the first movement; also, many higher pitches occur with little preparation or an ascending line toward it. An example in the first trombone part is present in the second measure of rehearsal four (4) of the first movement. The second trombone, while not as consistently high as the first part, is also required by the composer to play B4 and C5 in rapid sixteenth notes patterns (see movement 1). In the second movement, the first trombone must play a D5 with the mute inserted into the bell.

Piece Description:

This virtuosic work for trombone quartet by Eugene Bozza, from the Paris Conservatory model, will challenge every ensemble member in multiple ways across all three movements. Movement one, “Allegro,” is a technical tour-de-force unmatched in brilliance, excitement, and spectacle when played correctly. Its form is ABA, with the “A” sections being highly contrapuntal and the “B” section being a slightly slower section centered around an alternating half-step motive. The opening line, which occurs in the first trombone and has transpositions in the second and third trombones later, is a mixture of scalar and angular components. These three parts are in dialogue until the bass trombone takes charge at rehearsal three. Shortly after, the first trombone restates the opening, giving way to a line in trombones two through four. This interplay between the parts makes the two-measure homorhythmic idea before rehearsal five stand out. As the *cedez* prepares the slower section, the bass trombone establishes the new tempo; contrastingly, the return of the faster section receives no preparation. The bass trombone must also establish the tempo here. This section borrows much of the established material but prioritizes the scalar passages. The quasi-fugue idea returns in the bass trombone at rehearsal eleven; the other parts follow in the subsequent measures. The dynamic and register both ascend across four measures. The movement ends with a ritardando on majestic chordal quarter notes that conclude on an A major triad. Items to consider are range, time, rhythm, technique, and ensemble communication.

Movement two, “Moderato,” is the longest of the three movements. The style shifts between three ideas: a twentieth-century French sound, a pseudo-Medieval sound, and various musical interruptions. It begins with the ensemble muted and a primarily chordal texture. At rehearsal one, the first trombone plays a melody that seems to be calling back to another time

(almost folk-like) and requires solid endurance from trombone one. At rehearsal two, the chordal texture reemerges with the ensemble outlining an A-diminished triad with different chords; the section eventually rests on an F# major triad on a fermata. At Rehearsal three, a new idea in the second and third trombones counters the melody in the first trombone. It is a composite line across both parts and is significantly more chromatic. The first interruption occurs several measures before Rehearsal four. The movement's first big moment, dynamically, occurs after a bass trombone line; Bozza marks this line "animando" or "animated." At Rehearsal five, there is a breath mark that the ensemble should observe so the third trombonist can insert their mute. The following section is the softest, requiring great breath control. The second interruption occurs at rehearsal seven. Rehearsal nine is a highly chromatic three-measure section, highlighting the ensemble's rich sound. Rehearsal ten is a fanfare that cascades down the ensemble in register and dynamics. The mutes return at rehearsal eleven, calling back to the opening, but the first part must ascend to D5; the movement ends on an A major triad. Items to consider are intonation (mutes), dynamic contrast, and ensemble communication.

The third movement, "Allegro Vivo," is the shortest movement that moves briskly and contains two ideas; the first is a tonal melody that dances, while the second is a frenzy of chromatic lines. The movement opens with three measures of accompaniment that initially sounds like it will be a "boom-chick" figure but quickly proves to be slightly less predictable. The melody is in the first trombone part and is essentially a solo. The initial leap of the line is a perfect fifth from F4 to C5, which quickly moves up to D5. The other parts become less accompaniment-oriented as the music progresses. The music quickly shifts a call and response between trombone three and trombone one. Bozza then poses the first and second trombones against the third and fourth trombones, utilizing a dissonant eighth-note figure, and the solo

changes to a quasi-overture theme after rehearsal four. The music changes character on a dime four measures before rehearsal six in the bass trombone line. The motive is a descending chromatic scale that requires multiple tonguing. It passes across the ensemble while the second trombone holds the tempo steady. Rehearsal eight continues this chromatic material, but there is more syncopation and homorhythmic scoring. Six measures before rehearsal ten, a cascading glissando passes through each part and perfectly sets up the return of the main melody in a small coda section. The final six measures feature some grace note glissandos across the ensemble. The piece ends on an F major triad; the first trombone can jump from C5 to F5.

Quatuor de Forme Liturgique pour Quatre Trombones – Jacques Charpentier

Composer: Jacques Charpentier (1933–2017)

Born in 1833, Jacques Charpentier was a student of Tony Aubin and a disciple of Olivier Messiaen at the Paris Conservatory.³²⁶ In the early 1950s, he traveled to India, specifically Bombay and Calcutta to study traditional Indian music; he stayed there for eighteen months, and the experience changed his perspective on music for the remainder of his career and life.³²⁷ His interest in music took on a spiritual character, much like Messiaen, who pointed him toward Catholicism, which spurred a goal of reconciliation between traditional Indian music with Western traditions.³²⁸ Later in his life, he worked as Chief Inspector and Director of Music, Lyric Art and Dance at the Ministry of Cultural Affairs.³²⁹ One of his most famous works is *Etudes Karnatiques*, which consists of seventy-two studies for the seventy-two scales or “ragas” comprising South Indian Carnatic traditions.³³⁰ He died in 2017.

Arranger: N/A

Title: *Quatuor de Forme Liturgique pour Quatre Trombones* (*Quartet in Liturgical Form for Four Trombones*)

Movements: Four Movements

1. Entrée – Très vif. Avec une grande joie (Very lively. With great joy)
2. Offertoire – Modéré
3. Communion – Très lent. Dans un grand sentiment de paix (Very slow. In a great feeling of peace)

³²⁶ “Jacques Charpentier,” Composers, Wise Music Classical, accessed March 3, 2025, <https://www.wisemusicclassical.com/composer/4393/Jacques-Charpentier/>.

³²⁷ Ibid.

³²⁸ Ibid.

³²⁹ Ibid.

³³⁰ Jed Distler, “Jacques Charpentier’s Études Karnatiques,” ClassicsToday.com, accessed March 4, 2025, <https://www.classicstoday.com/review/jacques-charpentiers-etudes-karnatiques/>.

4. Sortie – Très vif. Avec une grande joie (Very lively. With great joy)

Included in the NYSSMA Solo & Ensemble Catalog.

Duration: 11:00-12:00

Publisher: Alphonse Leduc Editions Musicales (Paris, France)

Copyright Date: 1960

Copy Quality: Engraved

Availability: Available from numerous merchants; no digital download available

Difficulty: Virtuoso (5)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones[^]; bass trombone

Overall Range: A#1 – C#5

Trombone 1: D3 – C#5

Trombone 2: A2 – B4

Trombone 3: E2 – G#4

Bass Trombone: A#1 – E4

Clefs: Trombone 1 (tenor, bass); Trombone 2 (bass); Trombone 3 (bass); Bass Trombone (bass)

Mutes: N/A

Dedication: Mr. Susan

Publisher Overview/Score Description:

Hickey's Music Center

“20th Century. French composer Jacques Charpentier. Movements entitled: Entrée;
Offertoire; Communion; Sortie. Score and Parts.”³³¹

Technical Considerations: Articulation; Intonation; Style

³³¹ “Charpentier, Jacques Quatuor de Forme Liturgique – Score and Parts,” Trombone Quartets, Hickeys Music, accessed March 4, 2025, <https://www.hickeys.com/search/products/sku021607.php>.

Articulation – Charpentier is concise when marking a note with an accent, tenuto, slur, or nothing for articulation; it is crucial in the first three movements and the fourth movement's "B" and should be a primary focus of the ensemble. The opening movement is a fanfare that places accents on all the eighth notes and tenuto markings on all the quarter notes. Charpentier does this to emphasize and exaggerate the quarter note's length, providing the line with depth. The middle section of this movement combines slurs with tenuto markings; the composer is not requesting space between slurred notes but rather that each note should have a little extra weight. The subsequent two movements utilize these same characteristics while adding tenuto lines. The ensemble should play these at full value but not slurred. In the fourth movement, the slur with tenuto returns in the "B" section, and the second "A" section contains the customary accented/tenuto pattern. The main difference is that it includes some accented quarter notes.

Intonation – Charpentier is concise when marking a note with an accent, tenuto, slur, or nothing for articulation; it is crucial in the first three movements and the fourth movement's "B" and should be a primary focus of the ensemble. The opening movement is a fanfare that places accents on all the eighth notes and tenuto markings on all the quarter notes. Charpentier does this to emphasize and exaggerate the quarter note's length, providing the line with depth. The middle section of this movement combines slurs with tenuto markings; the composer is not requesting space between slurred notes but rather that each note should have a little extra weight. The subsequent two movements utilize these same characteristics while adding tenuto lines. The ensemble should play these at full value but not slurred. In the fourth movement, the slur with

tenuto returns in the “B” section, and the second “A” section contains the customary accented/tenuto pattern. The main difference is that it includes some accented quarter notes.

Style – This item is paramount in the fourth movement because it is a celebration and dance (although an unconventional one). Even though the composer does not mark it, metrical emphasis is crucial to the execution of this movement; therefore, comprehending the subdivision is also necessary. Listening to traditional Catholic Church music, such as sections of the Mass Ordinary and Mass Proper, may enhance the ensemble’s understanding of the other three movements.

Piece Description:

This work by Jacques Charpentier combines liturgical forms with modern harmonies/motivic ideas and harks back to Gregorian Chant, containing no marked meters; however, the notated bar lines yield a mixture of simple, compound, and asymmetrical meters. The first movement, “Entrée,” has a unique sound that fits within an ABA form. It begins with a seven-measure solo for the first trombone that exclusively utilizes notes from the F# pentatonic scale. In measure eight, the first trombone has a sustained note as the conclusion of its solo, and the rest of the ensemble enters in harmony within a homorhythmic texture; the first five chords include three major triads, one minor triad, and one diminished triad. In measure nine, the third and fourth trombones shift to accompaniment, while the second trombone has a more chromatic melody. The melody returns to the first trombone in measure sixteen but in G pentatonic. This opening section concludes with a fermata over an E minor seventh chord. The “B” section is slower and more legato and begins with a two-measure melody in the first trombone. The rest of the ensemble enters in measure three, forming a D major triad. The ensemble restates this idea

for a shorter duration, landing on an E major triad. The rest of this section is homorhythmic and primarily contains stacked arpeggios; it concludes with a C major triad. The “A” section reappears in the next measure with the main melody in the second trombone part; this iteration is in C pentatonic. Seven measures before the movement’s conclusion, the melody returns in the first trombone while the bottom three parts provide bell-tone accompaniment via sforzando attacked sustained notes; it concludes with a D# dominant seventh chord in first inversion. Factors to consider are articulation, rhythm, and style.

The second movement, “Offertoire,” is a largely legato, song-like movement that relies on motivic repetition for cohesion, specifically three ideas. The movement begins with the first idea in the opening two measures. The bottom three parts establish a C major triad, while the first trombone has a predominantly quarter-note melody. Of the seven notes in this melody, the sixth and seventh ones provide the most interesting dissonance via the semitone. The sixth note, Eb4, clashes with the third, and the seventh note, C#4, clashes with the root; measures five through seven restate this idea. In measure nineteen, a transposition of the second measure occurs. In this instance, the harmony established in the previous measure is C# major, with the chord switching to a C# minor seventh. The first trombone plays a C4 and then an A#3 for the chord change to maintain the semitone’s importance. The second transposition happens in measure twenty-six, utilizing a harmony G, A, and C, and an Ab3 and F#3 in the first part to produce the dissonance. This semitone dissonance is the primary one for the last six measures, with the only difference being a C major triad for harmony. The second idea is a descending scalar that happens homorhythmically and relies upon repetition and motivic segments. Its first appearance is in measures three and four, outlining an E minor seventh chord that resolves to a second inversion D major triad. The second occurrence in measures eight and nine uses the same

pitch content but breaks into three segments and resolves to a B major triad. The third occurrence contains two transpositions. The first transposition in measure twenty-one occurs within a C# minor seventh chord, and the second transposition in measure twenty-three outlines an F minor seventh chord. The last two occurrences happen in measures twenty-five and twenty-eight, outlining an A minor seventh chord. The third idea is a syncopated line containing accented notes in measures eleven through eighteen and twenty-nine through thirty. Items to consider are articulation, ensemble playing, and intonation.

The third movement, “Communion,” is a homorhythmic chorale and is the work’s longest movement. It contains rich harmonies via diatonic and chromatic motion, and the first trombone part is its melodic progenitor. It begins with a motive containing skips and steps conducive to lyrical playing; sometimes, the second beat via a dotted note is the highest, while other iterations place the highest pitch on beat three. In measure nine, the music becomes less reliant upon skips and leaps and instead emphasizes stepwise motion through chromaticism. The first six measures of this chromatic idea ascend to G#4 in the first trombone before resetting on the downbeat of the next measure. The subsequent eight measures continue leaning into the established chromaticism emphasizing dynamic contrast. The movement’s climax occurs eight measures from the end on a C minor seventh chord in third inversion; the remainder of the work searches for a fulfilling resolution, which occurs on an E major triad. Items to consider are ensemble playing, dynamics, and intonation.

The fourth movement, “Sortie,” is the most technically demanding movement of the work, often having each part traverse through several registers throughout its ABA form. The first “A” section is a dance across multiple meters. It begins with a six-measure phrase that only lasts six measures. Its last measure contains a transitory bass trombone line underneath a whole

note in the top three parts. In the following six measures, the music resets and inverts the music's direction by ascending; everything else remains close to the same. This idea happens for a third time in measure thirteen, synthesizing both previous iterations to create a complete statement that cadences on an A major triad. The "B" section begins in measure twenty-one and is slower and legato. It is homorhythmic and contains an accidental on each note. Additionally, it utilizes a skip followed by a descending arpeggio in measure twenty-one as well as a leap followed by a descending arpeggio in measure twenty-three; the section concludes on an A# major triad. In measure twenty-seven, the second "A" section begins. It contains many of the same rhythms from the first "A" section; however, the parts interact more contrapuntally, often briefly lining up for several counts and then departing. This construction creates layers, allowing for hints of the eventual reappearance of the opening melody in measure fifty; after eight measures, it concludes on an A major triad. Items to consider are intonation, style, and tempo.

Trois Chansons – Claude Debussy/arr. Michael Levin

Composer: Claude Debussy (1862–1918)

Born in 1862, Claude Debussy “studied at the Paris Conservatory from 1872 to 1884 (He won the Prix de Rome in 1884).³³² As his career developed and he gained recognition as a major composer, his style shifted to a new sound deemed “impressionistic.”³³³ His style is lyrical and has an atmosphere created via the unconventional use of rhythm and color, with chords chosen for sound rather than function, the use of non-major/minor scale (pentatonic, whole-tone, modes), and unresolved seventh and ninth chords selected for sound more than function and subordinated to the melody.³³⁴ Some of his notable compositions include *Prelude to the Afternoon of a Faun* and *Pelleas et Melisande*; however, he left many of his works incomplete.³³⁵ He died in 1918.

Arranger: Michael Levin (n.d.)

Michael Levin is a trombonist who graduated with his B.M. from The Julliard School and held the Assistant Principal Trombonist Position in the Jerusalem Symphony Orchestra for three years.³³⁶ He founded the Dallas Brass in 1983 and played in it until 2015;³³⁷ he is now the ensemble’s Master of Ceremonies and Artistic Director.³³⁸ His most recent project is Harmony Bridge, which he designed to connect band students in the public schools with senior communities.³³⁹

Title: *Trois Chansons* (*Three Songs*)

Movements: Three Movements

³³² Poultney, 179.

³³³ Ibid, 179.

³³⁴ Ibid, 179.

³³⁵ Ibid, 179.

³³⁶ “Michael Levine,” Ensemble, Dallasbrass.com, last modified 2016, <https://www.dallasbrass.com/michael-levine>.

³³⁷ Ibid.

³³⁸ Ibid.

³³⁹ Ibid.

1. Dieu! qu'il la fait bon regarder! (Lord! Love hast thou made my dear!)
2. Quant j'ai ouy le tabourin (Whene'er the tambourine I hear)
3. Yver, vous n'estes qu'un villain (Cold Winter, villain that thou art)

Duration: 7:00

Publisher: Virgo Music Publishers (Birmingham, England)

Copyright Date: 1986

Copy Quality: Engraved

Availability: Available from numerous merchants; no digital download available

Difficulty: Virtuoso (5)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones^; bass trombone

Overall Range: B1 – D5

Trombone 1: D3 – D5

Trombone 2: A2 – B4

Trombone 3: F2 – Bb4

Bass Trombone: B1 – B3

Clefs: Trombone 1 (tenor); Trombone 2 (tenor); Trombone 3 (bass); Bass Trombone (bass)

Mutes: N/A

Dedication: N/A

Publisher Overview/Description(s) in Literature:

Hickey's Music Center

“20th Century. French title is as ‘Trois Chansons.’ Transcriptions of three secular songs originally for solo voice and piano. Titles are Dieu! qu'il la fait bon regarder!; Quant j'ai

ouy le tabourin; Yver, vous n'estes qu'un villain. An especially successful arrangement for trombone quartet.”³⁴⁰

Virgo Music Publishers

“Levin succeeds admirably in recreating the lush chordal patterns.”³⁴¹

Michael Levin

“Debussy’s *Trois Chansons* are based on poems by Charles D’Orleans. The following English Translation is by Nita Cox. The songs were originally written for acapella voices.”³⁴²

Technical Considerations: Ensemble Balance; Style; Tessitura

Ensemble Balance - In this work, establishing a clear distinction between the melody and the accompaniment is necessary and particularly relevant for the first movement. For example, the first trombone part plays the main theme four measures before Rehearsal B. Of the four lines, the melody is the simplest. It is also arguably the least engaging, as the second trombone has a sixteenth note line, and the third and fourth trombones have a descending scalar line. Also, the presence of the sixteenth-note triplet could overshadow the melody.

Style – Since these three movements are songs, performing with a singing quality is essential for much of this work. A lyrical, legato style is necessary for the entirety of the first and second movements as well as the middle section of the third movement. A combination of legato tonguing and natural slurs will elicit the most effective

³⁴⁰ “Debussy, Claude (Levin) Chansons (3),” Trombone Quartets, Hickeys Music, accessed March 5, 2025, https://www.hickeys.com/music/brass/trombone/trombone_ensembles/trombone_quartets/products/sku000183-debussy-claude-levin-chansons-3.php.

³⁴¹ “Trois Chansons (Claude Debussy / arr. Michael Levin) for Trombone Quartet,” Products, Virgo Music Publishers, last modified 2023, <https://www.virgomusicpublishers.com/shop/trois-chansons-claude-debussy-arr-michael-levin-vo08/>.

³⁴² Claude Debussy, *Three Songs*, arr. Micheal Levin (Birmingham, England: Virgo Music Publishers, 1986).

performance. That said, if a note has a staccato or accent marking, the ensemble should emphasize this for maximum contrast.

Tessitura – The amount of time spent in the upper register by the top three trombones is important to consider. In the second movement, the first trombone melody that happens multiple times never goes below E4 while simultaneously ascending to B4 several times; the part also holds a sustained D5 for six counts (two measures). The third trombone melody never descends below C4, ascends to Bb4, and generally remains around G4. In the third movement, the first trombone's line between Rehearsal C and D sits between F4 and B4.

Piece Description:

This work, originally by Claude Debussy and transcribed by Michael Levin, is a unique work within the repertoire as Debussy wrote very little for the trombone. The first movement, “Dieu! qu’il la fait bon regarder!” is the shortest of the three movements in this work and has a more flexible structure. It initially appears to be in E major; however, it soon reveals B Mixolydian as its key center. The most important motive for this song is the eighth note followed by three sixteenth-note triplets; it creates the impression of ornamentation and occurs thirty-five times. The melody, which subtly exists within the texture in this movement, often features note repetition and stepwise motion. Additionally, subdivision and the juxtaposition of its different levels are essential elements of this movement. For example, in measure seven, the third trombone has eighth notes on beats one and three and a triplet on beat two (the second eighth note on beat one is tied to the first triplet on beat two) while the bass trombone plays a dotted eighth note sixteenth rhythm on beats one and two. A second example occurs in measure twelve (Rehearsal A). Here, the second trombone has two sixteenth notes and an eighth, while the first

and third trombones have an eighth note followed by three sixteenth-note triplets. Items to consider are ensemble balance, intonation, and style.

The second movement, “Quant j’ai ouy le tabourin” has an archaic quality and antiquated sound within an ABA form. It begins with a four-measure introduction that establishes the accompaniment in the bottom three parts. It contains note repetition in the second and third trombones, while the bass trombone has a descending e minor scale. At Rehearsal A, the accompaniment in the second trombone moves between three notes, while the third and fourth trombones jump between octaves and perfect fifths. The melody in the first trombone begins three eighth notes before Rehearsal A; it only contains five different notes (E4, F#4, G4, A4, and B4), mixes eighth notes and quarter notes, and lasts for eight measures. At Rehearsal B, the bass trombone assumes the melody with a quarter-note line. The rest of the ensemble provides an eighth and two sixteenth note accompaniment; three measures before Rehearsal C, the bass trombone has a descending E major scale. Three eighth notes before Rehearsal C, the first trombone melody returns for four measures as the first “A” section concludes. At Rehearsal D, scalar and diatonic transitional material occurs, and the first trombone has a sustained D5. The “B” section, which features a key change and a slightly slower tempo, begins at Rehearsal E; the melody is in the third trombone and contains more skips and leaps than the first trombone melody of the “A” section. The accompaniment in the first and second trombones is a constant stream of diatonic slurred eighth notes; contrastingly, the bass trombone is more angular. The first trombone melody and original key signature return for the second “A” section, which begins at Rehearsal F. The movement ends shortly after on two perfect fifths two octaves away. Items to consider are style and tessitura.

The third movement, “Yver, vous n’êtes qu’un villain,” is the most technically challenging of all three songs in this piece. The opening “A” section is only ten measures long and features a descending line comprised of eighth and quarter notes in the first and third trombone parts. This texture transitions to a legato melody in the first trombone, reminiscent of the previous movement, that presides over a more active accompaniment. Eighth notes dominate the texture via the third and fourth trombones, and a full measure of quarter-note triplets stand out in the fourth measure before Rehearsal B. At Rehearsal B, the melody becomes more legato, and the texture becomes homorhythmic, almost a quasi-chorale. The harmonies are rich, lacking a clear tonal function, and the quarter-note triplet is integral to its construction. This section concludes with a ritardando. At Rehearsal, the opening material returns but does so in a contrapuntal, quasi-fugue manner that involves all four parts. The movement ends with an accelerando to a fortissimo A minor triad. Items to consider are articulation, ensemble playing, and style.

Quatre Pieces pour Quatour de Trombones – Jean-Michel Defaye

Composer: Jean-Michel Defaye (1932–2025)

Born on September 18, 1932, in Saint-Mande, France, Jean-Michel Defaye became one of the key French composers of the last eighty years. He enrolled in the Paris Conservatory in 1942 at age ten.³⁴³ While attending the conservatory, he studied piano, harmony, counterpoint, solfege, and composition³⁴⁴ with teachers such as Tony Aubin, Darius Milhaud, Jean Gallon, Noel Gallon, and Henri Challan.³⁴⁵ His accolades comprise first prize in harmony (1948), Premiere Medal in Counterpoint (1949), Second Prize in Composition (1950), Harvard Prize of the Lili Boulanger Foundation (1951), Premiere Second Grand Prize of Rome (1952), and Second Prize in Composition for the Belgian Queen Elizabeth Competition (1953).³⁴⁶ Some of his additional works trombone include *Deux Dances* (1953), *A La Maniere de Bach* (1990), *A La Maniere de Schumann* (2000), *A La Maniere de Debussy* (2001), *A La Maniere de Stravinsky* (2005), and *A La Maniere de Brahms* (2011). He died in 2025.

Arranger: N/A

Title: *Quatre Pieces pour Quatour de Trombones* (*Four Pieces for Trombone Quartet*)

Movements: Four Movements

1. Choral
2. Mouvement Perpétuel
3. Lento
4. Final

³⁴³ “Jean-Michel Defaye,” Composers, Wise Classical Music, accessed February 13, 2025, <https://www.wisemusicclassical.com/composer/4403/Jean-Michel-Defaye/>.

³⁴⁴ Sean Gerard Flannigan, “From Deux Danes to Fluctuations: Compositional Components and Innovations in Two Solo Trombone Works of Jean-Michel Defaye,” 3.

³⁴⁵ Dustin Kyle Mullins, “A Comparison of Rhythm, Articulation, And Harmony in Jean-Michel Defaye’s *A La Maniere de Stravinsky pour Trombone et Piano* to Common Compositional Strategies of Igor Stravinsky,” (DMA Dissertation, University of North Texas, 2014), 6.

³⁴⁶ Sean Flannigan, “From Deux Danes to Fluctuations,” 3.

The UIL Database contains this work and requires any two of the four movements

Duration: 9:00

Publisher: Alphonse Leduc owned by Wise Music Group (Paris, France)

Copyright Date: 1954

Copy Quality: Engraved

Availability: Available from numerous merchants; no digital download available

Difficulty: Virtuoso (5)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones[^]; bass trombone*

Overall Range: E2 – Eb5

Trombone 1: D3 – Eb5

Trombone 2: Bb2 – C#5

Trombone 3: A#2 – C#5

Bass Trombone: E2 – A4

Clefs: Trombone 1 (tenor); Trombone 2 (tenor, bass); Trombone 3 (tenor, bass); Bass Trombone (tenor, bass)

Mutes: Cup mute in all four parts marked as “Sourdine Bol” (Movement 1); Cup mute in parts two through four (Movement 3); Straight mute in movement 2 in all parts

Dedication: N/A

Publisher Overview/Score Description: N/A

Technical Considerations: Articulation; Intonation; Range and Endurance

Articulation - Articulation should be crisp, especially in the second movement, because the top three parts create composite scalar lines while the bass trombone player supplies the harmonic progression. It will be immediately apparent if the ensemble members are

not focusing on matching each other. Also, the tempo will decrease if note length is too long. For context, refer to the first sixteen measures of movement two.

Intonation - This composition contains dense harmonies in all four movements, which require the performers to listen carefully. The two slower movements (1 & 3) are where most areas of difficulty occur. For example, the first movement's opening phrases shift between consonant harmonies, such as the major triad, on the fermatas, and dissonant chords arising within the phrases. Another example occurs at the midpoint of the third movement at the climax; the first and second trombones are separated by major and minor seconds, as are the third and fourth trombones (down a perfect fourth).

Range and Endurance - The full ensemble must have an adequate high range to perform this work. The top three parts play at least C#5, with the first trombone ascending to Eb5 twice (movements three and four). Refer to the solo lines in the second and third trombone in movement three for their C#5s. An additional challenge associated with the range in this work is the time spent in the upper register. For example, the first trombone part in movement one only descends below C4 nine times. Another example occurs in all three top parts in movement three in solo lines that last a minimum of eight measures.

Piece Description:

Jean-Michel Defaye's trombone quartet is often considered one of the cornerstone works of the standard repertoire. The first movement, "Choral," is a slow, harmonically driven piece. The first four phrases comprise the first fifteen measures separated by fermatas. The first and third phrases are soft (marked at *pianissimo*), require vibrato, and utilize cup mute. The first phrase contains a texture in the traditional chorale style, where parts have independent moving lines. The first and second trombones have sixteenth notes, and the intervals are typically a

perfect fourth or a minor third, while the other two parts lay a harmonic foundation. The second phrase is a subito forte marked as sostenuto; the note length should remain long regardless of the dynamic level. Also, the section features more scalar ideas in contrary motion. The first and second trombones ascend while the third and fourth trombones descend. This alternation happens again, but the forte is less rhythmically unified. The movement's second half has a homorhythmic ensemble moment utilizing the "a" of beats two and four and a tied quarter note on beats one and three. The movement concludes with an A minor triad; aspects to consider are style, dynamics, and intonation.

The second movement, "Movement Perpetual," features a constant stream of sixteenth notes spread across the ensemble. It is marked "Sourd" or muted for all four parts, meaning straight mute is a requirement for its performance. The top three parts begin by creating three different pentachords compositely. The first one contains Bb, C, D, Eb, and F, the second contains B, C#, D#, E, and F#, and the third contains C, D, E, F, and G. This general pattern occurs often with variation happening. Measure twenty-seven is an example of the variation when the first trombone plays a new syncopated line. Later in the movement, the lines traded between these parts feature more chromaticism via the semitone and large interval leaps. The fourth trombone part plays the same pattern (two eighth notes, rest, and eighth notes) except for thirty measures throughout the movement. Its purpose is to provide a foundation for the other three parts and outline the harmonic progression that ascends or descends by semitone. Several items to consider in this movement include slide control, onsets, and intonation; the whole movement should sound like two trombones.

The third movement, "Lento," is the most song-like movement of this work. It begins with a solo line in the second trombone in the upper register. The first four notes alternate

between B4 and C#5 and are followed by a leap down to F#4. The line then primarily moves between E4, F#4, and G#4. The opening melody's final phrase combines the previous phrases' pitches, yielding a scalar melody that rests on C5. Then, the third trombone takes over the solo while remaining in the upper register. It begins on C5 on the upbeat of beat four and moves to C#5, primarily utilizing large leaps. The next idea is an ascending/descending line containing sharps and flats. After a syncopated line and steep decline, the solo rests on C4. While the solos are occurring, the bass trombone plays the bass line, and the first trombone plays a countermelody. The primary section for ensemble playing occurs after the first 3/4 measure and contains a homorhythmic passage in harmony that climaxes in the second 3/4 measure. The two chords of this climax contain close intervals for a dissonant sound. The top two parts play D5 and C#5, and the bottom two shift from G4 to G#4 and G#4 to A4. The lyricism of the beginning then returns, and the first trombone leads. This line is double the length of the second and third solos, featuring a combination of aspects from each. Also, the range expands to D#5/Eb5. The line eventually descends to B3, which prepares a short cadenza; the other three parts have a fermata for the cadenza. The movement ends on an F# major triad. Lyricism and phrasing are of the biggest concern.

The fourth movement contains the least accidentals and chromatic lines and the most full ensemble playing. It begins with the first and third trombones playing the melody in octaves; being a dance line, it features some syncopation that utilizes sixteenth notes and scalar lines (descending). On the anacrusis to measure nine, the bass trombone enters two octaves below the first part, the second trombone enters on an F3, and the third trombone switches up to D3 so the rhythmic line can occur in harmony. This idea is prevalent throughout the movement, but the dotted eighth sixteenth rhythm also plays a role. The movement concludes on an Eb major triad

with the first trombone playing Eb5. Items to consider for this movement are style, tempo, and articulation.

Quatuor pour Trombones – Pierre-Max Dubois

Composer: Pierre-Max Dubois (1930–1995)

Born in 1930, Pierre-Max Dubois studied at the Paris Conservatory with Darius Milhaud from 1949 to 1953, winning the Prix de Rome in 1955.³⁴⁷ His compositional style was lighthearted yet harmonically, melodically, and texturally unusual – much like his teacher (Milhaud).³⁴⁸

Additionally, he upheld the style and tradition of the Les Six, a group of French composers (Auric, Durey, Honegger, Milhaud, Poulenc, and Tailleferre) whose musical style emphasized dryness, brevity, and straightforwardness in response to the German composers of the late nineteenth and early twentieth centuries.³⁴⁹ While he primarily wrote for woodwinds, specifically the saxophone, he composed several works for the trombone; some of the more notable works are *Histoire de trombone*, *Cortège* (1959), *Concerto L'Irrespectueux* (1969), *Deux Marches*, and *Sonatine Impromptu*. He died in 1995.

Arranger: N/A

Title: *Quatuor pour Trombones* (Quartet for Trombones)

Movements: Four Trombones

1. Allegro be moderato
2. Vivo – Poco Andante – Vivo
3. Andante
4. Allegro Giocoso

The UIL Database contains this work and requires any two of the four movements.

³⁴⁷ Andrea Musk, “Dubois, Pierre Max,” in *Grove Music Online* (Oxford University Press, 2001–), accessed April 4, 2025, <https://www-oxfordmusiconline-com.ezproxy.lib.ou.edu/grovemusic/display/10.1093/gmo/9781561592630.001.0001/omo-9781561592630-e-0000008231?rskey=hV0rOI&result=1>.

³⁴⁸ “Pierre-Max Dubois,” Composers, Wise Music Classical, accessed April 4, 2025, <https://www.wisemusicclassical.com/composer/3648/Pierre-Max-Dubois/>.

³⁴⁹ Paul Griffiths, “Six, Les,” in *Grove Music Online* (Oxford University Press, 2001–), accessed April 4, 2025, <https://www-oxfordmusiconline-com.ezproxy.lib.ou.edu/grovemusic/display/10.1093/gmo/9781561592630.001.0001/omo-9781561592630-e-0000025911?rskey=qFCQib&result=1>.

Included in the NYSSMA Solo & Ensemble Catalog.

Duration: 10:30

Publisher: Alphonse Leduc Editions Musicales (Paris)

Copyright Date: 1962

Copy Quality: Engraved

Availability: Available from numerous merchants; no digital download available

Difficulty: Virtuoso (5)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones; bass trombone*

Overall Range: E2 – C#5

Trombone 1: A#3 – C#5

Trombone 2: F3 – Bb4

Trombone 3: C3 – E4

Bass Trombone: E2 – E4

Clefs: Trombone 1 (tenor); Trombone 2 (tenor); Trombone 3 (bass); Bass Trombone (bass)

Mutes: N/A

Dedication: N/A

Publisher Overview/Description(s) in Literature: N/A

Technical Considerations: Multiple Tonguing; Style

Multiple Tonguing – This skill is only pertinent to the second movement, specifically the “A” sections (Vivo). No extended runs or notes changing on every syllable are present. The tempo and two sixteenth notes (central to the main theme) are why this is relevant. Refer to measures one through nine and thirty-eight through forty-six for two examples.

Style – As with any piece, following the established style is critical. This concept applies to the first and third movements but is more pertinent to this work's second and fourth movements. The second movement is a quick dance in 2/4 that requires the ensemble to be nimble. A single part does not establish the style, but the ensemble establishes the style collectively. Playing too loud will result in the tempo slowing down and the movement losing its character. The fourth movement is a quasi-folk dance similar to something Darius Milhaud would have included in *Suite Francaise*. The first and second trombones establish this style in measure nine. It should be performed with a light, lively, and spirited character. Playing too heavily and loudly could compromise the clarity of the first trombone.

Piece Description:

This work by Pierre-Max Dubois is arguably the most famous trombone quartet to be produced by the Paris Conservatory model, demanding technical and musical proficiency from the ensemble. The first movement, “Allegro ben moderato,” begins by juxtaposing the higher three parts and the bass trombone for the first eleven measures. The bass trombone plays single eighth notes on the beats of each measure. Conversely, the top three parts have single eighth notes on each upbeat; the only exceptions are six three-note cells in measures two, four, six, seven, nine, and eleven. Also, the opening dynamic is piano, which switches to mezzo forte at Rehearsal 1. In measure thirteen, the bass trombone switches to sustained whole notes on G3, the first trombone is silent, and the second and third trombones play a staccato-eighth-note line. In measure fourteen, the line in the second and third trombones becomes legato and moves through D minor tetrachord; in measures fifteen and sixteen, the first trombone enters, creating a quartal/quintal harmonic texture and there is a crescendo. Three measures before Rehearsal 2, the

bass trombone has the first fully developed melodic line, which contains note repetition and upper/lower neighbors; the first trombone interrupts this idea one measure before Rehearsal 2 with a slightly different version of the staccato-eighth-note line. These two ideas alternate with a string of four quarter notes occurring simultaneously in measure twenty-five (octave between C4 and C5). The second and third trombones do not have any melodic material until after Rehearsal 3. After a *ritardando*, an “a tempo” two measures before Rehearsal 4 reestablishes the opening material; the only difference is that there is one three-note cell in the bass trombone. A measure before Rehearsal 5, the staccato-eighth-note and legato lines return in the second and third trombones. The next four measures are homorhythmic, except for the bass trombone; this leads to a division of the ensemble for the next four measures (trombones one and four against trombones two and three). The movement concludes with a C major triad. Items to consider are articulation, dynamics, style, and time.

The second movement, “Vivo – Poco Andante – Vivo,” is in an ABA form reminiscent of a Da Capo aria. It begins with a homorhythmic section that lasts twenty-one measures, much of which will require multiple tonguing. Within this section, the opening four measures repeat before leading to the subsequent material. In measures five through twelve, the first two measures (five, six, nine, and ten) have sixteenth notes, while the latter two measures (seven, eight, eleven, and twelve) have staccato eighth notes. In measure fourteen, the ensemble plays an accented pattern within an eighth-note line leading to the second part of the “A” section. In the fourth measure of Rehearsal 2, a lyrical melody begins amidst a division of the ensemble. The first and third trombones play the melodic line in harmony, while the second and fourth trombones play the harmony with distinct rhythms; the second trombone assumes a more prominent melodic role six measures before Rehearsal 4. Here, the opening style returns for eight

measures. At Rehearsal 5, the “Poco andante” section begins—this section’s chorale-like musical content features quarter-note lines in stepwise motion. There is limited triadic harmony and when it is present, it is not necessarily functional; however, an E major triad occurs at the end of this twelve-measure section that resolves to an A major triad on the downbeat of the second “A” section. The movement ends on an A major triad in second inversion. Items to consider are articulation, dynamics, multiple tonguing, and style.

The third movement, “Andante,” is a chorale in an ABA form. The opening “A” section is twelve measures long and contains a melody in the first trombone part and accompaniment in the lower three parts. The melody is primarily comprised of quarter notes in a descending motion with the occasional eighth-note segment. The first measure outlines a D major triad, and the second measure outlines a D major pentachord. The next two measures contain Eb, Ab, and Bb, among other notes, forming a pathway to the next two measures containing a C major pentachord. The second phrase begins in measure seven (three measures before Rehearsal 1), exactly like the opening two measures. The subsequent three measures form a quasi-sequence via the starting note. Measure nine begins on B4, measure ten begins on Bb4, and measure eleven begins on A4. Simultaneously, the second trombone has a countermelody primarily containing stepwise motion via upper and lower neighbors. The third and fourth trombones have half notes and provide the harmonic foundation. The section concludes with a D major triad. The “B” section is also twelve measures long and opens with the second and third trombones. The third trombone provides harmonic support; conversely, the second trombone has the melody first (patterns within a D major tetrachord) and initiates a chain of staggered entrances. The bass trombone enters two measures later (an F# major tetrachord), and the first trombone enters two measures before Rehearsal 2 (C major tetrachord). The first two measures of Rehearsal 2 feature

the only homorhythmic measures in the movement; the section then returns to the pairing of the second and third trombones. The “A” section returns three measures before Rehearsal 3, and it is identical to the first twelve measures. Additionally, there is a five-measure coda, which contains various chords on beats one and three. The penultimate chord is an A half-diminished seventh chord in third inversion that resolves to a B minor seventh chord in the first inversion. Dynamics, intonation, and phrasing are all critical for performance.

The fourth movement, “Allegro giocoso,” is a technically demanding dance in 6/8 time. It begins with a composite melody created through a chain of staggered entrances that occurs twice. The bass initiates both ascending lines, and the only difference is that the first trombone has two G4s and an A4 instead of two F4s and a G4. After this initial fanfare, the texture becomes homorhythmic for two measures, and the bass trombone provides the rhythmic pulse. In the measure before Rehearsal 1, the main melody, a quasi-folk dance, is introduced by the first and second trombones in harmony (typically a third). It features a mixture of ascending and descending lines in stepwise motion. The staggered entrances return four measures before Rehearsal 2, disrupting the melodic continuity and introducing diverse melodic fragments that occur until three measures before Rehearsal 3. The return of the melody lasts for only six measures before the staggered entrances and composite melody return, lasting for eight measures and concluding with a sighing motive. The following eleven measures are mostly homorhythmic, featuring a harmonic version of the sighing motive and a duple rhythm. Four measures before Rehearsal 6, the second trombone takes the melodic lead before passing it to the fourth trombone at Rehearsal 6 and to the third trombone two measures later. This interplay continues until the fermata two measures before Rehearsal 10. The next five measures create a chromatic scale from

B2 to C5 via all four parts across five measures. The movement and piece conclude with a C major triad. Items to consider are dynamics, rhythm, and style.

Myths and Legends – Eric Ewazen

Composer: Eric Ewazen (b. 1954)

Born in 1954, Eric Ewazen received his B.M. from the Eastman School of Music and M.M and D.M.A from The Julliard School.³⁵⁰ Some of his teachers include Milton Babbitt, Samuel Adler, Warren Benson, Joseph Schwanter, and Gunther Schuller.³⁵¹ He has been a faculty member at Julliard since 1980.³⁵² Many of his compositions have been commissioned and performed by soloists, chamber ensembles, and orchestras worldwide.³⁵³ He has written numerous works for both trombone ensemble and solo trombone. Some of his works for trombone ensemble include *Grand Canyon Octet* (2000), *Great Lakes Octet* (2003), and *Eaglehawk* (2012/2015). Some of his solo works for alto and tenor trombone are *Palmetto Suite for Alto Trombone and Piano* (2012) and *Sonata for Trombone and Piano* (1998); some bass trombone works are *Ballade for Bass Trombone and Piano* (1986), *Concertino for Bass Trombone and Piano* (1998), *Rhapsody for Bass Trombone and Piano* (1998), *Capriccio for Bass Trombone and Piano* (2000).

Arranger: N/A

Title: *Myths and Legends*

Movements: Four Movements

1. Allegro ritmico
2. Adagio
3. Allegro giocoso
4. Allegro Vivace

The UIL Database contains this work and requires one of the four movements

³⁵⁰ “About the Composer,” Ericewazen.com, accessed March 3, 2025, <https://www.ericewazen.com/about.php>.

³⁵¹ Ibid.

³⁵² Ibid.

³⁵³ Ibid.

Duration: 21:00

Publisher: International Trombone Association Manuscript Press (Austin, TX) owned by
Warwick Music (Warwickshire, England)

Copyright Date: 2001

Copy Quality: Engraved

Availability: Available from numerous merchants; a digital download is available from
Warwick Music

Difficulty: Virtuoso (5)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones[^]; bass trombone

Overall Range: G1 – D5 (optional F5)

Trombone 1: F#2 – D5 (optional F5)

Trombone 2: Eb2 – C5

Trombone 3: D2 – C5

Bass Trombone: G1 – E4

Clefs: Trombone 1 (tenor, bass); Trombone 2 (tenor, bass); Trombone 3 (tenor, bass); Bass
Trombone (bass)

Mutes: N/A

Dedication: Rittenhouse Trombone Quartet

Publisher Overview/Score Description:

Hickey's Music Center

“21st Century (2001). American composer. Written for the Curtis Institute Trombone Quartet (Rittenhouse Quartet) and performed by them on their 2001 tour. The work is in four movements and is not programmatic, despite the title. The first movement is by turns

dramatic, playful and heroic. The 2nd movement is in an A-B-A form, with a pastorale chorale framing an extremely contrapuntal section of weaving lines. The 3rd movement is in a rapid waltz tempo, with the gestures swirling, sometimes gracefully, but more boldly and energetically. The 4th movement feels like an Eastern European folk dance with its sense of momentum and accented syncopations. The movement culminates with a fugue on the main thematic material.”³⁵⁴

Warwick Music

“Myths and Legends is a trombone quartet in four movements. It was commissioned by the Rittenhouse Trombone Quartet, who were members of the Curtis Institute’s orchestral trombone section during the 2000-2001 season. They premiered the work on April 16, 2001, at Curtis. Players were Zachary Bond, Ryan Johnstone, David Rymbaugh, and Anthony Wise.”³⁵⁵

Technical Considerations: Flexibility; Glissando; Multiple Tonguing; Range

Flexibility – Many melodic and accompaniment lines in all four parts move through multiple registers. This feature is evident throughout the second and third movements. A primary example from the second movement is in measures seventy-nine to eighty-three, and a primary example from the third movement is in measures 158 to 176. Keeping the tone quality consistent throughout these lines is crucial to performing this work.

Glissando – The sole glissando in this piece occurs in the fourth movement in the bass trombone part. It moves from G2 to Bb2 in measures 105 and 106 and requires no alternate positions.

³⁵⁴ “Ewazen, Eric Myths & Legends,” Trombone Quartets, Hickeys.com, accessed March 3, 2025, <https://www.hickeys.com/search/products/sku038522.php>.

³⁵⁵ Eric Ewazen, “Eric Ewazen; Myths and Legends – Trombone Quartets,” ITA Press, Warwick Music, accessed March 3, 2025, <https://www.warwickmusic.com/p/ukse/>.

Multiple Tonguing – The sole occurrence of multiple tonguing occurs in the fourth movement in the first trombone part. Sixteenth-note triplets on Bb3, D4, and Eb4 in measures fifty-six and fifty-seven will require triple tonguing.

Range – This work challenges all four ensemble members with respect to range. The upper three parts all play a C5 or higher and can assume the primary melodic role. The second trombone plays C5 in measure 129 of movement three, and the third trombone plays C5 in measure twenty-six of movement one. Additionally, the first trombone has multiple D5s and an optional F5 at the end of the last two movements.

Piece Description:

This work by Eric Ewazen is a contemporary standard and distinctive because, unlike many of the works written for the trombone quartet, the melody is equally distributed among the ensemble. The first movement, “Allegro ritmico,” contains an energetic, syncopated line, a sweeping, lyrical melody, and percussive accompaniment that interweave throughout. It begins with a declamatory syncopated line in the first trombone and a coordinated ensemble onset on beat one; it features leaps from Bb3 to D4, Eb4, and F4 in successive motion. In measure two, the second and third trombone parts answer this syncopated line with a descending legato scale line in thirds. The third trombone assumes the melody in measure five, continuing in the style established by the first trombone. As the music and texture develop, the first and third trombones play a duet dialogically amidst percussive attacks from the second and bass trombones. The first occurrence of the legato line commences with the anacrusis to measure fourteen in the bass trombone. Skips are still present but are less critical because the line’s identity derives from its connectivity and more scalar disposition. The syncopated line returns in the first trombone in measure eighteen, lasting eight measures before the lyrical melody reappears in the third

trombone with the anacrusis to measure twenty-five. These two ideas continue to interact throughout the ensemble for an additional twenty measures until a new texture and style emerges in measure forty-six. In measure forty-six, the dynamic shifts to a subito piano following a significant crescendo. Coinciding with this dynamic change is a transformation into a homorhythmic texture. The music builds tension for the subsequent twenty measures through subtle dynamic and note changes that elicit complex harmonies. Measure sixty-four marks the point at which the dynamic level reaches fortissimo, preparing for the return of the syncopated melody in measure sixty-seven. Ewazen employs fragments of the established lines in all four parts, creating a mosaic-like effect until measure eighty-nine. The music returns to a softer dynamic and a homorhythmic texture while introducing a new syncopated motive for five measures; then, the fragmentation reappears. The rest of the movement mixes these motives, creating a sense of cohesion and closure. It concludes with a sforzando piano crescendo on an Eb major triad and a fanfare motive consisting of two sixteenth notes and an eighth note; key considerations are dynamics, range, style, and tessitura.

The second movement, “Adagio,” is the sole slower movement of this work and has an ABA form; the two “A” sections are chorales featuring primarily homorhythmic and homophonic textures, while the “B” section is more contrapuntal and virtuosic. The first “A” section begins with a chordal texture that moves seamlessly between triadic and non-triadic harmony for the first eight measures. In measure eight, the upper two trombone parts move in parallel thirds and, eventually, sixths. Conversely, the lower two parts have a composite ascending melody that resembles a hocket even though it is not. The first climax of this section occurs on the downbeat of measure fifteen, which a crescendo in measures twelve through fourteen leads to; it quickly dissipates through a decrescendo that occurs in measures fifteen

through eighteen. In measure nineteen, the “B” section begins with an accompanied bass trombone solo that contains syncopation (a connection to movement one, but less pronounced) and lasts four measures. The third trombone enters in measure twenty-three with the same melody an octave higher, suggesting a fugal texture; however, this texture is interrupted by tenuto ensemble chords on beats one and three of measures twenty-seven through twenty-nine. In measure thirty-three, a crescendo begins in the upper three parts; it arrives at a forte dynamic level following an angular sixteenth-note arpeggio in the first trombone. In measure thirty-five, the bass trombone has an arpeggiated accompaniment, reminiscent of Ewazen’s other works for trombone. The accompaniment lasts for four measures before changing and becoming less disjunct. In measure forty-two, the bass trombone initiates staggered entrances across the ensemble, leading to a legato line in the upper three parts and a sixteenth-note line in the bass trombone. The bass trombone line is syncopated and typically begins on the second sixteenth note of the beats on which it starts. This idea subsequently passes to the first trombone. In measure forty-seven, the ensemble divides into pairs. The third and fourth trombones play initially, and the first and second trombones follow. A crescendo follows, preparing the first trombone melody on the anacrusis to measure fifty-four. The primary rhythm for the next twenty-five measures is an eighth note followed by two sixteenth notes; it occurs in sequences, and syncopated rhythms (eighth-quarter-eighth) follow. This rhythm is part of a quasi-hocket texture at a subito piano dynamic level in measure seventy-five. It crescendos to measure seventy-nine, where the ensemble divides again within a composite cascading sixteenth note line. This section concludes with a sparser texture that focuses on triplets across the ensemble; the bass trombone has the final melodic statement before the “B” section concludes. The second “A” section begins with the anacrusis to measure ninety-nine. The style is similar to the beginning but

is not as chordal, contains some ornamentation, and features more material in the lower two parts. The first and second trombones play in thirds again within a melodic line; contrastingly, the third and bass trombones provide a motor rhythm that eventually shifts to the composite melody and syncopated accompaniment. This texture continues for the remaining fourteen measures. The movement concludes on an Ab major triad; elements requiring attention are dynamics, ensemble playing, and phrasing.

The third movement, “Allegro giocoso,” is a rapid dance-inspired movement composed of composite melodies created by the entire ensemble and held together by a motor-rhythm figure; its form is a quasi-ABA. It begins with a hocket-like texture that features all four parts. Measure nine marks the first instance the motor rhythm (an eighth note, quarter note, and eighth note that begins on the upbeat of beat one) does not dominate the texture; instead, a descending line in the second trombone occurs and passes to the third trombone in measure eleven. In measure fifteen, effectively a new section, the second trombone plays a drone pitch (D3) independently of any other part. In measure seventeen, the third trombone enters with the established motor rhythm. In measure twenty-five, the second trombone introduces a quarter-note melody within a dynamic swell; it passes to the first trombone in measure twenty-nine. In measure thirty-three, a motive reminiscent of an Arban interval exercise is distributed among the ensemble. Concurrently, the first and bass trombones play a line of dotted half notes. In measure fifty-three, the first trombone has an idea that may be considered the first complete melodic statement of the movement. It leads to a crescendo in measure fifty-nine and the first climax of the movement in measures sixty-three and sixty-four. The drone pitch returns in measures sixty-seven and sixty-eight; the only difference is that the pitches are Eb3 and Eb4. In measure sixty-nine, the ensemble divides into two pairs. The first and second trombones have a line that

alternates between the motor rhythm and an ascending quarter-note line; conversely, the third and fourth trombones primarily play on beats one and three in most measures. This division continues until measure eighty-seven, with the third and fourth trombones alternating accompaniment figures; the first and second trombones continue with the sole legato line. In measure eighty-seven, the pairings dissolve as the first, third, and bass trombones have a homorhythmic line; the second trombone plays a half-note idea independently. In measure ninety-one, the second and bass trombones switch roles. A caesura occurs in measure 104, following rich ensemble chords. In measure 105, the “A” returns as the music reverts. The main difference in the subsequent twenty measures is that the music is more contrapuntal, as all the parts have unique lines that interact. In measure 145, an ascending quarter-note line in the upper two parts initiates a style change where the half note becomes the primary rhythm. These half notes predominate, accompanied by intermittent descending eighth-note lines in all four parts, primarily the second and bass trombones. The harmonies created by these diverse chords are rich and dark. In measure 215, the motor rhythm returns for the first time in approximately fifty measures. The remaining thirty measures synthesize many of the ideas established throughout the movement. It concludes with a D major triad at a piano dynamic after two D5 pitches in the first trombone. Key considerations are intonation, style, and tempo.

The fourth movement, “Allegro vivace,” is shorter, spanning 119 measures. It begins with a divided ensemble. The first and second trombones have the melody (the second trombone is in harmony a third below), which contains primarily stepwise motion; conversely, the third and fourth trombones provide the harmony and pulse with eighth notes on the beat. This animated melody occurs until measure thirteen, where the lower two parts play four quarter notes that undergo a diminuendo. The next seven measures feature a composite line with two

configurations created by all four parts. The first configuration, which occurs five times, has the third and fourth trombones playing quarter notes on beats one through three and two eighth notes on beat four; the first and second trombones have two sixteenth notes on the upbeat of each beat. The other configuration, which occurs two times, reverses the roles. In measure twenty-five, the ensemble pairings from the beginning return; the third trombone joins the upper two parts in measure twenty-nine. In measure thirty-four, the third trombone introduces a distinct animated melody. It subsequently passes to the second trombone (measure thirty-six), followed by the first trombone (measure forty), and finally, the bass trombone (measure forty-three). Over the subsequent ten measures, various fragments from this line occur in all four parts to create a more contrapuntal texture. In measures fifty-six and fifty-seven, the first trombone has a mostly descending motive that requires triple tonguing. The following fifteen measures combine ensemble duos (trombones one and four against trombones two and three) with homorhythmic passages. In measure seventy-eight, the material from measure fourteen resurfaces. In measure ninety-one, the bass trombone initiates a chain of staggered entrances; each iteration lasts three measures and has no accompaniment. The third trombone enters second, the second trombone enters third, and the first trombone enters last. The chain continues in measure 103, but the order inverts with the first trombone initiating and the bass trombone entering last. In measure 106, the opening material returns following a glissando in the bass trombone. The movement and piece conclude with three F major triads, the last of which has an optional F5 in the first trombone. Elements requiring attention are balance and blend, multiple tonguing, rhythm, and style.

Quartet '74 for Trombones – Malcolm Forsyth

Composer: Malcolm Forsyth (1936–2011)

Born in 1936, Malcolm Forsyth received his bachelor's degree in trombone (1963), master's degree in conducting and composing (1966), and doctorate (1972) from Cape Town University in South Africa.³⁵⁶ As a performer, he played trombone in the Cape Town Symphony Orchestra for eight years and performed with the Edmonton Symphony for eleven years (three on bass; eight as principal) after immigrating to Canada in 1968.³⁵⁷ As an instructor, he taught theory, composition, conducting, trombone (for the first fourteen years), and conducted the university orchestra at the University of Alberta;³⁵⁸ he was also a composer-in-residence beginning in 1996.³⁵⁹ He gained significant recognition for his compositions of which there are over 140;³⁶⁰ he primarily wrote for orchestra and brass ensembles.³⁶¹ “His music is unique because it expressively blends the folk music from South African heritage with music from his adopted home in Canada.”³⁶² He won three JUNO awards for the category of “best classical composition” (*Atayoskewin Suite* won the first in 1987) and was the Canadian Composer of the Year in 1989.³⁶³ Another one of his trombone quartets is entitled *Quartet '61* (1961). He died in 2011.

Arranger: N/A

Title: *Quartet '74 for Trombones*

Movements: Three Movements

1. Risoluto, marcato ma leggero (quarter note equals 108 bpm)

³⁵⁶ “Malcolm Forsyth,” Composers, Listen & Watch, DSO Kids, Community & Education, Dallas Symphony Orchestra, accessed April 22, 2025, <https://www.dallassymphony.org/community-education/dso-kids/listen-watch/composers/malcolm-forsyth/>.

³⁵⁷ “Forsyth,” Cherry Classics, accessed April 22, 2025, <https://cherryclassics.com/pages/Forsyth>.

³⁵⁸ Cherry Classics, “Forsyth.”

³⁵⁹ “Malcolm (Dennis) Forsyth,” Featured Composers, CounterPoint Music Library Services, accessed April 22, 2025, https://cpmusiclibrary.ca/library_composer.php?cKey=FORMAL.

³⁶⁰ Cherry Classics, “Forsyth.”

³⁶¹ Dallas Symphony Orchestra, “Malcolm Forsyth.”

³⁶² Ibid.

³⁶³ Ibid.

2. Andante Ritmico (quartet note equals 88 bpm)
3. Andante (quarter note equals 80 bpm)/Allegro come una toccata (quarter note equals 144 bpm/ dotted quarter note equals 96 bpm)

Duration: 12:30

Publisher: Counterpoint Musical Services (Markham, ON, Canada)

Copyright Date: 1978/2004

Copy Quality: Engraved

Availability: Available from numerous merchants, but it is recommended that this piece be purchased from Cherry Classics Music; no digital download available

Difficulty: Virtuoso (5)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones^; bass trombone

Overall Range: F1 – D5

Trombone 1: F2 – D5

Trombone 2: F2 – Bb4

Trombone 3: E2 – G4

Bass Trombone: F1 – Eb4

Clefs: Trombone 1 (tenor, bass); Trombone 2 (tenor, bass); Trombone 3 (tenor, bass); Bass Trombone (bass)

Mutes: Straight Mute (Movement 1 – two measures before F to G; Movement 2 – two before G to the end)

Dedication: N/A

Publisher Overview/Score Description:

Malcolm Forsyth via J. Christopher Taylor:

“It is an attempt to represent the many colours and textures of the trombone in a slightly more extended work than is generally heard. The opening movement is the most complex, formally, having a solo central section employing mutes, sandwiched by the principal material, a free exposition of opposing themes exploiting extreme dynamic contrasts and a great variety of articulations. The second movement is a simple arioso in a G modality, using an ostinato accompaniment in 11/8 meter. The finale opens with a crescendo chord cluster before the toccata enters, this time in a totally unpredictable 11/8 meter. Two contrasting, though both witty, ideas juxtapose themselves to produce many unexpected climaxes and even more surprising anti-climaxes, such as the wry and unassuming end.”³⁶⁴

Technical Considerations: Glissando; Multiple Tonguing; Time

Glissando – This technique occurs exclusively in the third movement’s first and second trombone parts. There are two kinds of glissandi. The first is a cross-harmonic glissando (similar to a horn rip), which occurs in measures twenty-two and twenty-three. The first trombone must “glissando” from D4 to D5, and the second trombone must “glissando” from G3 to G4. Fourth position for G4 may be beneficial for the second trombone part. The other kind is a more traditional glissando in measures twenty-three and twenty-six; however, the glissando proceeds through four (m. 23) or five (m. 26) notated pitches. The composer expects these pitches to occur in time without articulation. In measure twenty-three, the first trombone glissandos from Bb4 to G4. Fourth position for G4 is required for precise execution. The second trombone glissandos from G4 to E4. Fifth position for E4 is required for precise execution. In measure twenty-six, the first trombone glissandos

³⁶⁴ CP Music Library, “Quartet ’74 for brass quartet by Malcolm Forsyth,” December 15, 2018, Musical Performance, 11:24, <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=b2gvX9STL6g>.

from F4 to D4. Fifth position for Db4 is required for precise execution. The second trombone glissandos from D4 to Bb3. Fifth position for Bb3 is required for precise execution.

Multiple Tonguing – This technique is likely required for performers in movements one and three. In movement one, thirty-second notes occur in measures eighteen, twenty-five, and ninety-two. In measure eighteen, they occur on the “e” of beat three in the first and second trombones; the notes played are B3 and F#4. In measure twenty-five, they occur on the “e” of beat one in the second, third, and bass trombones; the notes played are B3, E4, and F4. In measure ninety-two, they occur on the “e” of beat three in the first and second trombones; the notes played are A3 and E4. There are also sixteenth-note passages that may require multiple tonguing. In movement three, two figures will require multiple tonguing. The first is a sixteenth-note triplet figure occurring in measures eleven, eighteen, and eighty-seven. In measure eleven, the motive occurs in trombones one through three on the last eighth note of the measure; the notes played are D3, F3, and Bb3. In measure eighteen, the motive occurs in the upper three trombone parts; the notes played are C4, G3, and Ab3. In measure eighty-seven, the motive occurs in all four parts; the notes played are Db3, Bb3, Db4, and F4. The second is a motor rhythm (two sixteenths and an eighth) in the third and fourth trombones that occurs from the fifth measure of Rehearsal B to Rehearsal C and at Rehearsal F. Other figures may require multiple tonguing depending on the performer’s ability.

Time – This work uses traditional and less traditional asymmetrical meters. The traditional asymmetrical meters are 7/8 and 5/4 and occur in the first movement (there is one 5/4 measure in movement three). Measure twenty utilizes the 7/8 meter in a 2+2+3

configuration; the first trombone has the melody. Measure eighty-nine utilizes the 5/4 meter in an ambiguous 3+2 configuration; most of the ensemble has a descending sixteenth-note line. The less traditional meters occur in the second and third movements. The second movement contains a combination of 2/4 and 7/8 for each measure. The composer includes dashed lines to show the differences. In the 7/8 portions of each measure, the melodic lines and accompaniment configuration are typically 2+2+3, while the bass line in the bass trombone is in a 3+2+2 configuration. The third movement is in 11/8 time, which the composer separates into 5/8 and 6/8 sections via a dashed line. Sometimes, the 6/8 occurs first, and other times, it occurs second—the configuration of the 5/8 moves between 2+3 and 3+2 configurations. Keeping the eighth notes consistent in this movement is essential for effective execution.

Piece Description:

This quartet by Malcolm Forsyth is an ambitious work that presents challenges for all levels of performers due to its dense harmony and technical lines. The first movement, “Risoluto, marcato ma leggero,” has an ABA form and proceeds at a moderate tempo, with many lines occurring at the sixteenth-note subdivision level. It begins with a primarily homorhythmic texture. The few variations occur in measures three, five, nine, and ten. Typically, two parts have eighth or quarter notes, and the others have sixteenth or eighth notes. Measure three contains the most notable deviation, as trombones one and three have a syncopated line rather than four eighth notes (trombones two and four). The composer intricately layers eighth and sixteenth notes to create dissonant harmony. Repeated notes are common, as are ascending and descending chromatic lines. Two measures before Rehearsal A, the second trombone initiates a sequence of staggered entrances. The first trombone enters next, followed by the third and bass trombones;

each subsequent line is shorter and somewhat less lyrical. In the third measure of Rehearsal A, the dynamic is subito forte; the second trombone plays on the downbeat, and the other three parts begin a unison sixteenth-note line on the upbeat of one on Eb4. A measure before Rehearsal B, the first thirty-second figure occurs in the first and second trombone parts. The dynamic is pianissimo at Rehearsal B, and the style becomes more legato. The inner two parts play syncopated accompaniment figures, while the outer two voices play legato eighth notes consisting of stepwise motion and skips. Rehearsal C features the return of a fortissimo dynamic level, the thirty-second note motive, and the sixteenth-note lines. Rehearsal D contains more independent parts within a homophonic texture. This section climaxes four measures before Rehearsal F. The “B” section is slower and utilizes straight mutes; it begins with staggered entrances initiated by the bass trombone. Four measures later, the third and fourth trombones play dialogical material denoted by the “Tempo 1” marking. Rehearsal G continues at a slower tempo with homorhythmic chords that swell in all four parts. They are eight dotted quarter notes on beats one and three or a quarter note tied to an eighth on beat two and a quarter note tied to an eighth on beat four. The first trombone has the melodic eighth-note line before passing it to the bass trombone at Rehearsal H. The second “A” section begins at Rehearsal K following an accelerando. The material is mostly the same, with the most notable change being an increase in part independence. At Rehearsal L, the upper three parts have a descending chromatic scale, and three measures later, the thirty-second note motive returns for the final time. The movement concludes with forte and fortissimo chords across the ensemble that lead to a D augmented major seventh chord. Elements requiring attention include dynamics, note accuracy, phrasing, and technique.

The second movement, “Andante ritmico,” exhibits an arabesque quality without the prevalence of ornamentation. Its metric structure throughout is 2/4 plus 7/8 (separated by a dashed line), and it begins with the bass trombone on the downbeat and the inner two parts on the upbeat of beat one. The second and third trombones play the same rhythm with limited pitch variation until three measures before Rehearsal B; the bass trombone plays the same rhythm but alternates between two patterns (G₂–G₂–D₂–G₂; F₂–C₂–F₂–F₂) until Rehearsal A. The first trombone enters on beat three in measure four. The melody consists mostly of stepwise motion and centers on D₄, E_{b4}, and F₄. At Rehearsal A, the first trombone joins the second and third trombones, which have melodic lines in the second (trombone two) and third (trombone three) measures. Following an ensemble-wide crescendo, Rehearsal B begins with octave leaps in the bass trombone. This new bass line creates a distinct texture. The second and third trombones serve as the principal melodic voices in this section, containing eighth-note lines; the third trombone is a third higher than the second. At Rehearsal C, the second trombone continues in a supporting role, and the first trombone assumes responsibility for the melody over a sustained D₂ in the bass trombone. At Rehearsal D, the upper three parts provide accompaniment, and the bass trombone has the melody beginning on beat three of the fourth measure. At Rehearsal E, the bass trombone initiates a sequence of staggered entrances at a fortissimo dynamic. The bass trombone has the octave leaps within a melodic figure (sometimes spanning two octaves), and the upper three parts have lines moving in contrary motion. Typically, the second trombone moves less than the first and third trombones, which move in opposite directions. All these unique lines produce a rich musical texture that lasts until two measures before Rehearsal G. The opening returns; however, the musical content is subtly altered, and mutes are required. The

movement concludes with a G major triad. Elements requiring attention are articulation, balance and blend, intonation, and phrasing.

The third movement, “Andante – Allegro come una toccata,” begins with four measures of cluster chords created by staggered entrances. The duration between these entrances becomes progressively shorter as the measures progress. In measure five, the new tempo begins within a new meter (11/8) and a homorhythmic texture in the upper three trombones; the bass trombone enters at the end of the first measure with a C3. In measure three, the first trombone becomes the primary melodic voice. The composer places an asterisk in the middle of measure three. Forsyth stated, “Square brackets are used to denote a grouping of notes in one beat, where it might not otherwise be clear, and in no way imply a slur.”³⁶⁵ From here, each part has a minimum of two counts of rest. The measure before Rehearsal A, a motive requiring triple tonguing, occurs in the upper three notes; it is a sixteenth-note triplet that produces a Bb major triad. Quarter and sixteenth notes are incorporated into the texture by Forsyth at Rehearsal A, which co-occurs with a decrescendo into the section’s third measure. The triple tonguing motive returns four measures before Rehearsal B, producing an Ab major seventh chord (minus the fifth). At Rehearsal B, the continuous eighth notes stop, and a cross-harmonic glissando occurs in the first and second trombones; this leap initiates a descending glissando across four pitches (Bb4–A4–Ab4–G4 in trombone one and G4–Gb4–F4–E4 in trombone two) in the next measure that the composer marks with an asterisk. Forsyth’s commentary reads, “A succession of 3 or 4 quick glissandi, rhythmically emphasizing the written pitches, but without tonguing.”³⁶⁶ This idea occurs again three measures in the same trombone parts, except it is five notes instead of four. The first trombone glissandos from F4 to Db4 and the second trombone glissandos from D4 to Bb3. These

³⁶⁵ Malcolm Forsyth, *Quartet '74 for Trombones* (Counterpoint Musical Services, 2004), 10.

³⁶⁶ Ibid, 11.

two parts then trade melodic phrases, while the lower two parts provide a galloping accompaniment. Two measures before Rehearsal C, the first trombone becomes the primary melodic voice, playing a melody embedded with a sequential figure; it is mostly in stepwise motion, but the sequence consists of perfect fourth skips. At Rehearsal C, the bass trombone has a quarter-note line that develops into eighth notes. The meter switches to 6/4, but the eighth note remains the same eight measures before Rehearsal D. The meter transitions to 4/4 and 5/4 in this eight-measure phrase. At Rehearsal D, the 11/8 and eighth notes return; however, there are fewer notes on the beat, and the first trombone rests after the initial three measures. A bass trombone melody assumes prominence in the sixth measure and lasts until Rehearsal E, which is at a forte dynamic prepared by an ascending chromatic line in the upper two trombones. Over the following ten measures, the texture transitions from homophonic to pointillistic, with the motor rhythm returning at Rehearsal F. Here, the upper two parts trade melodic lines for three measures before the first trombone assumes full melodic responsibility through a highly chromatic line. This line transitions to a sustained pitch, and the three lower parts assume melodic responsibility. The first trombone does not reenter until the fourth measure of Rehearsal G. The final phrase includes staggered entrances leading to a chord containing Db2, G3, F4, and B4. The triple tonguing motive occurs in the penultimate measure, outlining a Bb minor triad, and the work and movement conclude with a unison F. Elements requiring attention are glissandi, multiple tonguing, note accuracy, and time.

Trombone Quartet – Arthur Frackenpohl

Composer: Arthur Frackenpohl (1924–2019)

Born in 1924, Arthur Frackenpohl received his bachelor's and master's degrees from the Eastman School of Music and his doctorate from McGill University (1957).³⁶⁷ He also studied composition with Darius Milhaud at Tanglewood (1948) and Nadia Boulanger at Fontainebleau (1950).³⁶⁸ In 1949, he joined the Crane School of Music faculty at the University of New York at Potsdam, becoming a full professor in 1961;³⁶⁹ he would work there as an instructor until his retirement in 1985.³⁷⁰ Throughout his career, he wrote a textbook entitled *Harmonization at the Piano* (1962) and over four hundred compositions.³⁷¹ Other notable works for trombone include *Pastorale* (1957) and *Variations on a March by Shostakovich* (1979). He died in 2019.

Arranger: N/A

Title: *Trombone Quartet*

Movements: Four Movements

1. March – Fast (dotted quarter note equals 120 bpm)
2. Waltz – Moderately Fast (quarter note equals 120 bpm)
3. Chorale – Slowly (quarter note equals 52 bpm)
4. Rondo/Finale – Very Fast (half note equals 96 bpm)

Included in the NYSSMA Solo & Ensemble Catalog.

Duration: 8:00

Publisher: Ensemble Publications (Ithaca, NY)

³⁶⁷ “Art Frackenpohl, Renowned Composer and Professor Emeritus at SUNY Potsdam’s Crane School of Music, Passed Away,” News, State University of New York Potsdam, last modified June 17, 2019, <https://www.potsdam.edu/news/suny-potsdam-community-mourns-passing-crane-professor-emeritus-arthur-frackenpohl>.

³⁶⁸ Ibid.

³⁶⁹ Ibid.

³⁷⁰ Ibid.

³⁷¹ Ibid.

Copyright Date: 1968

Copy Quality: Engraved

Availability: Available from numerous merchants; no digital download available

Difficulty: Virtuoso (5)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones; bass trombone

Overall Range: G1 – C5

Trombone 1: Bb2 – C5

Trombone 2: F2 – Bb4

Trombone 3: Bb1 – F4

Bass Trombone: G1 – D4

Clefs: Trombone 1 (tenor, bass); Trombone 2 (bass); Trombone 3 (bass); Bass Trombone (bass)

Mutes: N/A

Dedication: N/A

Publisher Overview/Score Description:

Ensemble Publications

“20th century. One of the earliest works written specifically for the modern trombone quartet. Idiomatic, yet challenging, this work has been a popular recital work with audiences and performers alike since its publication in the 1960s.”³⁷²

Technical Considerations: Glissando; Note Accuracy

Glissando – The glissando is integral to this work, specifically the first, second, and fourth movements; Frackenpohl specifies the position number above the notated pitch. In movement one, the glissandi occur in measures seventeen, twenty-five, seventy-one,

³⁷² “Trombone Quartet,” Trombone Quartets, Ensemble Publications, accessed April 6, 2025, <http://www.enspub.com/pages/04/04330.htm>.

seventy-two, and seventy-nine. Certain glissandi require alternate positions. In measure seventeen, the third trombone must use fifth position to glissando from Bb3 to C4. In measure twenty-five, the first trombone must use fourth position to glissando from F#4 to F4. In measure seventy-one, the first trombone must use fifth position to glissando from Bb3 to C4, and the third trombone must use sixth position to glissando from A3 to B3. In measure seventy-nine, the first trombone must use fourth position to glissando from F#4 to F4. In movement two, glissandi occur in measures sixteen, seventeen, fifty-seven, and fifty-eight. In measures sixteen and seventeen, the first trombone must use sixth position to glissando from F3 to C4, the second trombone must use fourth position to glissando from D4 to F4, and the third trombone must use sixth position to glissando from F3 to A3. Measures fifty-seven and fifty-eight are identical, except the second trombone must employ fourth position to glissando from D4 to E4. In the fourth movement, glissandi occur in measures twelve, forty-eight, eighty-three, eighty-four, and ninety-three; none require alternate positions.

Note Accuracy – While this aspect is crucial for the performance of any work, it could present a significant challenge in this quartet (specifically movements two and four).

There are numerous lengthy eighth-note passages in these movements, and exact slide placement for each note is crucial for an accurate performance. An example from movement two occurs in measures one through eight. An example from movement four would be the refrain or “A” section. Slow practice and dividing lines into smaller segments will be essential for the ensemble.

Piece Description:

This quartet by Arthur Frackenpohl is a standard of the repertoire that was revolutionary for its time. The first movement, "March," is technically demanding and lively and begins with the fanfare. The opening two measures have the ensemble in unison or octaves before switching to harmony in measure three. The subsequent eleven measures (to measure fourteen) retain the homorhythmic texture, mixing traditional 6/8 rhythms with syncopated and hemiola rhythms. In measure fifteen, the first trombone plays the first melody, and the lower three parts have traditional accompaniment figures and a glissando. The melody combines stepwise motion, skips, and leaps to create a compelling theme; however, it only lasts six measures before the second trombone enters in measure twenty-one, initiating a stream of staggered entrances. In measure twenty-three, the bass trombone becomes the primary melodic voice, playing the same melody as the first trombone but transposed to a minor seventh lower. An arpeggiated accompaniment line outlining a Bb major triad begins in the first trombone in measure twenty-eight. In measure thirty, this idea passes to the second trombone; the only difference is a transposition to an F major triad. While these musical elements unfold, the third trombone introduces a new legato melody. Except for a minor seventh leap in measure thirty-four, this theme is primarily stepwise and diatonic. On the anacrusis to measure thirty-five, the second trombone plays this melody; in measure thirty-six, the third trombone switches to the arpeggiated accompaniment (an Ab minor triad). In measure forty-two, a new section that is more fugal and reminiscent of the opening melody begins. The bass trombone begins, the second trombone enters three measures later, the third trombone enters four measures later, and the first trombone enters last (three measures after the third). The opening fanfare returns in measure fifty-six, continuing up to measure seventy. The following thirty measures combine all the previous melodic and accompaniment material into a cohesive conclusion; consequently, each part has an

opportunity to be the primary melodic voice. In a slightly different form, the fanfare returns in measures ninety-nine, and the movement concludes with two eighth-note perfect fifths between Bb and F across multiple octaves. Items to consider are glissandi, rhythm, and style.

The second movement, “Waltz,” exhibits a lively character and prioritizes the first and second trombones as the melodic voices. It begins with an anacrusis to beat one in the first trombone, which has the melody. This melody contains primarily eighth notes in stepwise motion but still spans a major ninth and is eight measures long. During this opening phrase, the lower three parts provide traditional waltz accompaniment patterns. In measures nine through eleven, the second and third trombones have a countermelody section that interrupts the central theme; this change in texture leads to a division of the ensemble into pairs as the first trombone pairs with the fourth. On the anacrusis to measure seventeen, the second trombone becomes the primary melodic voice; however, this moment is short-lived because the first trombone regains its melodic prominence in measure twenty. In measure twenty-four, the style switches to a lyrical legato character in all four parts. Additionally, the ensemble divides into pairs again; however, the second trombone joins the first, and the third trombone joins the fourth. This juxtaposition continues until measure forty-five (waltz returns in measure forty). The pattern from the beginning returns as the second/third trombone interruption follows the first trombone melody in measure fifty and precedes the second trombone melody (anacrusis to measure fifty-eight). In measures sixty-two and sixty-three, staggered entrances across the ensemble create a descending line; a final restatement of the melody in the first trombone brings the ensemble to an accented eighth-note line in the penultimate measure. The movement concludes with an Ab major triad. Items to consider are articulation, note accuracy, and style.

The third movement, “Chorale,” is the sole slow movement of this work. The chords that sound throughout this work are generally tonal but in a post-triadic sense rather than common-practice period functionality. It begins with a melody in the first trombone that combines several leaps with stepwise motion; the lower three trombones contribute accompaniment through moving countermelodies and a harmonic foundation. In measure five, four accented dissonant chords interrupt the established legato style. In measure six, the legato style returns as transitional material that connects to the previous phrase. In measures nine through twelve, the musical focus is a dialogical duet between the first and third trombones; each part answers the other with an identical rhythmic figure (that contains different pitch content). A composite, scalar rhythm begins in the bass trombone in measure thirteen. The third trombone enters second, the second trombone enters third, and the first trombone enters last. Each segment of this melody is a pentachord that begins on the previous pentachord’s final pitch. In measure fifteen, the line resets and begins again. In measure seventeen, the higher three parts continue in the legato style while the bass trombone introduces a staccato eighth note line that dominates the texture in the subsequent four measures. A fanfare of staggered entrances interrupts the staccato eighth notes in measure twenty-one, leading to rich sonorities (though not triadic). The following four measures juxtapose the first and second trombones against the third and fourth trombones. The final five measures feature more independent lines and a conclusion on an F major triad. Items to consider are articulation, intonation, and phrasing.

The fourth movement, “Rondo or Finale,” is the most technically demanding movement of the work and has a form of ABACA. It begins with a staggered entrance initiated by the bass trombone that encompasses one measure. The “A” sections that occur are typically around twenty measures long and begin after a 1/2 measure. The first segment of each “A” section

contains a rapid succession of eighth notes, which resemble sixteenth notes rhythmically due to the time signature being in cut time. Except for several measures containing staggered entrances, the texture is homorhythmic during the first phase. The second segment of the “A” section features a pulse-supplying motor rhythm in the third and fourth trombones; conversely, the first and second trombones have a pointillistic line in harmony. The third segment of the “A” section keeps the ensemble division from the previous segment; however, it integrates the lower trombone melodically as a counter to the pointillistic. The “B” section begins in measure twenty, featuring a primarily legato style. It is initially homorhythmic before different parts begin deviating with quarter notes and quarter-note triplets. In measure thirty, accents replace slurs, and the texture becomes homorhythmic again. This section lasts fifteen measures, and the second trombone is the primary melodic voice during it. The “C” section begins in measure fifty-eight and is also in a legato style. Unlike the “B” section, the first ten measures are homorhythmic. Also, the last nine measures of the section serve as transition material to the final refrain. The movement and piece conclude with a resolute Bb major triad. Items to consider are articulation, glissandi, note accuracy, phrasing, and rhythm.

Suite for Four Trombones – David Gow

Composer: David Gow (1924–1993)

Born in 1924, David Gow studied at the Royal College of Music.³⁷³ While there, he won the Cobbett Prize and Alfred J. Clements Prize;³⁷⁴ later, he earned his B.M. and M.M. from Durham University.³⁷⁵ In 1970, he moved to Wiltshire upon accepting an appointment as a Lecturer in Music at Swindon College (he would remain there until his retirement in 1986). He described his music as “serialism tempered by tonality.”³⁷⁶ He died in 1993.

Arranger: N/A

Title: *Suite for Four Trombones*

Movements: Five Movements

1. Prelude – Moderato deciso
2. Slow Dance – Adagio Sostenuto
3. Scherzo – Allegro vivo
4. Valse Triste - Adagio
5. Fugue – Andante risoluto

The UIL Database contains this work but does not provide any movement specifications.

Duration: 8:00

Publisher: Musica Rara (London, England)

Copyright Date: 1967

Copy Quality: Engraved

³⁷³ “David Gow,” Composers, British Music Collection, accessed March 8, 2025, <https://britishmusiccollection.org.uk/composer/david-gow>.

³⁷⁴ Ibid.

³⁷⁵ Ibid.

³⁷⁶ Ibid.

Availability: Out of print; available via ILL

Difficulty: Virtuoso (5)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones[^]; bass trombone

Overall Range: Bb1 – Db5

Trombone 1: Bb1 – Db5

Trombone 2: G#2 – A4

Trombone 3: E2 – F#4

Bass Trombone: C#2 – E4

Clefs: Trombone 1 (tenor, bass); Trombone 2 (tenor, bass); Trombone 3 (tenor, bass); Bass Trombone (bass)

Mutes: Straight mute for the entire third movement “Scherzo” in parts two through four

Dedication: N/A

Publisher Overview/Score Description: N/A

Technical Considerations: Dynamic Contrast; Ensemble Balance; Glissando; Mixed Meter

Dynamic Contrast – This item is important in the second and fourth movements. The second movement contains melodic lines comprised primarily of stepwise motion. The composer often provides a dynamic level but only includes crescendos and diminuendos in several measures (outside the bass trombone part). Many of these lines occur in the first half of each 5/2 measure, so propelling toward beat four of each measure will help with phrasing. Each part plays the melody in the fourth movement except for the third trombone. Like the second movement, the composer provides minimal instruction. Providing energy through the repeated C#4, which is central to almost every melodic line, is essential.

Ensemble Balance - This item is of primary concern in the third movement, which features accompaniment underneath a first trombone solo. The accompaniment does occur with mutes, but it is still highly active and could overpower the solo line. It is imperative that the first trombonist not have to strain for the line to be audible. Fortes and accents should not be exaggerated, while sustained notes need direction. An example occurs in the first six measures of Rehearsal E. The soloist must play the part confidently and not require the ensemble to play so softly that the sound lacks sufficient breath support. Raising the dynamic level for lower notes and overblowing the higher notes is essential for a solid performance. For example, in the seventh through tenth measures after Rehearsal E, the Bb2 and two Bb1s should be louder following the crescendo; consequently, the two measures before Rehearsal G should not be excessively emphasized but remain prominent above the ensemble. Ensemble balance also plays a role in the fourth movement.

Glissando – here are three glissandi in this work. Each is situated within the solo first trombone part of the third movement. The first glissando occurs in measures seven and eight, moving from C4 to F4; sixth position is necessary for the C4. The second glissando occurs in measure fifteen, moving from D4 to A3; using sixth position is required for the A3 to execute it. The final glissando occurs in measure sixteen; using seventh position is required for the E3 to execute it.

Mixed Meter – There are meter changes throughout this work. The bulk of them occur in movements one, three, and five. Movement one contains 2/4, 3/4, 5/4, 5/8, 7/8, and 9/8. Sometimes, the new meter will only last for one measure; one example occurs in the fifth measure of Rehearsal B (5/8). Other times, it lasts for several measures, such as seven

through nine (7/8). In movement three, 6/8 and 9/8 are the only two measures; the 9/8 typically lasts for one measure, and an example is measure six. Movement five contains 2/4, 3/4, 3/8, and 5/8. The 3/8 only lasts for one measure every time it occurs; one example occurs two measures prior to Rehearsal N. The 5/8 only occurs once in measures six and seven. The 3/4 is how the movement concludes, and the 2/4 is the predominant meter. Maintaining rhythmic stability throughout the ensemble will be required; metronome usage is recommended for rehearsal.

Piece Description:

This work by David Gow contains five short movements in various styles. The first movement, “Prelude,” proceeds at a moderate tempo conducive to the sixteenth notes it contains. It begins with a homorhythmic sixteenth-note line starting on E3 in all four parts. The first and second trombones are in unison except for the first half of beat three, while the third trombone plays a repeated E3, and the bass trombone has a descending chromatic line. This idea repeats two times, providing the movement with cohesion. In measure six, the main body of the movement begins in 7/8 with a driving bass trombone melody that contains a mixture of eighth and sixteenth notes. It transitions to a homorhythmic section for the top three parts that only lasts three measures. The subsequent material becomes more contrapuntal, featuring staggered sixteenth-note entrances. At Rehearsal B, the first trombone is the main melodic source, while the second and third trombones provide motivic fragments that give the texture depth; eventually, the 7/8 bass trombone line returns. The opening material returns at Rehearsal C, but it does so a whole step higher; it also includes dynamic resets that help heighten the intensity toward the movement’s conclusion on octave F#s. Items to consider are dynamic contrast and time.

The second movement, “Slow Dance,” is a slow, lyrical movement lasting only nine measures. It is in 5/4 time, and every measure is structured as a 3+2 pattern. It begins with a dialogue between the first and bass trombones. The first trombone has an ascending line over the first three beats, and the bass trombone continues that motion, albeit two octaves lower, over the next two beats; concurrently, the second and third trombones provide accompaniment. In measure three, the texture turns homorhythmic for the top three parts for one measure before returning to the dialogical texture; however, the second trombone responds instead of the bass trombone. At Rehearsal D, the homorhythmic texture returns for three measures. The first half of each measure features the established ascending line minus an initial descending note in the bass trombone. The second half of the measure contains a bass trombone line underneath whole notes in the top three parts in two of the measures; the first triad is D major, and the second triad is B major. The third contains a diminuendo and contrary motion within the ensemble. The first and bass trombone dialogue returns and the movement ends with a perfect fifth. Items to consider are intonation and phrasing.

The third movement, “Scherzo,” is a fast dance, primarily in 6/8 and occasionally in 9/8. The bottom three parts require a straight mute; the first trombone part is a solo. It begins with an opening statement on the “la” of beat one in the second and third trombones that crescendos to the downbeat of measure three. This idea repeats in measures four and five but does not include the dotted half note in the middle. Also, the downbeat of measure five contains a three-eighth note motive containing oscillating whole steps in the third and fourth trombones and minor thirds in the second trombone. In measure seven, the first trombone solo enters. The line primarily ascends in the first three measures, containing a glissando from C4 to F4. In measure ten, the solo line moves in contrast to the accompaniment. Both parts play on beats one and two but rest

on different eighth notes. Over the following thirteen measures, the solo line descends, combining eighth-note lines, glissandi, and sustained notes, while the bottom three parts crescendo over sustained notes and accent eighth notes on multiple downbeats. In measure twenty-five, the solo line contains a pedal Bb within the most contrapuntal measures of the movement. In the measure before Rehearsal F, a 9/8 measure occurs, and the first trombone solo features a descending quadruplet that leads to the downbeat of Rehearsal F. The second trombone assumes the melody in the second measure of Rehearsal F for four measures before it returns to the first trombone part an octave higher. The movement's culmination occurs two measures before Rehearsal G with a unison descending line across three octaves. The repeat returns the music to measure six and ends on a unison A3. Items to consider are articulation, ensemble balance, intonation, and style.

The fourth movement, "Valse Triste," is a slow waltz that distributes the melody across the ensemble except for the third trombone. The melody begins in the first trombone, spanning a perfect fifth and C#4 as its focal point. The second trombone takes over the melody in measure seven, beginning on G#4. It descends to C#4, which repeats six consecutive times, eventually concluding like the first trombone. Then, the first trombone enters in measure fifteen on G#4 as the second trombone previously did. In measure seventeen, the bass trombone emerges as the principal melodic voice for almost twenty-four measures; a descending motive containing Ab2, G2, F2, E2, and C3 provides this extended melody with cohesion. While the style stays the same, the angularity of the line increases due to the lack of note repetition within the line. The first trombone plays a countermelody throughout much of this before the original melody returns at Rehearsal J. Regarding the accompaniment, the non-melodic parts either play dotted quarter

notes on the downbeat of measures or quarter notes on the second eighth note since the meter is 3/8. Items to consider are dynamics, intonation, and time.

The fifth movement, “Fugue,” begins with staggered sixteenth-note entrances that initially suggest the beginning of the fugue; however, it is only an opening fanfare. The fugue begins on the anacrusis to measure eleven in the third and fourth trombones. The subject of this fugue combines eighth notes, triplets, and sixteenth notes in an angular. Five measures later, the subject occurs in the second and third trombones on the anacrusis to measure sixteen.

Concurrently, the bass trombone continues with a sustained-note descending line. Ten measures later, the third statement of the subject occurs in the first and second trombone parts; however, it is not fully realized because the contrapuntal texture transitions into a mosaic of interacting fragments across all four parts. At Rehearsal M, a full statement of the subject occurs in the second trombone amidst the fragmentation; the first trombone replicates this pattern at Rehearsal N. The last eight measures of the movement recall the opening statement of the first movement, unifying the piece. It ends on D3 in the top three parts and D2 in the bass trombone. Items to consider are articulation, rhythm, style, and time.

Suite für vier Posaunen – Alfred Hornoff

Composer: Alfred Hornoff (1902–1969)

Born in 1902 in Dresden, Alfred Hornoff Served as the lead of the second violins in the Berlin Philharmonic from 1922 to 1962.³⁷⁷ He also composed a sonata for violin and two string quartets.³⁷⁸ He died in 1969; there is little information about his public or private life presently available.³⁷⁹

Arranger: N/A

Title: *Suite für vier Posaunen* (*Suite for Four Trombones*)

Movements: Five Movements

1. Solenne – Andante non troppo
2. Moderato
3. Allegro quasi Presto
4. Andante non troppo
5. Molto Allegro deciso con impeto

Duration: 11:00

Publisher: Eres Edition (Lilienthal, Lower Saxony, Germany)

Copyright Date: 1953

Copy Quality: Engraved (Borderline manuscript)

Availability: Available from numerous merchants; no digital download available

Difficulty: Virtuosic (5)

Instrumentation: Alto trombone; two tenor trombones; bass trombone

³⁷⁷ Ronald Baron, “About the Composers,” liner notes for *The Return of the Alto*, Boston Brass Series, 2004, CD, 4.

³⁷⁸ Ibid, 4.

³⁷⁹ Hofacre, 62.

Overall Range: Bb1 – F5

Alto Trombone: Eb3 – F5

Trombone 2: D3 – Bb4

Trombone 3: F2 – F4

Bass Trombone: Bb1 – Eb4

Clefs: Alto Trombone (alto); Trombone 2 (tenor); Trombone 3 (bass); Bass Trombone (bass)

Mutes: N/A

Dedication: Trombone Quartet of the Berlin Philharmonic

Publisher Overview/ Score Description:

Return of the Alto Liner Notes

“The five short Romanic movements vary in style from lush choral to full orchestral richness to playful brilliance. This work best represents the full rich possibilities of the orchestral trombone section when the alto trombone plays the top voice.”³⁸⁰

Technical Considerations: Tessitura; Ensemble Playing

Tessitura – This factor or extended technique is primarily of consequence for the top two parts. The alto trombone rarely plays any notes below C4. When the part travels below that line, it usually plays a Bb3 or A3; most of these notes occur in the second movement. It is also important to mention that the alto trombone part tends to stay above F4. As for the second trombone part, it rarely goes very high (only playing a couple of Bb4s). Still, it sticks within the pocket of C4 to G4, which can become excruciatingly exhausting as movements and the entire piece progresses.

³⁸⁰ Ronald Baron, “About the Music,” liner notes for *The Return of the Alto*, Boston Brass Series, 2.

Ensemble Playing – An ensemble cannot play this work on autopilot. All ensemble members need to be focused and actively listening within the ensemble. The alto trombonist’s job is to lead the ensemble, yet there are moments when the other ensemble members are responsible for time. For example, the opening measures of movement one present an opportunity for the bass trombonist to lead. Once the alto gives the cue, it is up to the bass trombonist to lead the ensemble in measure one, as they only have moving notes. Another example is the opening twelve measures of movement two.

Piece Description:

Alfred Hornoff’s *Suite* provides diverse styles that challenge each trombonist. The first movement, “Solenne – Andante non troppo,” breaks into roughly three sections (ABA’). The two “A” sections contain a regal, chorale-like texture that primarily uses quarter and half notes; however, the composer masterfully weaves them together via contrary motion underneath sustained notes to create a rich texture. In the first section, the impact point is right before rehearsal two, where two accented half notes emphasize the resolution to C minor. The second impact point occurs two bars before rehearsal three when the alto trombone soars up to an Eb5. The return of the opening material in the second “A” section tests the alto trombonist because of four subsequent Bb4s covering four measures. At the same time, the lower three parts create melodic interest and harmonic tension that climax six before the end. The “B” section at rehearsal three is the outlier. The third trombone begins the line, allowing the other three parts to follow with unique variations and chromatic patterns for a more complex texture. Items worth considering are tempo, dynamic contrast, and ensemble communication.

The second movement, “Moderato,” begins with a fanfare in the alto and tenor trombones. It starts with trombones one and two in unison, and trombone three is an octave

lower. Five measures later, the bass trombone is added into the mix, forcing trombone three into unison with the top two parts. In addition to all these unisons and octaves, thirty-second notes on the “a” of beat one are also present. At rehearsal five, trombone three has a solo in a march style. For accompaniment, the alto and bass trombones play similar lines against a different line in trombone two. On the anacrusis to rehearsal six, the second trombone plays a solo line that is more chromatic and legato. The line continues past rehearsal seven, borrowing material from the third trombone solo as the alto trombone solo begins. All these ideas converge shortly after, and the alto ascends to an F5. Following this high point, the alto returns to a more comfortable range, and material from the third trombone solo returns; all these ideas conclude with a “d” minor triad. Items to consider are intonation and rhythm.

The third movement, “Molto Allegro quasi Presto,” is an exhilarating dance with a song-like middle section that evokes an ABA form. The “B” section differentiates itself through dynamics and texture rather than tempo. The main melody is in the alto trombone. Its identity comes from its diatonic patterns. The lower parts supply the accompaniment in most measures, often playing quarter notes with occasional eighth notes. The “B” section song allows the performers to lean into softer dynamics for maximum effect; the alto’s range and tessitura drop slightly, and ensemble interaction via contrary motion and ensemble dynamics comes to the foreground. Items worth considering for this movement are dynamic contrast, style, and time.

The fourth movement, “Andante non troppo,” is odd because of its rhythmic yet lyrical nature. This statement may sound counterintuitive, but Hornoff combines a song-like melody with constant subdivision changes. All four parts experience these subdivision shifts; however, the alto trombone carries most of the load since it is the primary melodic voice. As for the rest of the ensemble, these parts receive more melodic material around rehearsal twelve. The most

challenging spots are bars nine and eleven because of the rhythm. In both measures, two sets of sixteenth-note triplets occur on beats one and three. Measure nine only has trombone three and bass trombone, while measure eleven contains all four parts. Items worth considering include rhythm and ensemble playing.

The fifth movement, “Molto Allegro deciso con impeto,” is an exciting close that mixes a fanfare with two soft-spoken melodies. The opening fanfare line moves through an Eb major triad followed by a transposition to C minor. Then, the bass trombone plays an ascending scalar melody underneath block-chord accompaniment in trombones one through three. At rehearsal thirteen, the ensemble plays a quarter note line conducive to an *accelerando* that climaxes on a three-octave Eb in the top three parts. The fanfare then returns but increases the range and backs off dynamically. At rehearsal fourteen, the second trombone plays a solo with trombones one, three, and four providing an arpeggiated accompaniment. The following section is developmental, giving way to the second melodic idea at rehearsal sixteen, which contains the DNA of a hymn. The roadmap then takes the ensemble back to the beginning, and the piece ends with a soft Eb major triad.

Suite for Four Trombones – George Hyde

Composer: George Hyde (1921–2014)

Born in 1921, George Hyde is best known as a Hollywood studio French horn player who worked on films such as *Dr. Zhivago* (1965), *Butch Cassidy and the Sundance Kid* (1969), and *Dances with Wolves* (1990).³⁸¹ He studied at the University of the Pacific and the University of Southern California before becoming a member of the Glendale Symphony, the Los Angeles Philharmonic, Civic Light Opera, and the Pasadena Symphony.³⁸² Additionally, he was a founding member of the Los Angeles Horn Club, which he performed with and composed music for.³⁸³ Limited documentation exists concerning his other compositions. He died in 2014.

Arranger: N/A

Title: *Suite for Four Trombones*

Movements: Three Movements

1. No title (half note equals 80 bpm)
2. Slowly (dotted half note equals 48 bpm)
3. No title (half note equals 108 bpm)

Included in the NYSSMA Solo & Ensemble Catalog.

Duration: 6:30

Publisher: Western International Music (Greeley, CO)

Copyright Date: 1970

Copy Quality: Engraved (Parts); Manuscript (Score)

Availability: Available from numerous merchants; no digital download available

³⁸¹ “Obituary: Hyde, George Winslow,” Obituaries, The Spokesman-Review, last modified March 30, 2014, <https://www.spokesman.com/stories/2014/mar/30/obituary-hyde-george-winslow/>.

³⁸² Ibid.

³⁸³ Ibid.

Difficulty: Virtuoso (5)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones[^]; bass trombone

Overall Range: C2 – Eb5

Trombone 1: D3 – Eb5

Trombone 2: F2 – Ab4

Trombone 3: A2 – C5

Bass Trombone: C2 – Bb3

Clefs: Trombone 1 (tenor); Trombone 2 (tenor); Trombone 3 (tenor); Bass Trombone (bass)

Mutes: N/A

Dedication: N/A

Publisher Overview/Score Description: N/A

Technical Considerations: Balance and Blend; Glissando; Range; Style

Balance and Blend – This aspect is especially critical to this work because of its various “solo” markings and melodies above the accompaniment. Whether the first trombone has the solo (entire second movement), the second trombone (movement 1; movement 3), third trombone (movement 1; movement 3), or bass trombone (movement 1; movement 2; movement 3) has the solo, the accompaniment cannot overpower the primary melodic voice. This concept is pertinent when most solos are under five measures long.

Glissando – This technique occurs exclusively in the third movement. The first occurrence is in measures ten and eleven. In measure ten, each part has a glissando to the downbeat of measure eleven. The first trombone performs a glissando from C4 to F4, so sixth position is required for the C4 to perform it accurately. The second trombone performs a glissando from C4 to Bb3, so fifth position is required for the Bb3 to perform

it accurately. The third trombone performs a glissando from F3 to Eb3, and the bass trombone performs a glissando from Bb2 to Ab2; neither of these occurrences requires alternate positions. In measure eleven, the first trombone has the same glissando, but the other three trombones have glissandi with different pitch content. The second trombone performs a glissando from F3 to Ab3, so sixth position is required for the F3 to perform it accurately. The third trombone performs a glissando from Eb3 to Db3, and the bass trombone performs a glissando from G2 to F2; neither of these occurrences requires alternate positions. The second occurrence is from measure eighty-six to ninety-four. The initial material is the same, with changes occurring from measures ninety-one through ninety-four. In measure ninety-one, the third trombone performs a glissando from C4 to Bb3, so fifth position is required for the Bb3 to perform it accurately. The bass trombone performs a glissando from Eb3 to Db3, so no alternate positions are necessary. In measure ninety-two, the only difference occurs in the second trombone, which performs a glissando from F3 to Bb3; fifth position is required to perform it accurately. In measure ninety-three, the third trombone performs a glissando from F3 to Eb3, and the bass trombone performs a glissando from Ab2 to Gb2; no alternate positions are necessary. The upper two parts also perform glissandi in this measure. The first trombone performs a glissando from F4 to Bb4, so sixth position is required for the F4 to perform it accurately; simultaneously, the second trombone performs a glissando from Eb4 to Db4, meaning fifth position is required to perform it accurately. In measure ninety-four, the third and fourth trombones perform two final glissandi—the third trombone performs a glissando from Ab3 to Gb3, and the fourth trombone performs a glissando from F2 to Bb2. No alternate positions are required, but sixth position is advised for F2.

Range – Since the composer was a French hornist, the ensemble is configured differently than most quartets. Traditionally, the first and third horn parts are the higher parts, and the second and fourth horn parts are the lower parts. This compositional approach is prevalent in this work, as the third trombone is generally higher than the second trombone, though not consistently. The third trombone has B4 in measures thirty and thirty-one and C5 in measure thirty-two of movement one. In movement three, the third trombone has a B4 in measure twenty-one. The first trombone part is also high, ascending to Eb5 on multiple occasions (m. 65 of movement one and the work's final measure).

Style – Since Hyde was a French hornist in the film industry, a jazz-influenced commercial style is prominent in this work's first and third movements. As with any performance, the first melodic voice establishes the style, which must be adhered to by the rest of the ensemble. For example, the first trombone has the first melodic line in the first movement, beginning in measure ten. The style in which the first trombonist performs this line sets the standard for its performance throughout. In measure twenty-two, the third trombone establishes the legato style; this principle similarly applies. In movement three, the first trombone introduces the main melody in the first six measures, setting the style for the movement. Another critical aspect is attention to articulation. Unlike a jazz score, where much of the language is inferred and assumed (through listening and understanding the style), Hyde provides the performers with numerous markings and information concerning articulation. Adhere to these markings.

Piece Description:

This quartet by George Hyde is a lesser-known work in the trombone quartet repertoire. As a French hornist, Hyde brought the traditional scoring for horns (Horns 1 and 3 are high;

Horns 2 and 4 are low) to the trombone quartet because the third trombone is typically higher than the second trombone. The first movement begins with the lower three trombones; however, the composer juxtaposes them as the bass trombone plays on beat one and the other two trombones play on the upbeat of one. This interplay continues until beat two of measure four when the first trombone enters. Here, the ensemble plays a homorhythmic figure consisting of eighth and quarter notes before measure five. Hyde subverts expectations, placing no notes in any part on the downbeat of measure five; the bass trombone enters on beat two. In measures six and seven, a homorhythmic syncopated line begins with an eighth note on the “e” of beat one in all four parts; this motive co-occurs with a crescendo to the downbeat of measure eight. Three subsequent chords occur, none of which are tonal. On the anacrusis to measure ten, the melody, which is more commercial and jazz-influenced, begins in the first trombone. This melody relies on skips and syncopation for its identity; the first phrase begins on D4 and ascends to C5. Simultaneously, the second and third trombones have a descending quarter-note line that eventually transforms into a syncopated eighth-note line with the bass trombone. Beginning on the anacrusis to measure fifteen, the first and bass trombones line up rhythmically amidst a crescendo to the downbeat of measure sixteen. In measure sixteen, the ensemble divides into duos (the first and fourth trombones against the second and third trombones). The second and third trombones have eighth notes beginning on the “e” of beat one that lead to a half note on beat two; conversely, the first and bass trombones have an identical figure, but it begins on the “e” of beat two and has a sustained note on beat one. This pattern creates a composite line that lasts until measure twenty-one, where the texture changes to a legato style and a more chordal (homophonic) texture. The primary melodic voice within this texture is the third trombone, which Hyde marked as “Solo.” While more legato, this melody resembles the first trombone

melody in measures nine through twelve via its leaps and skips and ascension to B4 in measures thirty and thirty-one. In measure thirty-six, the meter changes to 3/4 time, lasting twelve measures before the cut-time returns. The commercial melody from earlier returns in measures forty-nine through fifty-two. Much of the subsequent material is identical to the opening material (around measures ten through twenty). The initial signs of divergence begin around measure fifty-six when the first trombone has an octave leap to Bb4, the second trombone line marked “solo” lasts an additional measure or two, and the upper three parts have a homorhythmic onset on the upbeat of beat two at a piano dynamic level. The bass trombone joins the rest of the ensemble, and a syncopated line that resembles a hemiola unfolds over the following five measures, culminating with an Eb5 in the first trombone. The dynamic remains forte for the bass trombone solo, which begins in the subsequent measure. It then softens to mezzo forte for the third trombone in measure seventy and the second trombone in measure seventy-three. In measure seventy-six, the meter alternates every measure or two. The movement ends with three nonfunctional chords that utilize triadic harmony. They are Bb major in root position, a C minor seventh chord in root position, and a G major triad in root position. Items to consider are balance and blend, intonation, range, and style.

The second movement, “Slowly,” is in 6/4 time and should be performed in two. The lower three parts open the movement. The bass trombone plays on beat one and the third quarter note of beat two, while the second and third trombones play on the third quarter note of beat one and beat two. This pattern continues until measure fifteen, except for measures nine and twelve (in the second and third trombones). In measure nine, the second trombone has four descending chromatic quarter notes, and the third trombone has a quarter note, half note, and a quarter note on the third quarter note of beat one. In measure twelve, the rhythmic configuration from the

third trombone part in measure nine is in both trombones, and the bass trombone does not play on the third quarter note of beat two. In measure fifteen, the bass trombone plays half notes on each beat, while the second and third trombones play half notes on the second quarter note of each beat. These offset entrances allow the parts to overlap for one count, producing complex, non-tonal harmonies; this texture lasts for three measures. The following six measures leading up to twenty-three (the sole $\frac{3}{4}$ measure of the movement) feature oscillating quarter notes in the second and third trombones (D4–C4; F#3–G3) above a brief bass trombone solo. While all this accompaniment material occurs, the main melody is in the first trombone and marked “Solo” by the composer. It begins in measure three with a sustained D4 that eventually leads to a syncopated line, specifically a hemiola. The line consists of more quarter notes in measure eight, resulting in a more disjunct melodic structure. This disjunct motion continues, with the focal point being a quarter note followed by a half note and another quarter note. Like the accompaniment, this motive begins on the third quarter note of beat one, following a sustained note. Following two measures of rest, the solo reenters during an ensemble-wide crescendo that leads to a homorhythmic section in measures twenty-four through twenty-seven. Staggered entrances in measures twenty-eight and twenty-nine allow the piece to return to the beginning and take the coda sign. The movement concludes with a C major seventh chord in first inversion and an instruction for no vibrato by the composer (m. 31). Items to consider are balance and blend, intonation, and style.

The third movement is a return to the commercial and quasi-jazz style of the first movement. It begins with a highly syncopated, angular melody in the first trombone, frequently shifting between registers. Simultaneously, the lower three parts provide jazz-influenced accompaniment figures. Following the completion of the melody in measure six, the third

trombone part has a two-measure solo that transitions to the second trombone in measure eight. These two lines contribute to the music's development, culminating with ensemble glissandos in measures ten and eleven. In measure thirteen, the second and third trombones become the primary melodic voices, as the outer two voices have a decrescendoing Bb in octaves (Bb4; Bb3). Measures thirteen and fourteen contain ascending staccato quarter notes that are mostly diatonic, but there is an occasional accidental. In measure fifteen, the line becomes legato, staying that way until measure twenty-eight. The line is homorhythmic except for measure twenty-two, where the third trombone has a half-note triplet. In measure twenty-eight, the first and third trombones play a duet consisting of syncopated and angular lines. A contrapuntal texture ensues over the following sixteen measures until the first homorhythmic ensemble section occurs on the anacrusis to measure forty-six. This section also features syncopation and decrescendos to a pianissimo dynamic level on the downbeat of measure fifty-two. A new section begins on the second beat of this measure with the lower three parts. The new melody in the first trombone begins on the anacrusis to measure fifty-eight. The second and bass trombones provide accompaniment over the next fifteen measures, while the first and third trombones trade six-measure phrases. In measure seventy-five, a crescendo begins in the second and third trombones, with the outer voices joining in the next measure. This musical development leads to the return of the opening material in measure seventy-seven. The subsequent material is identical to the opening for approximately fifteen measures before the ensemble divides into duos (first and second; third and fourth), which trade glissandos. The second trombone has a solo line in measure ninety-six, while the other three parts provide accompaniment. In measure 107, the first trombone takes over the melody, allowing the movement and work to conclude with an Eb major

triad in root position (Eb5 in part one). Items to consider are articulation, balance and blend, range, and style.

Three Movements for Four Trombones – James Kazik

Composer: James Kazik (b. 1974)

Born in 1974, James Kazik is an “active freelance copyist, composer, arranger, clinician, and conductor.”³⁸⁴ He received his B.M. in Theory and Composition from the University of Minnesota and his M.M. in Trombone Performance from the University of North Texas.³⁸⁵ He served as the chief arranger for the United States Army Band, “Perishing’s Own,” from 2018 to 2022 and had been on the staff since 2001.

Arranger: N/A

Title: *Three Movements for Four Trombones*

Movements: Three Movements

1. Minute March (quarter note equals 144 bpm)
2. No Title (quarter note between 66 and 73 bpm)
3. Light, Buoyant (quarter note equals 160 bpm)

Duration: 7:30

Publisher: Kagarice Brass Editions owned by Ensemble Publications (Ithaca, NY)

Copyright Date: 2001

Copy Quality: Jazz Notation

Availability: Available from Hickeys Music; no digital download available

Difficulty: Virtuosic (5)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones^; bass trombone

Overall Range: Gb1 – D5

Trombone 1: E3 – D5

³⁸⁴ James Kazik, “Home,” Jameskazik.com, accessed February 17, 2025, <https://www.jameskazik.com/>.

³⁸⁵ Ibid.

Trombone 2: B2 – A4

Trombone 3: Gb2 – F4

Bass Trombone: Gb1 – C4

Clefs: Trombone 1 (tenor); Trombone 2 (tenor); Trombone 3 (bass); Bass Trombone (bass)

Mutes: N/A

Dedication: 2002 ITA Trombone Quartet Competition

Publisher Overview/Score Description: N/A

Technical Considerations: Articulation; Multiple Tonguing; Ornamentation

Articulation – Only a handful of notes in this work do not have a specific articulation marking. Markings include accent, marcato accent (rooftop), staccato, legato. Ensuring clear differences between these markings and agreeing on note length among the ensemble could present an issue.

Intonation – This item mainly plays a role in the second movement. Some triadic harmony exists, but the primary interval is the perfect fifth. The first eleven measures have layered perfect fifths across the ensemble; the notes are G4, E4, C4, and A3. Another example happens in measures twenty-eight through thirty-one in the first and second trombone parts; the melodic lines a perfect fifth apart sound similar to chant or organum.

Multiple Tonguing – This technique plays a minor role in the third movement, primarily double tonguing. There are four notable instances. The first occurs in measures one and two in the first and second trombone parts. The second occurs in measures twenty and twenty-three in the third and fourth trombones. The third occurs in measures twenty-one

and twenty-four in the top two parts. The fourth occurs in measure seventy-one in the top three parts. These sixteenth motives tend to occur in short bursts.

Ornamentation – There are two types of ornamentation in this work. The grace note is a key element in the first movement; some ascend, and others descend. For several examples, refer to the bass trombone part in measure three and the first trombone part in measures four, five, twenty-one, and twenty-two. The fall plays a minor role in the third movement; they only occur in the first and second trombones, and five out of the six descend. For some examples, refer to measures three and seventy-four for the standard version and measure eighty-seven for the unique instance. The standard occurrence features the first trombone descending from D5 to D4 and the second trombone descending from A4 to F3; the special version that concludes the piece has the first trombone ascending from G4 to C5 and the second trombone descending from G4 to C4.

Piece Description:

James Kazik's piece is a demanding composition that contains a variety of styles. The first movement, "Minute March," is driven by a pseudo-folk song; it begins with soft bell tones in a staggered configuration. The order the parts enter are first, third, second, and fourth amid a crescendo. Measure three features eighth notes on all four beats with grace notes in the bass trombone and a fanfare line in the top three parts. In measure five, the melody begins in the first trombone part, which contains dotted eighth sixteenth notes, a couple of grace notes, and a half note in stepwise motion; the rest of the ensemble plays the accompaniment. In measure seven, beat three has an accented quarter emphasized in all four parts; the melody's original form quickly returns on the next beat. At Rehearsal B, the third trombone continues providing accompaniment figures, the first trombone rests, the second trombone plays the melody, and the

bass trombone plays a supporting role; the melody is in a similar style but contains different notes. At Rehearsal C, the opening melody reappears in the first trombone transposed up a whole step; it continues its role as the primary melodic voice by playing a line containing repetition in measures twenty-seven through twenty-nine. All four parts crescendo to the climax on the downbeat of measure thirty. In the subsequent five measures, the bottom three parts reduce the dynamic level to pianissimo, which sets up a subito fortissimo on the following two notes. The movement ends with octave Cs in the third and bass trombone C2 at a pianissimo dynamic. Items to consider are ornamentation, articulation, and style.

The second movement combines several ideas into a rich tapestry of sounds. It also begins with soft bell tones, but the parts are in pairs; the first and third trombones play on beat one, and the second and fourth trombones play on beat three. The harmony from the created chords is distinct due to the richness and openness created by the stacked perfect fifths. Measures six through eight are triadic, but the harmonic motion creates a texture similar to a chain of suspensions. The section concludes with a C major seventh chord at a pianissimo dynamic. At rehearsal A, the first trombone plays the melody again, and the second trombone plays a counter line. In measure seventeen, the parts switch roles. Rehearsal B, which the composer labels “with intensity,” features a melody in the bass trombone while the upper three parts play sustained notes. The third trombone enters in measure twenty-five an octave higher. Two measures later, the first and second trombones play a melodic line a perfect fifth apart; it has a modern yet archaic sound. At Rehearsal C, the duet persists an octave apart; the perfect fifths return in measure forty. Rehearsal D features a return of the material from Rehearsal A with some variation; the most significant change is the oscillating quarter notes in all four parts. The

movement concludes with the return of the bell tones and an E minor triad. Items to consider are intonation, phrasing, and tone color.

The third movement, “Light, Buoyant,” contains captivating melodies and demands technical skill. The movement opens with a composite melody between the first and second trombone parts. The rhythm in both parts is an eighth note, two sixteenth notes, and an eighth note. The second eighth note creates a more cohesive overlap. The opening melody climaxes with a fall in the top two parts that line up with the other two on beat four. This idea repeats, followed by a legato line leading into Rehearsal A. The second and third trombones accompany the highly chromatic solo in the first trombone, and the bass trombone interjects within this texture. At Rehearsal B, the top two parts play a line requiring multiple tonguing, and the bottom two play a syncopated line. It then turns into a homorhythmic ensemble section featuring chromaticism and repetition. Rehearsal C is where the “tango” begins; its texture is legato, contains numerous skips within all the parts, and puts the bass trombone at the forefront. Rehearsal D is a short bass trombone feature containing numerous ascending lines; the second trombone takes over the melody at Rehearsal E, and the first trombone takes it over at Rehearsal F. The opening material returns four measures before Rehearsal G. The movement concludes with a descending chromatic scale in parts two and three, a glissando in the top two parts, and a forte attack on beat two of the final measure in parts three and four. Items to consider are multiple tonguing, style, and articulation.

5 *Impromptus for 4 Trombones* – Jan Koetsier

Composer: Jan Koetsier (1911–2006)

Born in 1911, Jan Koetsier “can rightly be considered one of the founders of brass chamber music.”³⁸⁶ He was the youngest student at the time to pass the entrance audition for piano at the Berlin Hochschule für Musik;³⁸⁷ while there, he studied piano, score-reading and music theory with Walther Gmeindl, and conducting with Julius Prüwer.³⁸⁸ With the aid of Artur Schnabel, his career focus shifted to an emphasis on composing and conducting rather than performing.³⁸⁹ From 1934 to 1948 he conducted various ensembles across Central Europe, including a six year period (1942–1948) as the second conductor of the Concertgebouw Orchestra in Amsterdam,³⁹⁰ in 1950 he became the conductor of the Bavarian Radio Symphony.³⁹¹ From 1966 to 1976, he was the professor of conducting at the Musikhochschule in Munich and after retiring, dedicated the remaining thirty years of his life to composition.³⁹² In 1993, he endowed a foundation for the promotion of brass chamber music internationally, which led to the creation of the Biennial International Jan Koetsier Competition for Brass Chamber Music.³⁹³ Some of his other notable works for trombone include *Sonatina for Trombone and Piano*, Op. 58, no. 1 (1970), *Allegro Maestoso for Bass Trombone and Piano*, Op. 58, no. 2 (1972), *Concertino for Trombone and Piano*, Op. 91 (1982), and *Concertino for Trombone Quartet and Strings*, Op. 115 (1988). He died in 2006.

Arranger: N/A

³⁸⁶ “Jan Koetsier (1911–2006),” ITEA Lifetime Achievement Recipients, ITEA Historian, Research, Drobnakbrass.com, accessed April 14, 2025, <https://redevelop.drobnakbrass.com/conc8/index.php/features/ITEA-Historian/itea-lifetime-achievement-recipients/jan-koetsier>.

³⁸⁷ Ibid.

³⁸⁸ Ibid.

³⁸⁹ Ibid.

³⁹⁰ Ibid.

³⁹¹ Ibid.

³⁹² Ibid.

³⁹³ Ibid.

Title: *5 Impromptus for 4 Trombones*

Movements: Five Movements

1. Andante con moto (dotted half note equals 52 bpm)
2. Allegro molto (quarter note equals 160 bpm)
3. Allegretto grazioso (quarter note equals 120 bpm)
4. Adagio (quarter note equals 80 bpm)
5. Allegro molto vivace (quarter note equals 184 bpm)

Duration: 9:00

Publisher: Editions Marc Reift (Crans-Montana, Switzerland)

Copyright Date: 1970

Copy Quality: Engraved

Availability: Available from numerous merchants; digital download available from EMR

Difficulty: Virtuoso (5)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones[^]; bass trombone

Overall Range: Bb1 – D5

Trombone 1: Ab2 – D5

Trombone 2: G2 – Bb4

Trombone 3: Bb1 – G4

Bass Trombone: Bb1 – F4

Clefs: Trombone 1 (bass); Trombone 2 (bass); Trombone 3 (bass); Bass Trombone (bass)

*A Bb treble clef copy is provided by the publisher for each part

Mutes: Straight Mute (Mvt. 3 – Beginning to two measures before rehearsal two; rehearsal four to end); (Mvt. 4 – Third measure of rehearsal 5 to end)

Dedication: N/A

Publisher Overview/Score Description: N/A

Technical Considerations: Glissando; Lip Trill; Multiple Tonguing

Glissando – This technique is at the center of the fourth movement but also occurs in the third and fifth movements. In the third movement, the glissando occurs in the first and second trombones in measures forty-four and forty-five. The first trombone glissandos from Eb3 to D3. No alternate positions are necessary since these pitches are on the same partial—also, the second trombone glissandos from B2 to C3. The performer may choose to use seventh and sixth position or trigger first position and trigger second position; experimenting with both could be beneficial. In the fifth movement, the only glissando is a cross-harmonic glissando in measures seventy-seven and seventy-eight. All four parts must execute a rapid descending glissando akin to a horn rip; each part descends over an octave. The first trombone descends from Bb4 to D3, the second trombone descends from A4 to C3, the third trombone descends from F4 to C3, and the bass trombone descends from D4 to A2. There are too numerous glissandi in the fourth movement to analyze each individually. Instead, four important glissandi have been chosen to highlight the necessary alternate positions. The first example occurs in the first four measures of Rehearsal B. The first trombone glissandos from F4 to A4 back to F4 and resolves to G#4. For this glissando to be properly performed, sixth position is required for F4. The second trombone glissandos from Db4 to F4 back to Db4 and resolves to E4; fifth position is necessary for Db4 to execute this glissando properly. The third trombone glissandos from A3 to C#4 back to A3 and resolves to C4; sixth position is necessary to perform this glissando properly. Finally, the bass trombone glissandos from E3 to G#3

back to E3 and lands on F3; seventh position will need to be used for E3 to execute the glissando properly. The second example occurs in the first trombone melody at Rehearsal C. In the first three measures, the first trombone glissandos from E4 to F4, Gb4 to F4, and Bb4 to F4. The most straightforward way to perform this would be to play E4 in fifth position and F4 in fourth position because then E4, F4, and Gb4 would all be on the same partial; however, first position can be used for the glissando from E4 to F4. Sixth position is necessary to execute the glissando from Bb4 to F4 properly. The third example occurs in the second trombone multiple times (m. 1, 45, and 49). The part glissandos from A4 to Ab4 and then to E4; seventh position will be required for the E4 to execute the glissando properly. The fourth example occurs in the first trombone part in measure sixty-one. Following a glissando from E4 to F4 and a sustained note on F4, the first trombone quickly glissandos to B3; seventh position will be necessary for this note to execute this glissando properly. Numerous other glissandos do not require alternate positions, and intonation could be of concern.

Lip Trill – This ornament is unique to the third movement; it occurs in the second and fourth measures of Rehearsal D in the first and second trombones. In measure thirty-six, the composer instructs the first trombone to trill on C4. If the performer uses an F-Attachment, this is achievable in two ways. The first is the trigger trill, which is relatively uncommon. C4 can be played in first position if the trigger is activated. Release the trigger and play D4 in its traditional position. The second is to play D4 in fourth position, move the slide quickly, and execute the lip trill via a fast lip slur. This method is recommended because it produces a more authentic sound. In measure thirty-eight, the second trombone has a trill on C4; refer to the description provided for the first trombone

trill in measure thirty-six. The first trombone has a trill on Eb4. The same two options apply to this trill as well. Eb4 can be played in first position when the trigger is activated, so the trigger trill is an option. Playing F4 in fourth position, moving the slide quickly, and lip trilling via a fast lip slur is also feasible. A third option for this lip trill involves playing both Eb4 and F4 in sixth position. Eb is on the seventh partial in sixth position, which means a true lip slur to F4 on the eighth partial is possible. While the tone on some of these notes is less resonant, this option will produce the most authentic trill on the trombone.

Multiple Tonguing – This technique could benefit the performers in this work but is not necessarily required. The fifth movement proceeds at a rapid tempo; therefore, the 6/8 measures, which are effectively triplets, are performed at a faster pace. Triple tonguing could make these difficult (m. 7–10 and similar passages, and m. 71–72) more approachable.

Tessitura – This musical aspect is of primary concern for the first trombonist. The part is not overly high, with only several notes occurring above Bb4 (C5, Db5, and D5). The more substantial concern is the time spent in the upper register. In movement one, the first trombone descends below Bb3 only eleven times (in three measures – m. 45, 46, 77, 78, and 82); it often stays above Eb4 and F4, which may prove physically demanding. In the second movement, the first trombone descends below Bb3 fifteen times. Most of these occurrences are A3, and the part has numerous sustained notes on A4 and Bb4. In movement four, the first trombone only descends below Bb3 six times. Many of these occurrences are also A3, and the part has numerous sustained notes (A4 and Bb4); the tempo is also much slower. In movement five, the first trombone descends below Bb3

seventeen times. This movement is not as demanding due to technical lines; however, the performer should account for this factor.

Piece Description:

This work by Jan Koetsier was one of the original works from the early 1970s for the trombone quartet. The first movement, “Andante con moto,” has a form defined by a refrain that occurs four times. It begins with the refrain, a sighing motive in staggered entrances initiated by the bass trombone. In measure one, the bass trombone plays Bb3 and F3; in measure two, the third trombone plays those same notes, while the bass trombone plays Gb3 and Db3, creating major thirds. In measure three, the second trombone plays the original figure, the third trombone plays the Gb3 and Db3, and the bass trombone plays D3 and A2. The sonority created resembles an augmented triad even though the notated pitches do not indicate that type of chord (e.g., D3–Gb3–Bb3 resembles an augmented triad, but the correct spelling would be D3–F#3–A#3). The first trombone enters in the fourth measure with Bb3 and C#4; the sonority on beats one and two mimics the one from the previous measure (but in first inversion), while the C#4 on beat three aligns with the note changes in the other three parts to create an F augmented major seventh chord (F2–A2–E3–C#4). Over the subsequent eight measures, the first trombone has a melody that has a high tessitura and is primarily one rhythmic pattern (dotted quarter; eighth; quarter). In measures nine through eleven, the lower three parts all play a quarter note on beat two; the second and third trombones are consistently a perfect fourth or fifth apart, while the bass trombone descends from Bb2 to G2. At Rehearsal A, the sighing motive repeats, with the only difference being that the second trombone joins the first in measures seventeen through twenty. At Rehearsal B, the two inner voices have sustained notes, while the outer parts interact dialogically; the lines are identical, except that the first trombone is an octave higher and plays

an eight-note line that decrescendos to the downbeat of Rehearsal C. At Rehearsal C, the ensemble divides into duos, with the first and second trombones playing a mostly homorhythmic line. In the third measure, the third and fourth trombones enter with a similar line; the lower three parts align rhythmically in the sixth measure. At Rehearsal D, an ascending arpeggio in the upper two parts begins the section. Again, it develops into a melody for the first trombone above accompaniment comprised of sustained notes tied over the bar line and quarter notes on beats two and three. At Rehearsal E, the sighing motive from the beginning returns, followed by a first trombone melody; the primary difference is that the accompaniment parts are more active. At Rehearsal F, the sighing motive occurs again but for the final time; however, instead of the established harmonic progression, Koetsier switches to a tonal construction that progresses to an Eb major triad in first inversion and resolves to an Ab major triad. The movement concludes with moving eighth notes amidst an allargando and diminuendo that resolves to a Bb major triad. Elements requiring attention are dynamics, intonation, and tessitura.

The second movement, “Allegro molto,” is the shortest work, lasting less than a minute. Like the previous movement, the bass trombone initiates a sequence of staggered entrances; however, they create a composite melody, lasting four measures rather than playing identical lines offset by a measure. In measures five through eight, the composer coordinates the parts with a three-note descending figure in preparation for another statement of the opening melody, transposed a major third higher. In measure thirteen, the ensemble divides into duos, playing the same rhythm a beat apart. The first and second trombones begin on beat one with unison A4s, while the third and fourth trombones begin on beat two an octave apart (A3 and A2). Leading up to Rehearsal B, the first and third trombones play the same note (until a change two measures before Rehearsal B), while the second trombone descends to A3 and the bass trombone ascends

to F3. At Rehearsal B, the ensemble emphasizes the downbeat, marked *sforzando* by Koetsier. Over the following sixteen measures, the outer voices primarily play sustained notes, while the inner parts have the main melody, which features numerous accidentals in both parts. At Rehearsal D, each part has a unique line, which creates a musical mosaic lasting eight measures. At Rehearsal E, the first part returns to sustained notes, while the second and third trombones play the melody, and the bass trombone plays the countermelody. This configuration results in the first trombone diverging from the rest of the ensemble at Rehearsal F. The first trombone has an articulated note on the upbeat of one and a sustained note over the bar line, while the lower three parts play an articulated note on the upbeat of two, followed by a sustained note. The movement concludes with a unison Eb3. Elements requiring attention include articulation, dynamics, style, and tessitura.

The third movement, “*Allegretto grazioso*,” utilizes mutes in all four parts. It begins with the first and second trombones, as the ensemble is in pairs, with five eighth notes on the downbeat of one, beat two, downbeat of three, and downbeat of four. The second trombone diverges from the first in the second measure with a triplet; otherwise, they play a homorhythmic line. The third and fourth trombones play a homorhythmic line, often having triplets or moving eighth notes while the upper two parts have a sustained note. Two measures before Rehearsal A, the lower three parts have a three-eighth-note cell that repeats three times, creating a hemiola-like figure; the first trombone supplements this with a sighing motive consisting of a quarter note and an eighth note. At Rehearsal A, the composer layers the two duos over one another. Three measures before Rehearsal B, the composer instructs all four trombonists to remove their mutes. The first trombone has two measures of rest following this instruction because it will become the primary melodic voice; contrastingly, the lower three parts have one or no counts to remove the

mute. Four of a Kind, in their recording of this work on their album *4 of a Kind 2*, do not remove mutes for this upcoming section; instead, they use the mutes to create an effective balance between the quasi-solo line and the accompaniment. The accompaniment in the lower three parts is eighth-note heavy, both two-note cells and more extended lines, while the solo features a mixture of stepwise motion and arpeggiated skips; many of the measures feature a quarter note followed by a dotted quarter note and three eighth notes (this appears notationally awkward since the dotted quarter note could be notated as a quarter tied to an eighth). Five measures before Rehearsal D, the melody becomes more angular, with the next measure including a rip from Ab3 to C5. At Rehearsal D, the material from the beginning returns; however, the composer adds lip trills to the upper two parts in the second and fourth measures. At Rehearsal E, the first trombone initiates a sequence of staggered entrances containing triplet figures, which results in the ensemble duos playing notes offset by an eighth note. The movement concludes with an F major triad at a pianissimo dynamic level. Elements requiring attention include articulation, glissandi, intonation, lip trills, and style.

The fourth movement, “Adagio,” is the longest of the work, more avant-garde and experimental than the rest, and utilizes mutes. It begins with the first and second trombones, as the ensemble is in duos again, on a unison A4. The first trombone glissandos to Bb4 on beat three, and the second trombone glissandos down to Ab4 on beat one of measure two and to E4 on the downbeat of measure three. The third and fourth trombones begin on beat two of measure three, a perfect fourth apart. They both glissando to the downbeat of measure five, maintaining the perfect fourth interval (F3 and Bb3). Similar musical motives occur for the subsequent eleven measures, and the duos generally remain separated. At Rehearsal A, the first trombone initiates a sequence of staggered entrances that occurs twice. The second trombone enters in the second and

sixth measures, the third trombone enters in the third and seventh measures, and the bass trombone enters in the fourth and eighth measures. Each part's line consists of three quarter notes and a dotted half note tied over the barline (all notes utilize glissando); each part ascends to a higher note on the second quarter note and glissandos down to the original note on beat three. At Rehearsal C, the first trombone plays two notes on the first two triplets of each beat; consistent with the movement's style, these figures contain glissando. Underneath this idea, the lower three parts play accented sustained notes. In conjunction with a crescendo, these two ideas build toward the movement's climax, which features an unprepared D5 in the first trombone as part of a Gb augmented triad. Following several other chords, the glissandi return in the lower two parts, and the composer instructs the ensemble to use mutes. The opening material and a "tempo 1" designation indicate a return of the opening texture, except for the muted timbre. The movement concludes with an F major triad. Elements requiring attention are glissandi, intonation, and time.

The fifth movement, "Allegro molto vivace," is a virtuosic conclusion to the work. It features a metric configuration alternating between 2/4 and 6/8 time (the eighth note does not stay the same). It begins with an opening four-measure phrase, where the lower three parts provide an eighth note line, and the first trombone plays several notes on specific upbeats. In measure five, the first statement of the melody begins with two half-note F4s in the first trombone. Faster eighth notes in the 6/8 follow these sustained notes; however, they resemble triplets in the 2/4 time. The line contains primarily stepwise motion, but there are several leaps from F4 to Bb4; the inner two voices play an angular descending line two measures before Rehearsal A. The texture repeats at Rehearsal A, but the bass trombone provides an angular line three measures before Rehearsal B. Its ascending and descending lines feature a Bb major triad

followed by chromaticism. At Rehearsal B, the first trombone initiates a sequence of staggered entrances that begins with at least two quarter notes. The 6/8 measures feature stepwise motion through upper and lower neighbors, and the subsequent 2/4 measures contain the more disjunct melodic content, outlining a G minor triad in root position and first inversion; the bass trombone does not have the moving lines following its quarter notes. At Rehearsal D, the opening material returns, continuing identically for sixteen measures. Rehearsal F begins at a subito piano dynamic level, with continuous eighth notes in the upper three parts and a dotted quarter eighth note figure in the bass trombone. Four measures before Rehearsal G, the first trombone has accented quarter notes while the lower three parts' lines become more chromatic; two measures later, the first trombone joins them, culminating in the climax on the downbeat of rehearsal G. Five measures later, the ensemble has a fermata on a Bb major seventh chord in first inversion, which allows the movement and piece to conclude on an octave Bb (Bb2 and Bb1). Elements requiring attention include articulation, dynamics, multiple tonguing, note accuracy, and time.

'Round Midnight – Thelonious Monk/arr. Slide Hampton

Composer(s):

Thelonious Monk (1917–1982)

Born in 1917, Thelonious Monk became one of the most influential jazz pianists ever. Scholars often include him as a progenitor of bebop in the post-World War II era. He mostly played in small groups, and his sound was associated with characteristics such as angularity, dissonant harmonies, and unusual intervals/rhythms.³⁹⁴ Additionally, many of his compositions have become jazz standards; some besides *'Round Midnight* are *Blue Monk* and *Epistrophy*. He died in 1982.

Cootie Williams (1910/1911–1985)

Born in 1910/1911, Cootie Williams was an influential jazz trumpeter whose mastery of mutes distinguished him from other musician of the time.³⁹⁵ In 1929, he assumed the role of plunger-mute trumpeter in Duke Ellington's band from Bubber Miley.³⁹⁶ He left Ellington's band in 1940; however, he would return to the ensemble twenty-two years later in 1962. One of his most famous recordings is the miniature concerto called *Concerto for Cootie*. He died in 1985.

Bernie Hanighen (1908–1976)

Born in 1908, Bernie Hanighen was a composer, lyricist, and record producer. "His biggest contribution to the list of jazz standards was his addition of lyrics to Thelonius Monk's *'Round Midnight* in collaboration with Clarence "Cootie" Williams."³⁹⁷ He died in 1976.

Arranger: Slide Hampton (1932–2021)

³⁹⁴ Editors of Encyclopedia Britannica, "Thelonious Monk," in *Encyclopedia Britannica*, (Encyclopedia Britannica, Inc. 1994–), published May 4, 1999; last modified June 4, 2025, <https://www.britannica.com/biography/Thelonious-Monk>.

³⁹⁵ Editors of Encyclopedia Britannica, "Cootie Williams," in *Encyclopedia Britannica*, (Encyclopedia Britannica, Inc., 1994–), published January 12, 2000; last modified September 11, 2024, <https://www.britannica.com/biography/Cootie-Williams>.

³⁹⁶ Ibid.

³⁹⁷ Sandra Burlingame, "Bernie Hanighen," Biographies, Jazzstandards.com, accessed February 17, 2025, https://www.jazzstandards.com/biographies/biography_51.htm.

Born in 1932, Slide Hampton started touring with the Hampton Band at age twelve.³⁹⁸ At the age of twenty, he started performing in big bands led by Lionel Hampton, Maynard Ferguson, Art Blakely, Dizzy Gillespie, Barry Harris, Thad Jones, Mel Lewis, and Max Roach.³⁹⁹ A great trombonist in his own right, he never achieved the fame or received the recognition J.J. Johnson did; instead, he gained appreciation as an arranger and composer.⁴⁰⁰ He consistently wrote new arrangements and original compositions for many of the ensembles he performed in; he received two Grammy Awards for his arrangements. In 2005, the National Endorsement for the Arts honored him as an NEA Jazz Master.⁴⁰¹ He died in 2021.

Title: *'Round Midnight*

Movements: One Movement

Duration: 4:00

Publisher: Advance Music Corporation owned by Alfred Music (Van Nuys, CA)

Copyright Date: 1962

Copy Quality: Jazz Notation

Availability: Available from numerous merchants; no digital download available

Difficulty: Virtuoso (5)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones[^]; bass trombone

Overall Range: Ab1 – C#5 (F5)

Trombone 1: Bb2 – C#5 (Optional F5)

Trombone 2: Ab2 – B4

³⁹⁸ "Slide Hampton, Trombonist, Arranger, Composer, Educator," Honors, NEA Jazz Masters Fellowships, access February 17, 2025, <https://www.arts.gov/honors/jazz/slide-hampton>.

³⁹⁹ Ibid.

⁴⁰⁰ Martin Johnson, "Slide Hampton, trombonist who also made a lasting impression as a master arranger, is dead at 89," HBGO, last modified November 22, 2021, <https://www.wbgo.org/2021-11-22/slide-hampton-trombonist-who-also-made-a-lasting-impression-as-a-master-arranger-is-dead-at-89>.

⁴⁰¹ "Slide Hampton, Trombonist, Arranger, Composer, Educator," Honors, NEA Jazz Masters Fellowships, access February 17, 2025.

Trombone 3: A2 – Bb4

Bass Trombone: Ab1 – Gb4

Clefs: Trombone 1 (bass); Trombone 2 (bass); Trombone 3 (bass); Bass Trombone (bass)

Mutes: N/A

Dedication: N/A

Publisher Overview/Score Description:

Alfred Music

“Features bass trombone. The bass trombone part is advanced level and the tenor trombone parts are medium to medium-advanced level.”⁴⁰²

Technical Considerations: Glissando; Intervals; Range; Rhythm

Glissando – This piece contains two written glissandi; they both occur three measures before the coda. The first trombone moves from F4 to D4, and the bass trombone moves from Gb2 to Ab2. Unlike some notated glissandi, the arranger indicates the timing of the notes within the glissando via the notated rhythm. There are also opportunities for scoops in the first trombone part.

Intervals – The lines in this chart are substantially more angular than the typical trombone quartet. Moving lines rarely contain stepwise motion. For example, refer to measure sixteen for an angular line in the bass trombone; for the first trombone, refer to measure twenty-four.

Range – The range of each trombone part is something to be cautious of when selecting this work. The first trombone part is manageable for most of this piece but could become a problem after Rehearsal C. The part has seven notes that are a Bb4 or higher afterward.

⁴⁰² ““Round Midnight,” Advance Music, Alfred Music, accessed February 17, 2025, <https://www.alfred.com/round-midnight/p/01-ADV3500/>.

The second and third trombones' range rises in the coda. The bass trombone range for this movement spans almost three octaves; the low and high ranges might pose a challenge.

Rhythm – Despite the slower tempo, this work contains challenging rhythms. The first and bass trombone parts both have thirty-second notes and sixteenth-note triplets. All parts contain sixteenth notes and eighth-note triplets.

Piece Description:

Slide Hampton's arrangement of Thelonious Monk's jazz standard for the trombone quartet provides opportunities for an ensemble to play jazz away from a rhythm section. There is no tempo marking, but the original composition is a ballad, and the speed should be more relaxed to accommodate the challenging lines. There is a fourteen-measure bass trombone feature in the composition's middle. The arrangement opens with staggered entrances across the ensemble. The bass trombone plays on the downbeat, the third trombone on the upbeat of one, the second on beat two, and the first trombone on the "la" of beat two. Over the next two measures, the parts interact through a crescendo-decrescendo to measure three. In measure three, another set of staggered entrances begins with the bass trombone; the second, first, and third trombonists follow in that order. Measure four contains a homorhythmic line between the first and third trombones in harmony, while measure five contains sixteenth-note triplets in preparation for the first forte in measure seven. A back-and-forth between the bass trombone and the rest of the ensemble highlights this conclusion of the opening ten measures. The bass trombone plays on the first and fourth sixteenth notes of beat one and the third sixteenth note of beat two; the rest of the ensemble plays on the other five sixteenth notes. The ensemble might be inclined to swing these sixteenth notes, but the ensemble should play them "straight." At Rehearsal A, the top three parts

supply the harmony, while the bass trombone plays a feature solo line. The feature lasts eight measures and contains numerous thirty-second note lines, sixteenth-note triplets, large intervallic jumps, and chromatic lines; it is also angular, moving through various registers (around three octaves). At Rehearsal B, it transforms into a duet with the first trombone. The first trombone line is more straightforward but contains a thirty-second note line and an angular sixteenth-note triplet line. The duet concludes with a fermata on a minor seventh. Two measures before Rehearsal C, trombones two and three enter; trombone one has an ascending scalar line that the second trombone assumes. If executed, a seamless transition occurs. The material at Rehearsal C does not include the bass trombone; instead, it features a passing melody around the top three parts. The second trombone continues the line from the previous section before passing it to the first trombone, which then passes it to the third trombone. Hampton then provides the first trombone with two measures of rest and has the bottom three parts crescendo into Rehearsal D. Rehearsal D features the entire ensemble and measures that subdivisions alternate between sixteenth notes and triplets. The opening sixteenth-note line on beat two is in unison in parts two and three and an octave higher in the first part. On beat three, the music breaks into harmony. The following music contains an optional F5 in the first part and glissandi in the first and fourth parts before settling on an Eb major triad fermata. The third trombone then plays a three-beat anacrusis to the coda, which utilizes triplet lines in all four parts. Each of the top three parts gets a moment to be the top part. Five measures before the conclusion, there is the first of three fermatas followed by a crescendo to the sixteenth-note idea from the introduction. The piece concludes on an Eb in octaves.

Chorale et Variations pour 4 Trombones – Jean-Pierre Müller

Composer: Jean-Pierre Müller (n.d.)

There is limited documentation on this twentieth-century composer and arranger. Among his compositions, which include various works for brass, are *Nocturne for Horn and Piano* (1956), *Concertino for Trombone and Piano* (1957), and *Concerto Minute for Trombone and Piano* (1960).

Arranger: N/A

Title: *Chorale et Variations pour 4 Trombones* (*Chorale and Variations for 4 Trombones*)

Movements: One Movement

1. Chorale
2. Variation 1 - Andante
3. Variation 2 - Commodo
4. Variation 3 - Moderato
5. Variation 4 - Vivo
6. Variation 5 - Maestoso
7. Variation 6 - Allegretto
8. Variation 7
9. Chorale

Duration: 7:00-9:00

Publisher: J. Maurer Editions Musicales (Brussels, Belgium)

Copyright Date: 1959

Copy Quality: Manuscript

Availability: Available only from Bandmusicshop.com with a shipping delay to the United States; no digital download

Difficulty: Virtuoso (5)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones[^]; bass trombone*

Overall Range: D2 – D5

Trombone 1: G3 – D5

Trombone 2: B2 – C5

Trombone 3: G2 – Bb4

Bass Trombone: D2 – G4

Clefs: Trombone 1 (treble); Trombone 2 (treble, bass); Trombone 3 (treble, bass); Bass Trombone (treble, bass)

Mutes: N/A

Dedication: N/A

Publisher Overview/Score Description: N/A

Technical Considerations: Articulation; Range; Tessitura

Articulation – Outside accents in variations two through four and some slur markings in variations one and two, there are no articulation markings provided by the composer.

This absence means the ensemble must make musically informed decisions and appropriate interpretations for each variation.

Range – Unlike many of the quartets in this annotated bibliography, the upper three parts all have musical material in the higher register. The first trombone begins on Bb4, and by the seventh and eighth measures of the “Choral” is required to play D5; the part also has multiple C5s in the “Choral” and Variation VI. The second trombone, while typically

written below the first trombone by the composer, ascends to C5 in Variation V. The third trombone, which is primarily notated in bass clef by the composer, ascends to Bb4 in Variation III.

Tessitura – This aspect is solely for the first trombone part, which only descends below C4 nineteen times, the lowest pitch being G3. This musical consideration becomes more prominent in the two “Choral” sections, Variation III, and Variation VI. While the “Choral” sections descend to Bb3, they typically remain within the treble clef staff; most of the lower notes occur in the second section. In Variation III, the first twenty-three measures may pose a tessitural difficulty. Finally, tessitura becomes critical to the music’s identity in Variation VI. The first trombone is the primary melodic voice in this late inversion, and there are only five notes that descend below F4 (three D4s, one Eb4, and one E4). Most of this melody oscillates between G4 and C5.

Piece Description:

This work by Jean-Pierre Müller is relatively unknown, and little information on it or its composer is available. Its use of manuscript notation, treble clef for the upper trombone parts, and traditional form makes it a unique entry in the trombone quartet repertoire. The “Choral,” which occurs at the beginning and end (an identical restatement), is a sixteen-measure phrase (twenty-four if the repeated measures are counted twice). The meter is 3/2, and the texture is primarily homorhythmic, with the occasional moving line in the lower three parts. The upper two trombones begin with a descending line that starts on Bb4 in the first trombone part and G4 in the second trombone part (the first trombone ascends to D5). The third part initially oscillates between D4 and C#4 before descending on beat two of measure two, and the bass trombone begins to descend on beat two of measure one, following an octave leap (G2 to G3). As the line

progresses, trombones one and two maintain a stepwise-dominated construction containing a mixture of diatonic and chromatic pitches; F# is a prominent pitch because the key signature signifies G minor rather than Bb major. Conversely, trombones three and four become more disjunct through octave leaps and leaps of a perfect fifth. For example, the third trombone leaps from D4 to F3 (m. 3), C4 to F3 (m. 5; m. 10), and G4 to G3 (m. 13), while the bass trombone leaps from F3 to F2 (m. 4), E3 to E2 (m. 7), and D3 to D2 (m. 15). This section ends with a G minor triad in root position.

The first variation, “Andante,” is a twenty-two-measure section (thirty-two measures if the repeated measures are counted) that features moving quarter-note lines in all four parts; however, the second and third trombones are the primary melodic voices. The second trombone begins the quarter-note line at the onset of the variation, descending through mostly diatonic stepwise motion. After the repeat, chromaticism becomes more common, with B3, G#3, and E3 becoming more prominent. The third trombone also consists of diatonic stepwise motion; however, this part transitions to chromatic lines before the repeated section’s conclusion. Its pitch content is identical to that of the second trombone, except for the addition of F#3. Simultaneously, the first trombone provides the harmonic foundation in the first four measures before yielding that function to the bass trombone for the subsequent six measures. The first trombone has more quarter-note lines as the music develops, remaining mostly diatonic (even with C#4); the bass trombone only has two measures of quarter notes in the entire section (m. 19-20). This section also concludes with a G minor triad.

The second variation, “Commodo,” is also twenty-two measures, less chromatic, and features more contrapuntal writing. It begins with the third and fourth trombones resting. In the first measure, the first trombone enters with a Bb4. The ensuing line descends to C4, spanning

almost an octave. The next measure features a second trombone entrance with the same line, initiating the fugue-like structure. The line is identical, except it begins on G4 and descends to A3. The third trombone enters in the third measure on Eb4. It begins similarly to the upper two parts, but a chain of half notes occurs after completing the initial line. The bass trombone enters in the fourth measure, beginning on C4. The subsequent four measures continue to develop this contrapuntal texture. In measure nine, the main melodic idea changes to a line containing note repetition followed by several skips to a sustained note. This line is shared among the ensemble (minus the third trombone), with the second and fourth trombones only having one iteration. The first trombone has a sequential melody in measure seventeen, containing mostly diatonic pitches. It begins on Eb4, eventually ascending to G4, and utilizes the upper/lower neighbor system and the figure from Herbert L. Clarke's second study. Simultaneously, the second trombone provides countermelodic statements, and the lower two parts have quarter notes that emphasize the downbeats; it concludes on a G minor triad.

The third variation, "Moderato," is the longest variation at forty-six measures and one of the more virtuosic sections in this work. It also departs from the established convention since the meter changes to 3/8. It retains the opening contrapuntal texture created by staggered entrances in the upper three parts. The third trombone initiates this chain of entrances on G4 (in treble clef). Following instances of note repetition, thirty-second notes are on the second half of beat two. This idea then repeats on Eb4 and C4 before concluding with G3 on the downbeat of measure seven, effectively outlining a C minor triad. The second trombone enters in measure three. Its line is identical for the first five measures, changing in measure six to avoid the resolution to G3; instead, the line continues for several more measures and eventually resolves on D4. In the fifth measure, the first trombone enters with a line identical to the third. The fourth

trombone does not enter until the eighth measure, beginning on an F#3 that moves through Eb3, D3, and C3 to arrive on Bb2. This line initially appears to be restated in measures ten through twelve, starting on Bb4; however, the material deviates after the second measure. As the variation progresses, sixteenth and thirty-second notes increase in all four parts, and the lines combine disjunct motion with conjunct stepwise motion. Eighteen measures from the variation's conclusion, a sequence begins in the first trombone part that lasts for three measures; it is diatonic. The first and second trombones hint at the opening melody beginning on F4; however, it is never fully realized due to the syncopated lines in the lower two parts and ascending scalar passages in trombones one, three, and four. It concludes with a G minor triad, with the second trombone being the top voice.

The fourth variation, "Vivo," is sixteen measures long (twenty-four if counting repeated measures), returns to 3/2, and uses all four parts to create a composite melody that resembles a hocket texture. The second trombone has sustained notes that serve as a drone pitch. The first, third, and fourth trombones play half notes on different beats. The bass trombone plays on beat one, the third plays on beat two, and the first plays on beat three. The first five measures serve as a palindrome in the following order: Bb-A-G-A-Bb. The bass trombone plays Bb2, A2, G2, A2, and Bb2. The third trombone plays the same pitches an octave higher, and the first trombone plays the same pitches two octaves higher. The third and fourth trombones continue to C2 and C3 without the first trombone, and the repeated section concludes on a D major triad. The second section following the repeat only utilizes the upper three parts as the bass trombone rests (except for the final measure). The quasi-hocket continues outlining triadic chords and other non-tertian harmonies. The third trombone plays on beat one, the second on beat two, and the first on beat three. Among these chords, which often overlap because of the offset entrances, are a G minor

triad, G major triad, C minor triad in second inversion, F major triad, and a conclusion on a Bb major triad.

The fifth variation, “Maestoso,” is sixteen measures long (thirty-two if repeated measures are counted). It combines half notes with moving lines consisting of eighth and quarter notes. In the first section, which lasts four measures, the first trombone has a line comprised of half and whole notes. It has the only note on the first beat of the variation and supplies the harmonic foundation for the rest of the melodic content occurring in the lower three parts. The material in the lower three parts begins with the third trombone on beat two (G4); trombone two begins on beat three (G4), and the bass trombone begins on the downbeat of measure three (C4). The second and third trombone lines are identical except for the last note. Also, all the lines are descending. In the second section, the first and second trombones exchange roles as the second trombone provides the harmonic foundation using half notes in the first four measures; they return to the original configuration in the fifth measure. The remaining eight measures require virtuosic playing from the lower three parts, which contain expressive scalar lines, especially the second trombone (which has an eighth note line that lasts three measures and culminates on C5). It concludes with a G minor triad.

The sixth variation, “Allegretto,” is thirty-two measures long with two repeats and a first and second ending for the second section. Unlike the previous variations, this variation is in a dance style. The first trombone returns as the primary melodic voice, often staying in the middle of the treble clef staff. The opening line begins on D4, quickly ascending to C5 in the fourth measure. The remaining four measures of the opening section maintain a high tessitura and conclude with B4. Simultaneously, the second trombone primarily provides accompaniment material, the third trombone provides a countermelody in this first section that consists of more

half notes and oscillates between a smaller group of pitches, and the bass trombone provides a bass line in contrary motion. After the repeat, the second section begins similarly. The first trombone still has the melody, but instead of starting below the staff, it begins on Bb4 and, through note changes to G4 and Ab4, reaches C5 in the fourth measure again. The lower three parts are more active, especially the second and third parts. The first ending concludes on a perfect fifth, and the variation concludes with a G major triad.

The seventh variation has no title. It is twenty-six measures (fifty-two if repeats are counted). It resembles the third variation but is unique via alternating 2/4 and 6/8 measures throughout. It is potentially the second most technically challenging variation. Outside the musical challenges, the manuscript notation makes this variation difficult to read and meters difficult to determine. It begins with the upper two trombone parts providing a homorhythmic texture in harmony. Notably, the first trombone part is approximately an octave lower than the previous variation. The third and bass trombones enter with a similar line two measures later. The musical content that follows centers on tied notes across bar lines. The first, second, and bass trombones all have eighth notes following these ties, while the third trombone has thirty-second notes on the last sixteenth note of each beat. The remaining three sections, which are four measures, four measures, and six measures, are all unified by a typical 6/8 rhythm (eighth, two sixteenths, eighth). This rhythm occurs in all four parts across all registers. The first and fourth trombones have more melodic configurations of this rhythm, often descending. Conversely, the second and third trombones remain static, with only subtle note changes occurring. The music is primarily diatonic with a conclusion on a G minor triad. The “Choral” then returns for the piece’s conclusion. Aspects worth addressing are articulation, intonation, range, style, and tessitura.

5 Sketches for 4 Trombones – Buxton Orr

Composer: Buxton Orr (1924 – 1997)

Born in 1924, Buxton Orr left a career in medicine to study music with Benjamin Frankel.⁴⁰³ In 1965, he joined the Guildhall School of Music and Drama;⁴⁰⁴ he founded the New Music Ensemble in 1970.⁴⁰⁵ He was most active in academia during the 1970s and 1980s. He conducted the London Jazz Composer's Orchestra (1970-1980), received commissions from numerous institutions (some include Glasgow University, the Saltire Society, the BBC, Radio Scotland), and served as the Composer-in-Residence and Associate Director of the Music Theatre Studio Ensemble at the Banff Centre for Arts in Canada.⁴⁰⁶ He received the Seagrams Prize of the American National Theatre Network in 1988 with Michael Bawtree for his work here.⁴⁰⁷ He music of many genres and devoted the final seven years of his life to composition. He died in 1997.

Arranger: N/A

Title: *5 Sketches for 4 Trombones*

Movements: Five Movements

1. Madrigale – Flessibile (eighth note equals 240 bpm)
2. Cantilena – Andante (quarter note equals 66 bpm)
3. Scherzo anifonico – Allegro (dotted quarter note equals 112 bpm)
4. Marcia fúnebre – Moderato (quarter note equals 72 bpm)
5. Campana (quarter note equals 224 bpm)

Included in the NYSSMA Solo & Ensemble Catalog.

⁴⁰³ “Buxton Orr,” Composers, British Music Collection, accessed March 11, 2025, <https://britishmusiccollection.org.uk/composer/buxton-orr>.

⁴⁰⁴ Ibid.

⁴⁰⁵ Ibid.

⁴⁰⁶ Ibid.

⁴⁰⁷ Ibid.

Duration: 8:30

Publisher: Robert King Music owned by Alphonse Leduc Editions Musicales (Pembroke, MA)

Copyright Date: 1972

Copy Quality: Engraved

Availability: Available from numerous merchants; no digital download available

Difficulty: Virtuoso (5)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones; bass trombone

*The composer suggests two tenor trombones and two bass trombones

Overall Range: Bb1 – C5

Trombone 1: F#2 – C5

Trombone 2: B2 – A4

Trombone 3: G2 – G4

Bass Trombone: Bb1 – C4

Clefs: Trombone 1 (tenor, bass); Trombone 2 (bass); Trombone 3 (bass); Bass Trombone (bass)

Mutes: Straight mute in all four parts of movement three; straight mute in the third and fourth trombones in measures twenty through twenty-five of movement four.

“Experiment could be tried using two different sorts of mutes (say, fibre and metal mutes) as long as the grouping of the four instruments by pairs is preserved.”⁴⁰⁸ – Buxton Orr

Dedication: Denis Wick

Publisher Overview/Score Description:

Buxton Orr

⁴⁰⁸ Buxton Orr, *5 Sketches for 4 Trombones* (Pembroke, MA: Robert King Music, 1972), 7.

“This work was written at the suggestion of Denis Wick to show some of the range, flexibility and variety of the trombone quartet which has to date drawn from composers music of a predominantly somber and static character. The combination written for is two tenor and two bass trombones (TTBB). However, all movements except movement 3 can be played by three tenors and 1 bass (TTTB).”⁴⁰⁹

Hickey's Music Center

“In actuality, all [five] movements can be played TTTB trombone or even 4 tenors (TTTT).”⁴¹⁰

Technical Considerations: Intonation; Mixed Meter; Style

Intonation – The harmony throughout most of this piece is non-traditional and avoids consonant triads in most instances. For example, the final chord of the fifth movement contains Bb1, D3, C4, and G4. Intonation is of utmost importance in the third and fourth movements. Mutes are present throughout the entire movement in all four parts. Precise adjustments are essential to the success of each duo. In the fourth movement, the first and third trombones are in octaves almost the entire time. This foundation must be consistent for the other musical lines throughout. Also, mutes are present in the third and fourth trombones for five measures.

Mixed Meter – This aspect of the piece is of primary concern in the first and last movements. The first movement contains eight different meters; they are: 3/8, 5/8, 6/8, 9/8, 2/4, 3/4, 4/4, and 3/2. Rarely do any of these occur in adjacent measures, so keeping the eight-note beat consistent is essential. For examples of adjacent and non-adjacent

⁴⁰⁹ “Orr, Buxton Sketches (5),” Trombone Quartets, Hickeys.com, accessed March 11, 2025, https://www.hickeys.com/music/chamber_music/brass_ensembles/trombone_quartets/products/sku014362-orr-buxton-sketches-5.php.

⁴¹⁰ Ibid.

meters, refer to measures thirty through thirty-nine and forty through forty-three. In the last movement, the beat remains consistent even though it begins and ends in 5/4, and the middle section is in 3/2; they do not alternate.

Style – While style for many pieces centers on matching ensemble members with the person who played before them, it is less of a priority (it is still prevalent due to staggered entrances, just not at the forefront). The concern for this piece deals with the unique styles of each movement. The first movement is a modern interpretation of a madrigal; therefore, the ensemble would benefit from listening to some madrigals from the sixteenth century. The second movement, “Cantilena,” is not necessarily connected to a historical genre but should be performed in a lyrical style. The third movement is a modern interpretation of antiphonal composition. Listening to traditional antiphonal music like Giovanni Gabrielli’s would enhance understanding. The fourth movement is a funeral march. Listening to famous compositions in this style (e.g., the second movement of Beethoven’s Third Symphony) would inform the ensemble’s interpretation. The fifth movement is more programmatic but not explicitly.

Piece Description:

This quartet by Buxton Orr is an underperformed work that features five movements in unique styles that challenge each ensemble member. The first movement, “Madrigale,” is Orr’s interpretation of the sixteenth-century Italian and English genre. It proceeds at a moderate tempo, and the composer provides performance practice suggestions with an asterisk in each part. Orr writes, “Tonal contrast for this passage, and analogous passages (measures 20 & 55) is best obtained ‘In Hat.’ Return to ‘Open’ at the next dynamic.”⁴¹¹ Mixed meter is prevalent, and the

⁴¹¹ Buxton Orr, *5 Sketches for 4 Trombones*, 1.

movement begins with a 4/4 measure containing staggered entrances initiated by the first trombone; the third trombone enters next, followed by the second trombone, and the bass trombone concludes the measure, resulting in quartal harmony. In measure two, the first trombone leaps to F4 and assumes the primary melodic role. The line primarily descends and contains mostly stepwise motion via chromaticism. While this line occurs, the lower three parts emphasize the various meters through accompaniment figures. The opening phrase concludes in measure six with half and dotted half notes. Measure seven contains the first asterisk in trombones one through three, and the second trombone initiates a new composite melody with the third trombone. In measure eleven, the music resets, and the first trombone provides the melody again. It remains in stepwise motion but is less chromatic and contains more sustained notes. The new addition to this texture is a subtle countermelody in the third trombone, which develops into a solo figure in measure seventeen. In measure twenty, the second trombone reintroduces the material from measure seven as well as the asterisks; however, the phrase is not composite, lasting several measures before the next part enters. The dynamic is pianissimo, and the melody leads to the first homorhythmic section in measure twenty-six. This texture and line alternate between 5/8, 2/4, and 3/4 measures. It lasts until measure forty, where all four parts rest for at least two counts. The staggered entrances from the opening return in measure forty-one, occurring across several measures rather than within one. They also prepare for the first trombone to reassume its primary melodic role. The most significant change from measure two is that it begins on C5, a fifth higher. In measure fifty-one, the third trombone assumes the primary melodic role for the first time before the asterisks return with the second trombone. The movement ends with stacked perfect fourths (E2, D3, G3, and A3). Elements requiring attention are articulation, dynamics, mixed meters, and style.

The second movement, “Cantilena,” is Orr’s treatment of a lyrical melody for trombone. As the soloist, the first trombonist bears the melodic responsibility throughout this movement. It begins with the lower three parts, which all rest on beat one. The bass trombone has a quarter note followed by a half note, while the inner parts have four eighth and four sixteenth notes (the last eighth note is tied to the first sixteenth note). In measure two, all three parts have adjacent Scottish snaps in harmony, and the first trombone enters on the upbeat of beat three with a sixteenth note line on F#4. The melody’s subsequent pitch content is mainly diatonic, and its moving notes occur when the lower three parts have sustained notes; the converse applies to the accompaniment figures. In measure six, the music (accompaniment and melody) reverts; however, the Scottish snaps do not appear again. Measure ten indicates the first divergence from the opening texture as the accompaniment features quarter notes, and the melody contains more eighth notes. These changes and a crescendo to mezzo forte facilitate the transition to the subito piano in measure twelve and the disjunct melodic fragments the first and second trombones share. These fragments eventually develop into descending staggered entrances in measure fifteen, where the Scottish snap returns in the inner voices. The staggered entrances continue into measure sixteen with an ascending line; however, this musical content is much more disjunct, featuring large leaps in the upper three parts. Since it co-occurs with a crescendo, the movement’s climax occurs on the downbeat of measure eighteen. The bass trombone rests for six measures, while the second and third trombones continue to accompany the first, whose melody is more complex than the opening. In measure twenty-five, the bass trombone reenters the texture as the first trombone plays a quarter-note melody, and the second and third trombones play moving accompaniment lines. The Scottish snap returns in measure twenty-seven in the lower parts, and the movement concludes with a C dominant seventh chord in third inversion

following an ornamental figure in the first trombone. Elements requiring attention include balance and blend, flexibility, and style.

The third movement, “Scherzo antifonico,” is Orr’s interpretation of antiphonal music and proceeds at a lively tempo. All four parts utilize straight mutes for the entire movement. Concerning their implementation, Orr wrote instructions in the score. The score states, “Experiments could be tried using two different sorts of mutes (say, fibre and metal) as long as the group of the four instruments by pairs is preserved.”⁴¹² It begins with the ensemble divided into the pairs Orr mentions (the first and second trombones juxtaposed against the third and fourth trombones). The first and second trombones play a unison Db4, primarily dotted half notes on different beats; the first part plays on beats one and three, and the second trombone plays on beats two and four. The third and fourth trombones enter in measure two with eighth note lines typically separated by a whole step. In measures three and four, the ensemble continues with this juxtaposition. The first and the second trombones have a syncopated line consisting of a hemiola (second part) and the same rhythm offset by an eighth note; an eighth note also offsets the third and fourth trombones. This alternation of melodic material continues until measure fourteen; however, the duos become less homorhythmic, even containing unrelated figures. In measure fifteen, the layered hemiola texture returns in the upper two parts while the lower two parts play on beat three. Two measures later, the duos switch roles, but it only lasts one measure, and the upper parts play on beats three and four. In measure nineteen, each duo has six notes offset by an eighth note. The lower three parts play on the first and third eighth notes of beat one, while the upper two play on the second eighth of beat one. These patterns then alternate for the remaining beats of the measure. The previous texture continues sonically in measure

⁴¹² Buxton Orr, *5 Sketches for 4 Trombones*, 7.

twenty, but the rhythm and patterns change, resulting in the parts aligning rhythmically on specific eighth notes. Over the subsequent nine measures, Orr blends all the previous ideas dialogically, creating a compelling musical texture. In measure thirty (arguably measure twenty-nine), the second and third trombones assume the primary melodic roles. The movement concludes with a major sixth (C2 and A4) in the outer voices on beat three and a major third (Bb2 and D4) on the third eighth note of beat three in the inner voices. Elements requiring attention include dynamics, intonation, and style.

The fourth movement, “Marcia funebre,” is a funeral march, as its title suggests, and it is the longest movement of the work. It begins with the upper three parts playing a homorhythmic line in harmony; the first and third trombones are an octave apart, while the second trombone provides notes that produce various intervals. The bass trombone enters on beat two of measure four with a descending line from Eb2 to C2. This melodic fragment utilizes the minor second interval (Db2 to C2) to emphasize the intended expressive effect. Over the following thirteen measures, the first and third trombones remain homorhythmic and an octave apart. The second trombone often aligns rhythmically with the first and third parts; however, it deviates from them during sustained passages with half notes and dotted quarter notes or with quarter-note triplets. These triplets often contain the minor second interval, like the bass trombone fragment. Contrasted with these interrelated parts, the bass trombone provides several versions of its motive from measure four; the primary occurrence features a major third (G#2 to E2) and a minor second (E2 to Eb2). In measure eighteen, the lower two parts rest while the upper two parts play a line marked *leggero* by the composer. It contains a quarter note tied to a dotted eighth note followed by two thirty-second notes and nine triplets. It concludes with two eighth notes and a quarter note tied over the bar line. In measure twenty, the texture shifts as the upper

parts rest, and the lower parts have the melodic material. The differences are that the third and fourth trombones play with mute, and their line only contains eighth notes and triplets. Following a caesura, the opening material returns; however, the first and third trombones are not entirely in octaves, and the bass trombone has a minor third motive rather than its original motive. The movement concludes with the bass trombone descending from Ab₂ to F₂ via Gb₂, yielding a final chord containing F₂, A₃, F#₄, and A₄. Elements requiring attention are intonation, rhythm, and style.

The fifth movement, “Campane,” is based on the French word *campane*, which comes from the Latin word *campāna*, meaning bell or bell-shaped thing.⁴¹³ It proceeds at a lively tempo, with the opening and closing phrases containing a 5/4 meter (and 6/4 for the last three measures) and the rest of the movement containing a 3/2 meter. It begins with staggered entrances that emulate bell tones. The opening two measures, which position the second trombone above the first in pitch, feature the following pattern: F₄, D₄, G₄, E₄, and B₃. Measure three contains F₄, D₄, E₄, C#₄, and G#₃ in the same pattern. The subsequent three measures feature a longer sequence of entrances. It occurs as follows: D₄, B₃, C#₄, G₃, D₃, B₃, C#₄, D₃, B₃, F₃. In measure seven, the 3/2 begins with two F₃s in the second trombone. In measures eight and nine, the first, third, and bass trombones play a chord containing Bb₃, Eb₃, and D₄. On beat two of measure nine, the second trombone begins a solo line featuring note repetition on A₃; it evokes a recitative style. In measure eleven, the staggered bell tones return in tandem with a crescendo, leading to a third trombone melody on the anacrusis to measure fifteen. The first homorhythmic moment occurs in measure twenty, and it initiates a short sequence of alternating phrases between the homorhythmic and bell-tone textures. At measure thirty, there are several

⁴¹³ “Campane,” Wikitionary.org, accessed May 23, 2025, <https://en.wiktionary.org/wiki/campane>.

moving lines occurring at once. They produce a texture comprising four or three unique lines (as the outer voices are sometimes homorhythmically related). Following a decrescendo into measure forty, the bass trombone restarts the bell tones, initially as the highest voice before the first trombone plays C4 on the downbeat of measure forty-one. The pattern occurs twice in the following order: Ab3, A2, Eb3, G3, C4. In measure forty-three, following another crescendo, a sequence revolving around an ascending C minor tetrachord in the first trombone occurs. In measure fifty, the ensemble divides into a less common duo (first and fourth; second and third) for a short, articulated section; this six-measure phrase has its own ABA structure. The 5/4 meter returns in measure fifty-six, but the bell-tones do not. After a final crescendo, the movement and piece conclude with a chord consisting of Bb1, D2, C4, and G4. Elements requiring attention are articulation, dynamics, tone, and style.

Trombone Quartet No. 1 “Densities” – Anthony Plog

Composer: Anthony Plog (b. 1947)

Born in 1947, Anthony Plog has become one of the most versatile musicians working today. As a performer, he has played in numerous orchestras such as the Los Angeles Philharmonic, Los Angeles Chamber Orchestra, the Malmo Symphony, and the Basel Symphony;⁴¹⁴ he has also had a successful solo career. As an instructor, he has taught at institutions such as the University of Southern California (USC), Indiana University (IU), and several universities in Europe;⁴¹⁵ he currently teaches at the Freiburg Musik Hochschule in Germany. As a prominent contemporary composer,⁴¹⁶ his style mixes modern sounds and ideas with a classical approach. Many of his early compositions are for brass; they have continued to make up a significant portion of his now diversified catalog.⁴¹⁷ Some of his other works for tenor trombone include *Three Miniatures* (1994), *Postcards III* (1996), *Four Themes on Portraits of Goya* (2002), and *Divergent Roads* (2014); some works for bass trombone include *Postcards IV* (2010) and *Initiatives* (2014).

Arranger: N/A

Title: *Trombone Quartet No. 1 “Densities”*

Movements: Five Movements

1. Lento (quarter note equals 56-72 bpm)/Allegro (dotted quarter note equals 128-148 bpm)
2. Allegro (half note equals 126-140 bpm)
3. Adagio (quarter note equals 64-72 bpm)/Allegro (half note equals 90-102 bpm)
4. Allegro (half note equals 156-172 bpm)

⁴¹⁴ “Biography,” About, AnthonyPlog.com, last modified 2025, <https://anthonyplog.com/about/biography>.

⁴¹⁵ Ibid.

⁴¹⁶ Ibid.

⁴¹⁷ Ibid.

5. Lento (eighth note equals 72-82 bpm)/Allegro (half note equals 94-104)

Duration: 16:00

Publisher: Editions Bim (Sion, Switzerland)

Copyright Date: 1998/2002

Copy Quality: Engraved

Availability: Available from numerous merchants; no digital download available

Difficulty: Virtuoso (5)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones; bass trombone

Overall Range: C2 – Bb4

Trombone 1: B2 – Bb4

Trombone 2: A2 – A4

Trombone 3: D2 – A4

Bass Trombone: C2 – F4

Clefs: Trombone 1 (bass); Trombone 2 (bass); Trombone 3 (bass); Bass Trombone (bass)

Mutes: Whisper Mute (Mvt. 1; all four parts); Straight Mute (Mvt. 2 – Bass Trombone; Mvt. 4 – Trombones 1 and 3)

Dedication: Branimir Slokar

Publisher Overview/Score Description:

Hickey's Music Center

“Large scale five movement work from 1998/2002. Employs a great deal of rhythmic activity and interdependence among the four parts. All parts are in bass clef.”⁴¹⁸

Technical Considerations: Intonation; Note Accuracy; Style

⁴¹⁸ “Plog, Anthony Quartet No. 1 – Densities,” Trombone Quartet, Hickeys.com, accessed February 27, 2025, <https://www.hickeys.com/search/products/sku055529.php>.

Intonation – This musical aspect is crucial to this work’s first and fifth movements.

Generally, the harmony is predominantly non-triadic, but intermittently, a triad occurs, especially at a movement’s conclusion. In the first movement, the opening eight measures contain three two-measure phrases, of which the first two conclude with a fermata; all end with three adjacent half steps. The fermata in measure two contains Bb3, B3, and A3 in trombones one through three. The fermata in measure four contains Db4, C4, and B3; the last chord in measure six contains Ab4, A4, and G4. In measure seventeen, this configuration returns with different pitch content, including D4, C#4, and C4; in measure nineteen, the pitches change to G4, F4, and F#4. Similar material recurs in the fifth movement’s second “Lento” section; however, there are fewer variations. It is essential for the ensemble to balance all three pitches equally for an accurate performance.

Note Accuracy – While crucial to the performance of any work, note accuracy is essential to this composition due to its chromatic construction. This melodic construction is most prevalent in the fast sections of movements one, three, and five; it is also prominent in both duet movements. A prime example of a chromatic texture from movement one occurs in measures fifty-eight and fifty-nine. All four parts divide into two duos (first and second trombones juxtaposed against the third and fourth trombones), layering two unique patterns. In the second movement, the bass trombone part is highly chromatic in measures five and twelve. The example in measure five mixes stepwise chromatic motion with two skips; the example in measure twelve mixes half steps and whole steps. In movement three, the lines are slightly less chromatic. A primary example from the “Allegro” occurs in measure forty-six in the first trombone; it combines skips and whole steps but minimal adjacent chromatic motion. In movement four, the first

trombone's opening measure features elements of chromaticism following a descending Bb major triad. Another example occurs in the third trombone in measure twelve; it is more conventionally chromatic. In movement five, the entire "Allegro" abounds with chromatic lines. Due to their prevalence, measures fifty-eight and fifty-nine, with their combination of skips and steps, are an effective representation. Precise and accurate slide technique is essential to executing all these lines.

Style – The styles found in each movement are largely consistent, so the essential task for each ensemble member is to perform in the style established by the person who precedes them. This aspect is crucial to the contrapuntal texture in the "Lento" section of the third movement. The third trombone introduces what is essentially the subject of a fugue. The responsibility of the second trombone is to match the style established by the third trombone when it enters in measure nine. The same applies to the first trombone and the bass trombone in their respective entrances (measures twenty-one and twenty-two). This concept also applies to the composite melodies found in the first movement (measures forty through forty-four) and the fourth movement (measures one through four).

Piece Description:

This modern work for the trombone quartet by Anthony Plog contains three longer movements interrupted by two short duet movements that serve as interludes. It will challenge even the best of ensembles. The first movement, "Lento – Allegro – Lento," contains an ABA' form and combines challenging intonation and highly technical lines. The opening lento begins with the upper three parts in dense harmony created by staggered note changes; its primary pattern has all three parts start in unison, followed by note changes on either beat two or beat four by the second trombone and beat three by the third trombone. The first trombone also has

note changes, but they happen during the line's extension, prolonging the dissonance. The primary pitch content utilizes three notes within a whole step interval; there are five versions (opening statement and four variations). The opening statement in measures one and two contain A3, Bb3, and B3; the second version in measures three and four contain B3, C4, and Db4; the third version in measures five, six, and seven features G4, Ab4, and A4; the fourth version in measures sixteen and seventeen contain C4, C#4, and D4; the fifth version in measures eighteen and nineteen contain F4, F#4, and G4. The bass trombone is limited in this section, not entering until measure seven with a melodic line comprised of two-note cells. This entrance initiates a duet between trombones three and four and trombones one and two. The bass trombone plays a descending quartet note line in measures nineteen through twenty-one. The "Allegro" begins in measure twenty-three with all four parts using whisper mute. The tempo is fast, and the lines are highly chromatic, oscillating between half steps (both ascending/descending). It begins with the first trombone, establishing its character; the second trombone enters in measure twenty-seven, slightly offset from the first part. The third and fourth trombones enter in measure thirty-one, and Plog contrasts them with the upper two parts. In the following three measures, all four parts play a homorhythmic chromatic line in harmony featuring contrasting motion in different parts in specific moments. The mutes are gone by measure thirty-eight, and the first and second trombones perform a composite line created with three-note cells, each with a different motion. In measure forty-one, the lower two trombones enter with a sustained-note melody underneath the eighth note figures in the upper two parts. Four measures later, the two duos switch roles as the first and second trombones begin playing the sustained-note line; the second trombone is an octave higher than the first trombone. This texture continues until measure fifty-three, featuring duplets. The duos continue in measure fifty-three, but all parts have eighth notes, and they begin

to align rhythmically in measure fifty-five. In measure sixty, the bass trombone has an unaccompanied line that lasts four measures before the third trombone enters in measure sixty-four. These lines are offset by one eighth note, creating a composite line. The second trombone enters in measure sixty-eight with three-note cells. The first trombone enters in measure seventy-two with three-note cells on the beat opposite of the second trombone. These four ideas create a deceptive texture comprised of two lines. All four parts align rhythmically in measure seventy-seven. It only lasts one measure because the upper two parts have quarter-note triplets. The “Lento” returns in measure eighty-five. There are several fermatas, and the third trombone becomes the primary moving line with quarter notes on the anacrusis to measure ninety-five. The melody passes to the bass trombone in measure 103, and the movement concludes with a perfect fifth/perfect fourth between Bb2, F3, and Bb3. Elements requiring attention are dynamics, intonation, note accuracy, and style.

The second movement, “Allegro,” is a duet between the second and fourth trombones; the second trombone is open while the bass trombone is muted. It begins with the bass trombone, which immediately establishes a rhythmic pattern across numerous meters. The groove consists of notes on the downbeat, the upbeat of beat two, and varying eighth notes that typically serve as an anacrusis to the next downbeat. In measure five, it has a descending chromatic line that functions as a reestablishment of the phrase and prepares for the second trombone’s entrance in measure six. The second trombone plays a sustained C4 over three measures before switching to Eb4 in measure nine and G4 in measure ten. As the music progresses, the bass trombone part remains relatively consistent. The most prominent changes are crescendos in measure twelve and measures nineteen and twenty, and the bass line transposes a whole step higher in fifteen. The second trombone melody alters notes more rapidly, and Plog adds D4, F4, and A4 to its latter

half. In measure twenty-one, the bass trombone has a syncopated line comprised of three C2s. In contrast, the second trombone has a descending melodic line consisting of minor thirds followed by stepwise motion. In measures twenty-three through twenty-five, the second trombone moves in contrary motion to its previous line. The line ascends with a higher note occurring on the upbeat of beats two and four following a sustained note. The bass trombone plays a sequential line that begins on C2 (m. 23), is transposed up a minor third (Eb2), and finally transposed up an augmented second (F#2). In measure twenty-eight, the music resets, but the second trombone begins a minor third higher, as does the bass trombone. In measure thirty-one, the two parts switch roles as the second trombone plays the groove, and the bass trombone plays the melody. This melody contains more eighth notes and more chromaticism. The parts are offset in the final four measures, often aligning rhythmically on different beats depending on the measure. Following two dissonant chords (C4/D4; E3/Eb4), the duet concludes with a perfect fifth (F3/C4). Elements requiring attention include articulation, dynamics, intonation, and phrasing.

The third movement, “Adagio – Allegro,” begins with a twenty-nine-measure contrapuntal section. The third trombone has an eight-measure solo that consists of both angular lines and stepwise motion. It begins with a sixteenth-note figure outlining a C minor triad that resolves to an Ab on beat three and leads to sustained notes in measure two. The third measure contains chromatic eighth and sixteenth notes that descend to E3 on the downbeat of measure four. The phrase resets in measure five following a breath mark; it initially appears to be a restatement, but it diverges from the original on beat four. In measure six, the same rhythmic pattern occurs a major seventh higher, allowing for a more angular descent involving eighths and triplets. In measure nine, the third trombone rests, and the second trombone begins playing the same line as the third trombone, except it is transposed a perfect fifth higher. In measure eleven,

the third trombone reenters with a countermelody. The two parts briefly align rhythmically for the first two counts of measure fifteen. On the second two beats, the second trombone has triplets, and the third trombone has eighth notes; they swap rhythms twice in the next measure. The first trombone enters with the main theme in measure twenty-one, a step higher than the original statement. The bass trombone enters in measure twenty-two, a half step higher than the original statement. The next seven measures contain a highly contrapuntal texture created from the composer's choice to offset the outer parts by one measure in addition to the inner-part countermelody; the section concludes with a major third between Bb3 and D4. The "Allegro" section begins in measure thirty with a melody reminiscent of Serocki's *Sonatina for Trombone and Piano*. The line passes to the second trombone in the next three measures, which develops into a composite melody between the parts. In measure forty, the ensemble divides into duos. The second and fourth trombones play Bb3 and Db4, while the first and third trombones play D4 and F4. The first duo starts on beat two, and the second on beat three. Following seven B3s in a row in the bass trombone, an eighth note line in the first trombone (supplemented by the second and third trombones) begins. This idea and the bass trombone alternate for the next eleven measures. In measure fifty-nine, a sustained-note melody begins in the second trombone; it initiates the return of the "Adagio's" opening melody at a faster tempo. Additionally, the third trombone plays chromatic lines underneath the first trombone. This new texture continues until measure ninety-four when the ensemble divides into duos again. The second and bass trombones enter in measures seventy-eight and seventy-nine. In measure ninety-seven, the third and fourth trombones play octaves on each beat of each measure. Two measures later, the first and second trombones enter with eighth notes designed by the composer to resemble the material from measure forty-six. This texture continues until measure 112, where the ensemble transitions to

half notes that begin with a sforzando piano and crescendo over two bars. The first and the bass trombones then alternate figures, leading to whole notes and a resolution on an F major triad.

Elements requiring attention include note accuracy and style.

The fourth movement, “Allegro,” is a duet between the first and third trombones. Both parts are muted, and the meter often alternates between 7/8 and 4/4; the configuration of the 7/8 is 3+2+2. The first trombone begins with a descending Bb major triad followed by an ascending line to the downbeat of measure two. The second measure also starts with a Bb major triad followed by a leap to Gb4 that initiates a descending line. In measures three and four, the third trombone plays a similar line; however, since measure four is in 4/4, measure four does not restate the Bb major triad. When not playing the melody, each part plays a note on the first count of each beat division. Over the next ten measures, the two parts continue with this alternation. The meter switches to 6/8 in measure fifteen, and the two parts create a composite melody. In measure seventeen, the music becomes more pointillistic for two measures before returning to the composite line. In measure twenty-four, the texture changes to a texture resembling a homorhythmic construction. One part plays singular eighth notes while the other plays eighth notes (the ones on downbeats are accented). In the 7/8 measures, the singular eighth notes emphasize the beat pattern (3+2+2), while they occur on the beats in the 3/4 and 4/4 measures. In measure twenty-nine, the alternating two-measure phrases from the beginning seem to recur, but it is interrupted by the composite melody associated with 6/8 time. The following twelve measures feature continuous eighth-note lines in two-note pairs (notated apart with slurs). A caesura occurs after measure forty-seven. In measure forty-eight, the music begins at a fortissimo dynamic level that immediately begins to decrescendo. The movement concludes with a minor

sixth (A3 and F3). Elements requiring attention include articulation, dynamics, note accuracy, and style.

The fifth movement, “Lento – Allegro,” begins with a very slow unison line. The unison diverges on the last eighth note of the measure, and the ensemble divides into duos in measure four. The first and third trombones continue with eighth notes, while the second and fourth trombones play half notes. In measure six, eighth notes return to all four parts. In measure eight, the ensemble is divided into duos again by the composer for one measure; the inner voices have half notes, and the outer voices have eighth notes. In measure nine, while the first, third, and bass trombones have sustained notes, the second trombone introduces a sixteenth-note idea. In measure eleven, the third trombone enters with a unique line overlapping specific beats with the second trombone line. The ensemble divides into duos for the third time in measure thirteen. The first trombone joins the second trombone with sixteenth notes, even though the lines contain different rhythms, and the third and fourth trombones play eighth notes in octaves. The “Allegro” begins in measure seventeen, with the first and third trombones in unison and the bass trombone an octave lower. In measure twenty-one, the third trombone joins the second trombone, and the outer two parts continue in unison until measure twenty-three. Continuous eighth notes continue in the outer voices, with sporadic eighth-note motives in the inner voices until measure thirty-three, when the first trombone becomes the primary melodic voice. It remains the predominant melodic force for the next fifteen measures while the bass trombone rests and the inner two voices alternate measures full of eighth notes. The melody consists of leaps and chromatic stepwise motion. The most common rhythms are dotted quarter notes, quarter notes, and eighth notes, but there is a whole note in measure forty-three. In measure forty-nine, the bass trombone initiates a sequence of staggered entrances. The second trombone enters on the upbeat of beat

two, the third trombone enters on beat two of measure fifty, and the first trombone enters on the upbeat of beat one in measure fifty-one. This chain leads to the ensemble dividing into duos again; the first and second trombones play a homorhythmic line, while the third and fourth trombones play a composite line comprised of two different rhythmic patterns. In measure fifty-eight, the lower two parts play a different composite line comprised of quarter notes on the beats and the upbeats. The ensemble aligns for marcato-accented eighth notes in measures sixty-four and sixty-five. In measure sixty-six, the inner voices provide a composite line resembling the material in measure fifty-eight. Simultaneously, the first trombone has a line of continuous eighth notes, and the bass trombone has a legato line consisting of quarter and eighth notes. This texture, with different trombones serving in various roles, continues until measure eighty-two when material from the third movement occurs. The previous texture returns in measure eighty-eight and continues until the caesura in measure ninety-nine—the “Lento” returns, lasting ten measures (there are also four fermatas). While not identical, it resembles the closing of the opening movement. The “Allegro” returns in measure 110, and the work concludes with a Bb major triad. Elements requiring attention include intonation, note accuracy, rhythm, and style.

Tissington Variations for Four Trombones – Raymond Premru

Composer: Raymond Premru (1934–1998)

A legendary bass trombonist, Raymond Premru was a highly sought-after twentieth-century performer—including by the Beatles on their popular album *Sgt. Pepper’s Lonely Hearts Club Band*.⁴¹⁹ In addition to performing, he taught at the Oberlin College Conservatory of Music, Eastman School of Music, and the Guildhall School of Music in London.⁴²⁰ The Dean of the conservatory said, following his passing, that “not only was he a gifted artist and teacher, he was a composer of considerable and technical stature.”⁴²¹ Some of his other notable compositions include, *Two Pieces for Three Trombones* (1965), *Concertino for Trombone and Winds* (1962), *Tissington Variations* (1972), and *Concerto for Tuba and Orchestra* (1992). He died in 1998.

Arranger: N/A

Title: *Tissington Variations for Four Trombones*

Movements: One Movement in Five Sections

1. “Andantino” (quarter note equals 72 bpm)
2. “Tempo Primo” (quarter note equals 72 bpm)
3. “Allegro non troppo” (quarter note equals 104 bpm)
4. “Presto” (quarter note equals 154 bpm)
5. “Adagio” (quarter note equals 56 bpm)

Duration: 9:00

Publisher: Musica Rara (Monteux, France)

Copyright Date: 1972

⁴¹⁹ Oberlin College and Conservatory, “Raymond Premru, Professor of Trombone and Esteemed Colleague, Dies at Age 63.”

⁴²⁰ Klaus G. Roy, “Raymond Premru.”

⁴²¹ Oberlin College and Conservatory, “Raymond Premru, Professor of Trombone and Esteemed Colleague, Dies at Age 63.”

Copy Quality: Manuscript

Availability: Available from numerous merchants; no digital download

Difficulty: Virtuoso (5)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones[^]; bass trombone

Overall Range: Ab1 – D5

Trombone 1: E2 – D5

Trombone 2: E2 – C5

Trombone 3: E2 – B4

Bass Trombone: Ab1 – Gb4

Clefs: Trombone 1 (bass); Trombone 2 (bass); Trombone 3 (bass); Bass Trombone (bass)

Mutes: Straight Mute (All parts m. 59-122)

Dedication: Denis Wick

Publisher Overview/Score Description: N/A

Technical Considerations: Articulation; Ensemble Playing: Glissando; Intonation

Articulation – This work uses a variety of traditional articulations (slurred, staccato, marcato, tenuto, etc.) and hybrid articulations (marcato/slurred – see measure forty-five). The slower sections require legato playing; natural slurs may prove to be helpful, especially in longer lines. In the “Allegro non troppo” section, a difference between the staccato and legato notes must be discernable. The “Presto” section requires even more attention to detail because of the prevalent articulation markings and mosaic or pointillistic texture created by the whole ensemble. Keeping the staccato notes dry and separated (rather than short) is key to achieving a crisp articulation with and without the mute; almost secco.

Ensemble Playing - There are two major ensemble items to consider in this piece. The first is the presence of measures and half measures where no music is sounding. Measures sixty-eight and sixty-nine are the only full measures where no part plays. Contrastingly, there are numerous occasions where no part is scored for half a measure. The second is the presence of hocket-like lines in both the faster and slower sections. Each player needs to be confident in the accurate placement of their articulated notes. For an example in a slower section, refer to measure seventy; in a faster section, see measure ninety-seven.

Glissando - The glissando dominates the character of the final “Adagio” section. Premru marks it as portamento and writes in the score, “Move slide slowly but immediately after attacking the note.”⁴²² The only glissando that requires an alternate position is in the second trombone part in measure 192. The music moves from Bb3 to B3, which requires Bb3 to be played in fifth position.

Intonation - Numerous chords feature dissonant harmonies in this piece (too many to list in this short commentary). The first example occurs on beat three of measure one, where D3, D#3, E3, and G3 are stacked. In measure 168, E4, F4, C5, and Db5 are stacked. Dissonant harmonies may be easily dismissed due to their recurrence, but the performer should strive to focus on pitch accuracy in these stacked chords to achieve proper intonation throughout.

Piece Description:

Tissington Variations by Raymond Premru is challenging work for all four members of the ensemble. The opening “Andantino” of this five-section work creates a dissonant sound by

⁴²² Raymond Premru, *Tissington Variations for Four Trombones* (Monteux, France: Musica Rara), 14.

stacking different notes from one motive. The motive contains D3, D#3-E3, A3, and G3; each part stops on a different pitch. The bass trombone part never leaves D3, the third trombone part moves to D#3, the second trombone part moves to E3, and the first trombone part plays the entire idea, landing on G3. In measure six, marked “Piu Mosso,” the first trombone introduces the first iteration of a reoccurring theme. The theme consists of three notes (F3, A3, and Bb3), begins on beat two, and occurs in two-measure cells. In measures ten, the second trombone transposes the theme; the notes included are C3, E3, and F3.

In measure twenty-three, the “Allegro non troppo” begins; a juxtaposition of the first and second trombones with the third and fourth trombones characterizes this section. Premru masterfully crafts the parts in a way that never places a grouping in an accompaniment role. Rather, the two groups are in a constant dialogue—achieved by alternating which duo plays melodic content or long tones. The music is not antiphonal from a definitional standpoint but has similar structure. This section of the piece also contains a large variety of articulations, a higher tessitura for all parts, and numerous eighth-note lines that begin on the upbeat of one.

The “Tempo Primo” occurs in measure sixty-eight with several measures of rest for all the parts. In measures seventy, all the parts enter, but in a style and texture that resembles hocket—each part has an attack on a different beat, creating a single melodic line. Between measures seventy-six and eighty-one, the three-note theme established in measure six returns in its original form and three transpositions; the transpositions occur in the lower three parts. The second trombone begins on C#4, while the third trombone begins G#4 a perfect fifth higher, and the bass trombone begins on F#2.

The “Presto” section begins in measure eighty-nine and is a technical “tour de force” that requires straight mutes in all four parts. The section begins with the top three parts, giving the

bass trombonist time to insert the mute. The lines created within these parts tend to be compound across parts and highly angular; the product is an exciting melodic configuration. In measure 112, the first and second parts drop out to remove their mutes and the bottom two parts take over. The roles of melody and accompaniment then swap, as the bottom two parts remove their mutes. A full tutti finally occurs in measure 134 but does not become the norm until measure 137. These angular, mosaic-like lines continue with the section and piece climaxing on a chord containing E4, F4, C5, and Db5; chromatic material an ascending chromatic scale prepares it in the top two parts and similar material in the bottom two parts.

The piece concludes with an “Adagio” section that features dense harmonies and motives marked with “portamento.” The speed of these glissando portamentos is slow (as marked by the composer). Many of these occurrences are offset, which, like many other moments in this piece, creates the illusion of a singular line. The piece concludes with a held chord containing F3, Ab3, and Bb3 in the top three parts and the bass trombone abstains from playing. Items to consider are articulation, ensemble playing, glissando, and intonation.

Composer(s):

Folke Rabe (1935–2017)

Born in 1935, Folke Rabe attended the Stockholm Royal College of Music and studied with Valdemar Söderholm, Bo Wallner, and György Ligeti.⁴²³ From 1968 to 1980, he was an administrator at the Swedish Institute for National Concerts, and from 1980 to 2000, he held various positions such as editor, editor-in-chief, and program manager at the Swedish National Broadcasting Corporation.⁴²⁴ During his career, he became a leading figure in the Swedish experimental music scene and a pioneer of electroacoustic music;⁴²⁵ his compositions were often a sound collage constructed using sounds from everyday life, repetition, and distortion.⁴²⁶ His most famous composition is *What?...* (1967), which utilizes thirty-five minutes of processed and manipulated train and subway sound from New York City.⁴²⁷ His most famous work for trombone is the solo composition entitled *Basta* (1982). He died in 2017.

Jan Bark (1934–2012)

Born in 1934, Jan Bark was a Swedish trombonist and composer. His career began as a jazz trombonist before attending Borgarskolan and Musikhögskolan in Stockholm to study music (specifically composition);⁴²⁸ his teachers included Lars-Erik Larsson, Karl-Birger Blomdahl, and György Ligeti.⁴²⁹ In 1963, he co-founded Kulturkvartetten (Culture Quartet) with Folke Rabe, a trombone quartet dedicated to performing their own theatrical and musical

⁴²³ “Folke Rabe has Died,” *Wire*, September 29, 2017, <https://www.thewire.co.uk/news/48236/folke-rabe-has-died#fa-2018>.

⁴²⁴ Ibid.

⁴²⁵ “Folke Rabe and General Entertainment,” Home Page, Folkerabe.se, accessed April 26, 2025, <https://folkerabe.se/>.

⁴²⁶ Ibid.

⁴²⁷ Ibid.

⁴²⁸ “Jan Bark,” Artists, Discogs.com, accessed April 27, 2025, <https://www.discogs.com/artist/546086-Jan-Bark?srltid=AfmBOorXeDBCCnyWSHwpMj3IgC5-tE8ReUcnXaRWXcqvaLehg46kuaUV>.

⁴²⁹ Folke Rabe and the New Culture Quartet, “NYA Kulturkvartetten,” Projects, Fuzzy.dk, accessed April 27, 2025, <https://www.fuzzy.dk/kulturkvartetten.php>.

compositions.⁴³⁰ This ensemble performed for ten years at various festivals and contemporary-music venues.⁴³¹ As the group discovered its identity, the visual aspects of performing, such as lighting, movement, and acting, along with the incorporation of pre-recorded tapes and films in the 1970s, became more important.⁴³² The group disbanded and the New Culture Quartet was founded in 1982.⁴³³ Performances by both iterations of the quartet: “were often regarded as disrespectful, provocative, comical, and possibly anarchist perhaps because [they] have never learned to make any sharp distinction between seriousness and fun.”⁴³⁴ He also worked as a music teacher and instructor for film editors and cameramen at the Swedish Broadcasting Network.⁴³⁵ He died in 2012.

Arranger: N/A

Title: *Bolos*

Movements: One Movement

Duration: 6:00-7:00

Publisher: Edition Wilhelm Hansen (Stockholm, Sweden)

Copyright Date: 1962/1964

Copy Quality: Engraved (Timeline notation & Graphic notation)

Availability: Available from HeBu Musikverlag GmbH and Gerhmans Musikförlag or through interlibrary loan; no digital download available

Difficulty: Virtuoso (5)

⁴³⁰ Discogs.com, “Jan Bark.”

⁴³¹ Folke Rabe and the New Culture Quartet, “NYA Kulturkvartetten.”

⁴³² Ibid

⁴³³ Ibid

⁴³⁴ Ibid

⁴³⁵ Discogs.com, “Jan Bark.”

Instrumentation: Four tenor trombones (no specifications are made by the composer and there are very few notated pitches to discern if using bass trombone would be advantageous)

Overall Range: N/A

Trombone 1: B3 – F4

Trombone 2: Bb2 – F4

Trombone 3: B3 – F4

Bass Trombone: B3 – F4

*These are the notated pitches by the composers; however, many of the instructions provided in the score give the performer freedom to select which pitch he or she will begin on. There are also markings that require the performer to buzz or play as high or low as possible.

Clefs: Trombone 1 (tenor, treble); Trombone 2 (tenor, treble, bass); Trombone 3 (tenor, treble); Trombone 4 (tenor, treble)

Mutes: Harmon Mute w/ Stem (Wa-Wa mute with stem); Straight Mute, Cup Mute, and Plunger

Dedication: N/A

Publisher Overview/Score Description:

Folke Rabe & Jan Bark

“The score offers much freedom improvisation. Within the time markings (in seconds), the players may perform the written symbols very freely. Even the time markings are approximations. When a type of sound should be repeated there will be no symbol written until a new type of sound is introduced in the score.”⁴³⁶

Folke Rabe & Jan Bark

⁴³⁶ Folke Rabe and Jan Bark, *Bolos* (Edition Wilhelm Hansen, 1964).

“In 1962—while we were still studying at the Royal Academy of Music in Stockholm - Jan Bark and I were asked to make a program for Sveriges Radio about unconventional playing techniques on brass instruments. Since we were both trombonists with a jazz background, it was natural for us to take many of our musical samples from jazz recordings. At the end of the program, we decided to try to show how these playing techniques could be applied in a contemporary compositional context, but we certainly did not want to achieve some kind of "third stream" mixing of the two musical cultures. We picked out the playing styles from their jazz environment and worked them into a four-part graphic score of the kind we used in the 1960s. By adding two parts, Jan and I could play all four parts ourselves. The radio program attracted a lot of attention and we were asked to perform this new composition for four trombones live. We named the piece "Bolos" and composed a new ending. On the radio it had ended with a simple fade-out, but in its stage version the piece was escalated towards the end to a level where we felt it was no longer possible to continue with sound alone. That's why we let it explode and move on to other, more scenic ways of expression. We formed a trombone quartet just for performing Bolos. We called it the Culture Quartet to distinguish it from other quartets. Afterwards we composed new pieces for trombone quartet and performed them internationally at contemporary music festivals in the 1960s and 70s: ISCM, Donaueschinger Musiktage, Warsaw Autumn, Zagreb Biennale, etc. We also made several TV productions both in Sweden and abroad. However, Bolos is the only one of these quartets that was published in score form. It has also been performed by other trombone quartets, especially in the United States.”⁴³⁷

⁴³⁷ Jan Bark and Folke Rabe, “Bolos,” Gerhman Musikförlag, last modified December 28, 2005, <https://gerhmans.se/en/products/n10029-bolos>.

Technical Considerations: Avant-Garde Techniques

There are several avant-garde techniques in this experimental work. Figure 3 below shows the symbols and the corresponding instructions to maintain fidelity. Two additional mouthpieces are required, and you can either remove the slide from the bell on an instrument being played or bring an extra slide (both inner and outer parts).⁴³⁸ For demonstrations of most of these techniques, consult the video entitled “[Folke Rabe’s Bolos: A Reading and Performing Guide](#)” by William Lang on YouTube.

Figure 3: “Other Symbols” from *Bolos* by Folke Rabe and Jan Bark

Other symbols	Andere Zeichen
	Position of slide. Lage des Zuges.
	Irregular. Unregelmässig, aperiodisch rhythmisiert (irregolare).
	Sing through instrument (do not produce any tone with lips). Hineinsingen in das Instrument, ohne dass ein Ton geblasen wird.
	Quick “quasi glissando” along the harmonics (arpeggio). Rasches “quasi - glissando” längs der Naturtonreihe (arpeggio).
	Voiceless “r” should be articulated with tone production (fluttertongue). Tonloses “r” wird gleichzeitig mit dem Anblasen des Tones artikuliert (Flatterzunge).
	German “ach-laut” (throat clearing) should be articulated with tone production (growl). “Ach” - laut wird gleichzeitig mit dem Anblasen des Tones artikuliert (growl).
	“T” articulated in instrument. (Attack without tone). “T” wird im Instrument artikuliert (Stoss ohne nachfolgenden Ton).
	Repetition as fast as possible (quasi tremolo). Wiederholung so rasch wie möglich (quasi tremolo).
	Beat mouthpiece with palm. (Smacking sound). Schlag mit der Handfläche auf das Mundstück.
	Beat edge of bell with thimble, finger ring or something similar. Schlag auf die Stürze mit einem Fingerhut, Fingerring oder ähnlichem.
	Beat two mouthpieces against each other. Zwei Mundstücke werden zusammengeschlagen.
	Quasi parlando: playing on mouthpiece alone. “Vocalize” parlando by working with hands in front of mouthpiece. Parlandoartiges Spiel ausschliesslich auf dem Mundstück. Die Hände werden vor dem Mundstück gewölbt und “vokalisieren” dadurch das Parlando.

439

Piece Description:

This quartet by Folke Rabe and Jan Bark is an experimental work containing theatrical elements throughout; it is among the few distinctly avant-garde compositions for the trombone quartet.⁴⁴⁰ It is recommended that the video entitled “[Folke Rabe’s Bolos: A Reading and Performing Guide](#)” by William Lang on YouTube be viewed for contextual understanding, and

⁴³⁸ William Lang, “Folke Rabe’s Bolos: A Reading and Performing Guide,” May 23, 2025, YouTube Video, 0:53, <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=trvdg-6S1UY&t=1s>.

⁴³⁹ Folke Rabe and Jan Bark, *Bolos*.

⁴⁴⁰ Lang, “Folke Rabe’s Bolos: A Reading and Performing Guide,” 0:05.

that the video entitled “[Bolos - Trombone Quartet by F. Rabe & J. Bark](#)” by Marlena Skoczylas on YouTube be viewed for an exemplary performance. The work’s cohesion becomes more apparent when watching rather than listening.

The piece utilizes time-line notation, which means the passing of time “is measured by the number of seconds elapsed between markers, and the musical events take place between markers, resulting in ametric rhythms.”⁴⁴¹ It also uses graphic notation, which means “pitch and duration are indicated with nonstandard symbols.”⁴⁴² The piece begins all four parts employing Harmon mutes. The first trombone begins the piece, initiating a sequence of staggered entrances in which all four parts play a glissando beginning on D4. This note must be played in fourth position rather than first (as indicated in the score). This glissando begins with smaller movements until it expands from first to seventh position. After the performers achieve this, the glissando shrinks until F4 solely sounds. This segment lasts approximately twenty seconds, and a curved line denotes it. The second idea begins immediately (with different parts concluding the prior segment at different times). It features irregular openings and closings of the Harmon mute while executing a glissando to the highest or lowest pitch. There is freedom for the performer to start on any note in any partial. Halfway through this segment, the second trombone switches to a straight mute (the material remains the same); the third trombone switches to plunger mute. This part has a marking just above it that indicates the plunger covers the bell halfway.⁴⁴³ Finally, the bass trombone switches to cup mute, creating a mixture of different timbres. At the beginning of the second system, which is still part of the second segment, the ensemble gradually removes their mutes (the first trombone does this first); this segment is sixty seconds long. The third

⁴⁴¹ Clendinning and Marvin, 880.

⁴⁴² Ibid, 880.

⁴⁴³ Lang, “Folke Rabe’s Bolos: A Reading and Performing Guide,” 2:51.

segment contains a rapid trill on F4. The composers indicate with Roman Numerals that each performer should play the F4 in first, fourth, and sixth position. The result is a rapid change of notes, only identifiable by the slight timbral change produced by the different positions. This gesture is followed by a fall, notated with a descending curved line; this segment is twenty-five seconds long. The fourth segment begins with a triangle notation that indicates the highest or lowest note possible should be played, depending on its direction. The composers instruct the first and second trombones to play as low as possible. The third trombone has a symbol consisting of a mouthpiece and a diagonal line over it. This symbol indicates that the trombonist is to smack the mouthpiece with their palm. If the performer twists or screws their mouthpiece when they insert it into the mouthpiece receiver, the instrument will not be harmed, nor will the mouthpiece become stuck.⁴⁴⁴ This segment lasts twenty-five seconds. On the third system, the fifth segment begins. It introduces a new symbol comprised of the bell and a horizontal line above it. This image instructs the performers to hit the bell with a thimble; however, Lang believes that the back of the fingernails is more effective and safer for the instrument.⁴⁴⁵ Additionally, air tonguing and kissing sounds into the trombone occur, as do the palm taps on the mouthpiece, creating a unique texture. This segment lasts twenty-five seconds.

The sixth segment contains rips from the highest to the lowest pitch in the first, second, and fourth trombone parts. This effect is similar to a jazz *doit*, and moving from first to seventh position as the pitch rises is the most effective way to achieve the desired effect.⁴⁴⁶ These figures increase in frequency as the music progresses. The third trombone has a solo line in this section; the composer requires this performer to play as high as possible and perform short, siren-like

⁴⁴⁴ Ibid, 5:09.

⁴⁴⁵ Ibid, 5:40.

⁴⁴⁶ Ibid, 6:48.

sound effects. Each part in this segment concludes with a quick glissando, receiving no explanation in the score. There is an accent, so the performer selects an arbitrary note and quickly moves the slide back and forth.⁴⁴⁷ At the top of the second page, the mutes return for the first, third, and fourth trombones while the second trombone holds the highest possible notes and falls. The first trombone uses plunger mute while playing as many notes as possible. Double tonguing will probably be required, and the plunger can open and close.⁴⁴⁸ The second trombone is unmuted and plays random notes; it can ascend as high or descend as low as the performer desires. The third trombone uses Harmon mute and plays the rips from earlier; the bass trombone uses straight mute and plays irregular glissandos. The subsequent segments are five to ten seconds long, and the different ideas are distributed among the ensemble. The new idea occurs in the third trombone with “x” notes. This notation instructs the performer to buzz without producing a concrete tone. Lang recommends taking the lips off the mouthpiece rather than being fully engaged.⁴⁴⁹ The final system contains written instructions. Rabe and Bark write in the second trombone part to take the “Outer slide off! Play as pathetically as possible without a slide, as a recitative.”⁴⁵⁰ This part then strikes two mouthpieces together, which will not hurt them unless done too aggressively. Rabe and Bark instruct the third and fourth trombones, which are buzzing on mouthpieces, to converse. The composers instruct the dialogue to begin peacefully and become more agitated and aggressive.⁴⁵¹ Finally, the composers write in the first trombone part to “Take the instrument apart (removing slide from bell). Cover both open ends of the slide with the hand, thereby creating a vacuum. Stop: Pull tube rapidly out of slide, making a vacuum-

⁴⁴⁷ Ibid, 7:30.

⁴⁴⁸ Ibid, 7:53.

⁴⁴⁹ Ibid, 9:25.

⁴⁵⁰ Folke Rabe and Jan Bark, *Bolos*.

⁴⁵¹ Ibid.

smack.”⁴⁵² The most effective method for performing this is to cover the mouthpiece receiver with the palm and the part that attaches to the bell with the thumb.⁴⁵³ The work concludes with the vacuum-smack. This analysis would not have been possible without the help of Professor William Lang (trombonist, composer, teacher, and founding member of [Loadbang](#)).

⁴⁵² Ibid.

⁴⁵³ Lang, “Folke Rabe’s Bolos: A Reading and Performing Guide,” 11:24.

Trombone Quartet – Walter Ross

Composer: Walter Ross (1936–2021)

Born in 1936, Walter Ross became a professional orchestral French horn player at the age of seventeen and further honed his skills at the University of Nebraska.⁴⁵⁴ He received his B.M. in 1960, M.M. in 1962, and D.M.A in 1966;⁴⁵⁵ among his notable instructors were Robert Beadell, Robert Palmer, and Karel Husa.⁴⁵⁶ As a composer, he preferred the concerto over the symphony because of the artistic expression it offered, and his music stresses bright orchestration and rhythmic excitement.⁴⁵⁷ Additional compositions of his for trombone include Trombone Concerto No. 1 (1970), Trombone Concerto No. 2 (1982), and Trombone Trio (1985). He died in 2021.

Arranger: N/A

Title: *Trombone Quartet*

Movements: Three Movements

1. Intrada (half note equals 120 bpm)
2. Adagio (half note equals 60 bpm)
3. Allegro (dotted quarter note equals 108 bpm)

The UIL Database contains this work but does not provide any movement specifications.

Duration: 7:00

Publisher: Boosey & Hawkes (London, England)

Copyright Date: 1977

⁴⁵⁴ “Biography,” Walterross.com, accessed March 12, 2025, <https://www.walterross.com/biography.html>.

⁴⁵⁵ Walter Ross, *Trombone Quartet* (London: Boosey & Hawkes, 1977).

⁴⁵⁶ “Biography,” Walterross.com, accessed March 12, 2025.

⁴⁵⁷ Ibid.

Copy Quality: Engraved

Availability: Available from numerous merchants but there may be a wait time; no digital download available

Difficulty: Virtuoso (5)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones; bass trombone

Overall Range: Ab1 – Bb4

Trombone 1: C3 – Bb4

Trombone 2: A2 – Ab4

Trombone 3: Ab2 – Gb4

Bass Trombone: Ab1 – F4

Clefs: Trombone 1 (tenor, bass); Trombone 2 (tenor, bass); Trombone 3 (bass); Bass Trombone (bass)

Mutes: Straight Mute in parts 1, 3, and 4 in “Intrada;” Harmon Mute in all parts in “Scherzo”

Dedication: Per Brevig

Publisher Overview/Score Description:

Walter Ross

“This work is a showpiece for a trombone quartet. Its three short movements display the musical possibilities of the trombone in a variety of ways. The first movement, ‘Intrada,’ contrasts the aggressive capabilities of the instrument with the later piquant mood. The ‘Chorale’ is broad and harmonically rich while the last movement, ‘Scherzo,’ uses a combination of open and muted sounds in a technical *tour de force*.”⁴⁵⁸

⁴⁵⁸ Walter Ross, *Trombone Quartet*.

Technical Considerations: Cross-Harmonic Glissando; Ghosted Notes; Glissando; Harmon Mute; Slide Vibrato

Cross-Harmonic Glissando – This type of glissando, which is associated with vertical movement across partials, occurs in three measures of movement (m. 62-64) in parts two through four using a lip slur. The bass trombone plays the first, ascending from G2 to F4; the third trombone plays the second, ascending from Ab2 to Gb4; and the second trombone plays the third, ascending from A2 to G2. This pattern creates a short sequence. Dexterity and flexibility are key to this passage.

Ghosted Notes – While not explicitly labeled “ghosting,” this technique occurs in measures 190 through 194 of movement three. The composer writes, “move slide without sounding,” for notes notated with an “X” rather than a traditional notehead. The only sounding notes in this brief section are the downbeats of measures 190 and 192, beats one and two of measure 193, and beats two and three of measure 194; the rest are “inaudible.”

Glissando – There is only one occurrence in the first movement. It is in measures eighty-four in the bass trombone. It spans the entire measure and traverses four notes chromatically. In the third movement, five instances utilize the glissando. The first and fourth occur at four levels of subdivision across the ensemble (measures six and sixty-one). The first occurrence in measure six will require the first trombone to play E#4 in fourth position rather than first position; the second does not require alternate positions for any part. The second occurs in measures thirteen through fifteen within a hemiola; no alternate positions are necessary. The third occurrence happens in measures fifty-five through fifty-eight; the second trombone will need to use fifth position for glissando from B3 to Bb3. The final glissando occurs from measure 98 to 102 in the second the third

trombones. The third trombone will need to use fifth position for the glissando from B3 to A#3. There is also the occasional fall; these should be concise, not gratuitous.

Harmon Mute – his mute is utilized exclusively in the third movement. All four parts employ it; however, parts two through four must transition from a closed to an open sound on multiple occasions. Sometimes, the closed/open notation (+/o) occurs gradually throughout a sustained note (m. 31-49); other times, it occurs over a tied note to generate a sense of rhythmic activity (m. 68-70) or via note changes by glissando (m. 98-104). The composer does not specify whether the ensemble should use the stem. To achieve a more pronounced change, “stem in” will probably be the most effective approach.

Slide Vibrato – This technique only occurs in the first trombone part in measures ninety-four and ninety-five of the third movement. Ross labels it with the phrase “slide vibrato,” but he also writes the letter “S” followed by a squiggly line. The slide should move fast enough to create a consistent change in pitch but not so fast that it is uncontrollable.

Piece Description:

This work by Walter Ross is highly technical, demanding significant skill and effort from each performer. The first movement, “Intrada,” roughly breaks down into an ABA form; the two “A” sections are faster and contrapuntal, while the “B” section is slightly slower and homorhythmic. It begins with a dissonant chord comprised of stacked major thirds. Rhythmically, the top three parts have accented quarter notes, while the bass trombone has a dotted half note that crescendos to the upbeat of two and the beginning of a melodic line. This bass trombone melody leads to a five-measure juxtaposition between it and the rest of the ensemble and a shift to a contrapuntal texture in the latter half of measure six; the prominent rhythmic pattern is two eighth notes and a quarter note. In measures eighteen and nineteen, the

third and fourth trombones drop out of the texture to insert straight mutes; simultaneously, the first and second trombones have a unison line that lasts seven measures and features three consecutive crescendos that reset. In measure twenty-eight, the first trombone incorporates a straight mute. Notably, the second trombone never utilizes a straight mute in this movement; instead, it serves as the primary proponent of the melody, which incorporates a variety of skips, steps, and leaps across registers. In measure forty-five, the bass trombone becomes unmuted, with the unison line from measure twenty returning in the first and third trombones. The third trombonist removes the mute in measure fifty-two, and the more contrapuntal material briefly reappears. The legato “B” section begins in measure sixty-six; the third and fourth trombones play a homorhythmic line for most of the section, while the first and second trombones interact dialogically. The second “A” occurs at measure eighty, featuring a muted third trombone part within a combination of the contrapuntal lines, consecutive crescendos, and accented quarter notes; also, the bass trombone has a chromatic glissando from D to F in measure eighty-four. The movement concludes with an accented quarter-note triplet line in the top three parts in measure 128 and a descending chromatic line to a dissonant finish; items to consider are style, articulation, intonation, and glissandi.

The second movement, “Chorale,” is only thirteen measures long and features warm sonorities. The form is in three sections differentiated by fermatas. The first, second, and third trombone parts each have a chance to perform the melody, which is defined by dotted half notes and quarter notes (although there is some variation). The second trombone has the first iteration of the melody from measures one through four. It contains two stepwise segments bridged by a leap within an ascending line and a descending line entirely comprised of stepwise motion. The first trombone has the second iteration of the melody from measures five through nine. The

essence of the second trombone's melody remains; however, it includes alternating upper and lower neighbors instead of skips. The third trombone has the third iteration of the melody from measures nine through thirteen. It effectively merges the leap from the first iteration and the upper/lower neighbor from the second iteration while maintaining the identity established through the stepwise motion. The bass trombone provides the movement's foundation, which concludes with a quartal/quintal chord consisting of D, G, and A; items to consider are intonation, phrasing, and ensemble cohesion.

The third movement, "Scherzo," is the longest of the three movements. It opens with the ensemble entering in staggered entrances while utilizing Harmon mute. Next, each part has a glissando in measure six at a different subdivision level. The first trombone plays a glissando over a quintuplet; the second trombone plays glissandos between two dotted eighth notes; the third trombone glissandos between over three eighth notes, and the fourth trombone glissandos through a quadruplet. The staggered entrances make another appearance that leads to a quasi-hemiola section two measures before fifteen. All four trombones rest in measure thirty, with the second trombone entering in measure thirty-one. Using the Harmon mute, the notation instructs the performer to transition from a closed to an open sound. This idea alternates with a more technical line in the top two parts for almost thirty measures before staggered glissandos begin in measure fifty-five. The stacked glissandi return in measure sixty-one, switching the second and fourth trombones subdivisions and preparing a sequence that occurs with cross-harmonic glissandi across parts two through four. In measure seventy-five, the first trombone plays the melody, and the bass trombone removes the Harmon mute, which the first trombone did in measure sixty-two. After the initial melodic line, the second and third trombones enter with an accompaniment line on the anacrusis to measure seventy-nine. This texture continues for fifteen

measures and climaxes with slide vibrato over a sustained E4. In measure 105, a dialogue begins between the first and fourth trombones; however, these lines emphasize leaps and are more angular than any previous motives. This section features more sixteenth notes and homorhythmic ensemble passages than anywhere in the work. In measure 132, the staggered entrances associated with the “A” section return. These contrasting ideas alternate for sixty measures until a new idea is introduced in measure 190. Here, Ross instructs each performer to play only specific notes and to move the slide with no sound for others. The piece ends with a rousing chromatic finish to an F minor seventh chord. The numerous extended techniques, style, and tempo are all worth consideration.

Suita na 4 Puzony – Kazimierz Serocki

Composer: Kazimierz Serocki (1922–1981)

Born in 1922, he studied composition with Kazimierz Sikorski and piano with Stanislaw Szpinalski in Łódź, Poland.⁴⁵⁹ Following his gradation in 1946, he studied composition with Nadia Boulanger and piano with Lazare Levy in Paris.⁴⁶⁰ In 1952, he decided to focus entirely on composing, which did for the remainder of his career.⁴⁶¹ With the assistance of Jan Krenz and Tadeusz Baird, he founded Group 49, an organization dedicated to the promotion of Polish music internationally after World War II.⁴⁶² His trombone quartet was one of only five chamber works and his *Sonatina for Trombone and Piano* (1954) was one of only six solo works.⁴⁶³ He also wrote *Concerto for Trombone* in 1954. He died in 1981.

Arranger: N/A

Title: *Suita na 4 Puzony* (*Suite for Four Trombones*)

Movements: Seven Movements

1. Intrada – Marciale (quarter note equals 152 bpm)
2. Canone – Lento e cantábile (quarter note equals 48 bpm)
3. Interludium – Leggiero e grazioso (quarter note equals 152 bpm)
4. Corale – Largo e dolce (half note equals 36 bpm)
5. Intermezzo – Giocososo e vivo (quarter note equals 162 bpm)
6. Arietta – Tranquillo e tenuto (quarter note equals 42 bpm)
7. Toccata – Briososo e ritmico (half note equals 92 bpm)

⁴⁵⁹ “Kazimierz Serocki,” Composers, Research, Polish Music Center, accessed March 9, 2025, <https://polishmusic.usc.edu/research/composers/kazimierz-serocki/>.

⁴⁶⁰ Ibid.

⁴⁶¹ Ibid.

⁴⁶² *Encyclopedia Britannica*, s.v. “Kazimierz Serocki,” accessed March 9, 2025, <https://www.britannica.com/biography/Kazimierz-Serocki>.

⁴⁶³ “Kazimierz Serocki,” Composers, Research, Polish Music Center, accessed March 9, 2025.

Duration: 10:00

Publisher: Polskie Wydawnictwo Muzyczne or PWM (Krakow, Poland)

Copyright Date: 1953

Copy Quality: Engraved

Availability: Available from numerous merchants; no digital download available

Difficulty: Virtuoso (5)

Instrumentation: Three tenor trombones; bass trombone

Overall Range: Bb1 – C5

Trombone 1: F2 – C5

Trombone 2: D3 – G4

Trombone 3: C3 – F4

Bass Trombone: Bb1 – D4

Clefs: Trombone 1 (tenor); Trombone 2 (tenor); Trombone 3 (bass); Bass Trombone (bass)

Mutes: N/A

Dedication: Juliusz Pietrachowicz⁴⁶⁴

Publisher Overview/ Score Description:

Hickey's Music

“20th century (1953). English title is Suite for 4 Trombones. Movements are Intrada;

Canone; Interludium; Corale; Intermezzo; Arietta; Toccata. Score & parts.”⁴⁶⁵

Iwona Lindstedt

⁴⁶⁴ Arthur Meulemans, *Suite voor vier bazuinen in ut*.

⁴⁶⁵ “Serocki, Kazimierz Suite na 4 Puzony,” Trombone Quartets, Hickeys.com, accessed March 9, 2025, <https://www.hickeys.com/search/products/sku026104.php>.

“Serocki built the *Suite for Four Trombones* [italics added] from seven rather short movements arranged accordingly to the principle of alternating fast and slow tempos (as in Renaissance or Baroque Suites). After the Intrada, referring to the early Baroque canzona, based on lively rhythm and expressive melody, comes the nostalgic canon with the theme imitated strictly (in the minor third and the fifth) in the three highest parts and the lowest part presenting its rhythmically augmented inversion. The central part of the Suite is a homophonic, long-note chorale, charming in its simplicity, not by accident referring rather to the tradition of Beethoven’s ‘equali’ – all parts in it are ‘equal.’ It is surrounded by Interludium and Intermezzo – movements played in permanent staccato, with a light and playful character. The penultimate part of the suite is a dignified, archaizing Arietta, which uses the effect of bells ringing and a subtle echo effect. At the end comes the fast-paced, highly spectacular Toccata.”⁴⁶⁶

Technical Considerations: Articulation; Dynamics: Glissando; Lip Trill; Multiple Tonguing

Articulation – The composer precisely defines what articulation he wants to be part of the sound in certain sections throughout this piece. He communicates it through three items: slur, staccato, and tenuto markings, hybrid articulation (staccato accents, tenuto accents, and tenuto slurs), and written text within the score.

Dynamics – Unlike many composers, Serocki provides detailed dynamic markings via written markings (*pp*, *p*, *mp*, *mf*, *f*, and *ff*), notated crescendos and decrescendos, and written out words such as “Crescendo.” Executing these instructions will enhance any performance of this work.

⁴⁶⁶ Iwona Lindstedt, “Casimir Serocki Suite for 4 Trombones,” PWM, accessed March 9, 2025, <https://pwm.com.pl/pl/sklep/publikacja/suita.kazimierz-serocki.12300.ksiegarnia.htm>.

Glissando – This technique occurs in the first and seventh movements (both at their respective movement's conclusion). The glissando occurs at different subdivision levels across the ensemble in both occurrences. In the first movement, the first trombone glissandos from F4 to D4 via a sixteenth note triplet; fourth position is required for the D4. The second trombone glissandos from D4 to Bb3 via thirty-second notes; fifth position is required for the Bb3. The third trombone glissandos from Bb3 to F3 via two thirty-second notes and a thirty-second note triplet; sixth position is required for the F3. The bass trombone glissandos from G2 to Bb2; no alternate positions are required, and this is the only part with an ascending glissando. In movement seven, the third trombone glissandos from F4 to D4 via a triplet; fourth position is required for the D4. The bass trombone glissandos from Bb3 to F3 via a quintuplet; sixth position is required for the F3.

Lip Trill – This technique occurs in the fourth and fifth measures of the seventh movement. The first trombonist is required to trill from Bb4 to C5. The performer can trill in either first or third position, whichever feels more comfortable. The second trombone is required to trill from F4 to G4. Fourth position is the most effective choice for this trill.

Multiple Tonguing – This technique, specifically triple tonguing, is required for some players in the third movement. At Rehearsal 6, triple tonguing will help facilitate the performance of the triplets at the rapid tempo of this movement. The first trombone plays a repeated Eb4 for the first four triplets and a G4 for the fifth. The second trombone plays a repeated B3 for the first four triplets and a D4 for the fifth. The fourth trombone plays a

repeated B3 for the first four triplets and Ab3 for the fifth. The third trombone only plays four triplets on a repeated F#3.

Piece Description:

This work by Kazimierz Serocki is an important composition within the repertoire as it was integral to the ensemble's development in the 1950s. The first movement, "Intrada," is a fanfare that constantly moves between three meters (2/4, 3/4, and 4/4); its form is ABA' with the only differences in the "A" sections occurring in the last eight measures. The first and fourth trombones play the melodic fragments from the beginning to Rehearsal 3; except for a stepwise line four measures before Rehearsal 2, the main melodic line is an arpeggiated Bb major triad (there is an Ab in the first trombone). When the fourth trombone has the melody, the first trombone joins the second and third trombone accompaniment; when the first trombone has the melody, the bass trombone joins the accompaniment line. At Rehearsal 3, the texture switches to a homorhythmic texture with rich harmonies in a march-like style. The "A" section returns at Rehearsal 6 and is identical to the first section until the measures before Rehearsal 9. The final eight measures contain a pedal Bb in the bass trombone and a glissando in all four parts. A notable feature is that each one occurs on different subdivision levels. The movement ends on a Bb major triad; items to consider are articulation, dynamic contrast, glissando, and style.

The second movement, "Canone," is a beautiful song at a slow tempo that primarily contains stepwise motion and the occasional skip or leap. The widest gap in the melody is a minor seventh bridged by the third and fifth of either a minor seventh chord or a half-diminished seventh chord. It begins in the second trombone on Bb3 and is a solo for three measures. As the melody progresses, it moves within a perfect fifth before it expands via the aforementioned arpeggio that ascends; a descending scalar line that leads into Rehearsal 2 follows. At Rehearsal

1, the third trombone enters on G3, a minor third below the second trombone. Due to the melody's intervallic content, the initial harmony moves from perfect fifth to perfect fourth to diminished fourth (major third) before becoming more dissonant via half and whole steps. Since this movement is a canon, the melody's trajectory in the third part is the same as the second trombone; the ascending arpeggio and descending scalar line occur three before Rehearsal 3. The bass trombone enters five measures later but does not contain the same content as the previous two voices. The part only plays sustained notes, and except for two D3s, it stays within a perfect fifth (F2 to C3). The first trombone enters with the final melodic statement at Rehearsal 3. Its tessitura is relatively high, with most notes occurring above D4, and its iteration of the ascending arpeggio/descending scalar line occurs two measures before Rehearsal 4. This moment marks the movement's culmination, which concludes on a G minor triad; items to consider are intonation and phrasing.

The third movement, "Interludium," features a quick tempo and a basic ABA structure. The primary meter is 2/4 time, but there is the occasional 3/4 measure. The first "A" section lasts for twenty-seven measures. The opening two measures establish the style with one of the primary motives occurring on the upbeat of two in the first 3/4 measure; it contains several eighth notes followed by a sustained note. This motive occurs in various forms amidst a semi-contrapuntal texture. At Rehearsal 2, the music becomes slightly more melody-driven with the presence of ascending scalar lines in the second and third trombones. After Rehearsal 3, a homorhythmic section featuring note-pattern repetition begins in the fourth measure. It ends with a decrescendo. The "B" section begins in measure twenty-eight. The melody in this section begins in the second trombone and builds upon the previous section's motives. The main difference is that instead of a tied half note, the line contains three pitches tied beginning on beat

two of the second measure. In the fifth measure of Rehearsal 4, the first trombone enters with the established rhythmic motive on only two notes; this interjection initiates an interplay between the two parts as part of a crescendo to Rehearsal 6. The lower two parts provide accompaniment, which consists of eighth notes played on the beats. At Rehearsal 6, the movement reaches its climax with a homorhythmic triplet fanfare across the ensemble. In the fifth and sixth measures of this rehearsal marking, the first, third, and fourth trombones continue the triplet motive, while the second trombone plays a sustained note in tandem with a decrescendo. The second “A” section returns at Rehearsal 7, which is measure forty-nine. It is identical to the first “A” section except for an additional four measures at the end. These measures conclude the movement, ending on an Eb major triad (minus the fifth); items to consider are articulation, dynamic contrast, and multiple tonguing.

The fourth movement, “Corale,” features a melody in the first trombone part with half-note accompaniment in the lower three parts. The melody contains primarily stepwise motion via chromaticism with the occasional leap and divides into two three-measure phrases. The first two measures feature the aforementioned chromatic stepwise motion within an ascending line; the third measure contains a note a perfect fifth below the last of measure two. The first iteration ascends to G4 and then leaps down to C4. In the fourth and fifth measures, the line ascends to E4 and then leaps down to A3. At Rehearsal 1, the meter shifts to 4/2 for two measures, and the melody becomes more angular, featuring an ascending outline of an A minor triad and an A minor seventh chord. In the third measure of Rehearsal 1, the meter returns to 3/2, as does the chromatic stepwise motion. It leads to a cadenza-like passage in the measure before Rehearsal 2. The final seven measures synthesize both sections’ content, containing a mixture of steps, skips, and leaps. Concerning the accompaniment, almost every note is a half note, and the harmony

created is a mixture of triadic and non-triadic combinations. The movement concludes on a perfect fifth (C to G) in octaves; ensemble balance, intonation, and phrasing are items to consider.

The fifth movement, “Intermezzo,” is the shortest movement of the work, lasting only fifty seconds. Two contrasting ideas comprise this movement: eighth notes and a two-note sigh motive that serves as a refrain-like motive within the piece. The second trombone begins with four eighth notes in measure one, and the rest of the ensemble enters in measure two amid a crescendo. The first trombone has four eighth notes, while the third and fourth trombones only have three, beginning on the upbeat of one. The first “sigh” motive occurs in measure three. The subsequent six measures contain staccato eighth notes in both ascending (trombone 1) and descending (trombones 3 and 4) fashion. The ascending line is more angular, containing more arpeggios, while the descending lines are stepwise and chromatic. At Rehearsal 1, the initial eighth-note line reappears, as does the “sigh” motive. The composer adds another “sigh” motive, and the texture switches to homorhythmic within a crescendo. At Rehearsal 2, the lower three parts have sforzando attacks (bass trombone on beat one; trombones two and three on beat two), and the first trombone has a descending diatonic scale starting on Bb4. This four-measure pattern repeats rhythmically with different pitches before the refrain returns at Rehearsal 3. From three measures before Rehearsal 4 to Rehearsal 5, the music is identical to the movement’s first nine measures. At Rehearsal 5, the bass trombone has sforzando quarter notes that lead to another iteration of the “sigh” motive and eighth notes; this pattern repeats several times. Rehearsal 6 begins with an arpeggio across multiple octaves, leading to a sustained A4 in the first trombone. While the first trombone holds this note, the lower three parts have three attacks on beat two of

three consecutive measures. The movement concludes with an F major triad on two eighth notes, and items worth consideration are articulation, dynamic contrast, and style.

The sixth movement, “Arietta,” is the longest of the work and features a solo in the first trombone part. The accompaniment in the second and third trombones is simple yet effectively supports the melody. The same motive (quarter note/half note) occurs in almost every measure with little pitch variety. The two intervals created by these two parts are typically a major third (Bb3 and D4) and a perfect fifth (F3 to C4). This iteration occurs in ten consecutive measures. The intervals switch places in measure eleven, and the major third transforms into a minor third. The perfect fifth (Gb3 to Db4) occurs first, and the minor third second (Bb3 to Db4). The rest of Rehearsal 2 features different notes and intervals. The standard iteration returns at Rehearsal 3. The melody in the first trombone features a significant amount of note repetition in the composer’s effort to imitate a short aria with little imitation. The primary motives within this solo contain eighth notes and specific interval content. The first motive contains four eighth notes and a sustained note tied into the next measure. The first three eighth notes are the same pitch (F4), and the fourth eighth note is a major second lower (Eb4) before returning to F4 for the sustained note. The second motive utilizes the first motive’s first measure, but instead of returning to a sustained note, a quarter note completes the measure; four eighth notes and a quarter also comprise the next measure. Its initial occurrence is two measures before Rehearsal 1. Its second measure contains three repeated F4s before ascending to G4 and Ab4 (a minor trichord). The second iteration is a transposition in the second trombone at Rehearsal 2; the repeated note is Eb3, the new note in the first measure is Db3, and the two new notes in the second measure are F3 and Gb3. The third iteration is in the third trombone right after the second trombone. Its repeated note is F#3; the new note in the first measure is an E3, while the two

different notes in the second measure are G#3 and A3. In this movement, the bass trombone rests or plays an interjecting countermelody that combines note repetition, skips, and leaps. The movement ends on a Bb dominant seventh chord; items to consider are intonation and phrasing.

The seventh movement, “Toccatina,” is almost a continuous stream of eighth notes within an ABAC form. The movement begins in the first trombone, and the rest of the ensemble has staggered entrances in the first three measures. The second trombone enters on beat two of measure one, the third trombone enters on the downbeat of measure three, and the fourth trombone enters on beat two of measure three, which creates a pyramid shape for the harmony. The ensemble creates a composite melody via a two-eighth note motive in measures four through six; the rhythm remains constant while the pitch content changes. After a crescendo into Rehearsal 1, the texture alternates between the constant eighth notes and composite line; this opening section culminates on a C# fully diminished seventh chord. The “B” section begins in Rehearsal 3; it retains the eighth notes and composite line of the previous section, but they occur differently in addition to new ideas. The section begins with eighth notes in the upper two trombones, which the lower two parts answer in the second measure. A new motive occurs in the first trombone in measure three. It repeats in the next measure and resolves in the measure before Rehearsal 4. At Rehearsal 4, the ensemble continues to be split by the composer into two groups, which is especially clear at Rehearsal 5. Here, the pairings of the ensemble switch from trombones one and two against three and four to trombones one and four against three and four. The ensuing musical line begins in the second and third trombones and continues in the first and fourth trombones. Its rhythmic identity derives from eighth notes and a half note tied to an eighth note; when one pairing has eighth notes, the other has the sustained note. At Rehearsal 6, the “A” section returns identically and lasts until Rehearsal 9, the “C” section. This section features forte-

piano onsets by the third and fourth trombones and a full ensemble crescendo into Rehearsal 10. The energy continues for the rest of the work, which features a trill in the top two parts (Bb4 to C5 in trombone 1; F4 to G4 in trombone 2) and a glissando in the lower two parts; the work concludes on a Bb major triad. Items to consider are articulation, dynamic contrast, glissandi, lip trills, and style.

Chapter 7: Conclusion

Summary of Findings

In this analysis, I pedagogically examined and categorized sixty works from the trombone quartet repertoire based on their musical content. Each analysis consisted of three parts: (1) demographic information (composer, arranger, title, movements, etc.); (2) an assigned grade/difficulty level (1-5); and (3) a piece description (commentary and analysis). Additionally, I compiled the demographic data into an online database (available at the following link: https://docs.google.com/spreadsheets/d/10-K4t_dEMk4WMQxMNqQSzY5BdUoToPn9JqGUxqelNyk/edit?usp=sharing). Based on the information I gathered, the results neither supported nor opposed my thoughts concerning difficulty level. Additionally, my analyses highlighted unique findings regarding instrumentation and mutes/extended techniques; these three items merit further analysis.

Difficulty Level

Concerning difficulty level, many commentators and authors (e.g., Denis Wick, Edward Kleinhammer, Buddy Baker, Marta Jean Hofacre, Robin Gregory) have avoided assigning a numeric grade to the works in their published lists of trombone quartet music. The only information included in most of these sources was the title, composer, and (occasionally) publisher. Mary Rasmussen was one of the few to comment on the difficulty level, albeit generically. She stated in her 1964 book, *Teacher's Guide to the Literature of Brass Instruments*, that “As with horns, *the* [italics in original] trombone ensemble is the quartet, although most of the repertoire is very difficult and better suited to college ensembles than to high school or junior high ones.”⁴⁶⁷ I challenged this comment in the *Thoughts on Trombone Quartet Repertoire*

⁴⁶⁷ Rasmussen, 22.

section of this document, claiming that this perspective was overly simplistic and that the repertoire had expanded between 1964 and 2025. Even though the ensemble’s repertoire has greatly expanded between 1964 and 2025, the findings of this analysis support Rasmussen’s statement—65% ($n = 39$) of the works yielded a grade four ($n = 16$) or grade five rating ($n = 23$). Notably, only five of these works have arrangers; the remaining thirty-four works are original compositions for trombone quartet. Table 6 shows the grade four works, and Table 7 shows the grade five works; both tables are in alphabetical order and contain information such as composer, arranger (if applicable), and composition title.

Table 6: Grade Four Trombone Quartets

Composer	Arranger	Composition Title
Peter Atherton	N/A	<i>Suite for Trombone Quartet</i>
Leslie Bassett	N/A	<i>Quartet for Trombones</i>
Ludwig van Beethoven	Keith Brown	<i>Drei Equali für vier Posaunen, WoO 30</i>
Anton Bruckner	Jay Friedman	<i>Adagio from Symphony No. 7</i>
Anton Bruckner	Ralph Sauer	<i>Three Motets</i>
Roger Chapman	N/A	<i>Suite of Three Cities for Four Trombones</i>
Désiré Dondeyne	N/A	<i>Suite pour Quatuor de Trombones</i>
Frigyes Hidas	N/A	<i>Scherzo e Corale per Quattro Trombone</i>
Gordon Jacob	N/A	<i>Suite for Four Trombones</i>
Patrick McCarty	N/A	<i>Recitative and Fugue for Trombone Quartet</i>
Arthur Meulemans	N/A	<i>Suite voor vier bazuinen in ut</i>
Vaclav Nelhybel	N/A	<i>6 Pieces for 4 Trombones</i>
Flor Peeters	N/A	<i>Suite for Trombone Quartet, Op. 82</i>
William Presser	N/A	<i>Chaconne and March for Trombone Quartet</i>
Alan Raph	N/A	<i>Burlesque for Trombone Quartet</i>
Fisher Tull	N/A	<i>Concert Piece for Four Trombones</i>

Table 7: Grade 5 Trombone Quartets

Composer	Arranger	Composition Title
Derek Bourgeois	N/A	<i>Trombone Quartet, Op. 117</i>
Roger Boutry	N/A	<i>Cinq Pièces a Quatre</i>
Eugene Bozza	N/A	<i>Trois Pieces pour Quatuor de Trombones</i>
Jacques Charpentier	N/A	<i>Quatuor de Forme Liturgique pour Quatre Trombones</i>
Claude Debussy	Michael Levine	<i>Trois Chansons</i>
Jean-Michel Defaye	N/A	<i>Quatre Pieces pour Quatuor de Trombones</i>
Pierre-Max Dubois	N/A	<i>Quatuor pour Trombones</i>
Eric Ewazen	N/A	<i>Myths and Legends</i>
Malcolm Forsyth	N/A	<i>Quartet '74 for Trombones</i>
Arthur Frackenpohl	N/A	<i>Trombone Quartet</i>
David Gow	N/A	<i>Suite for Four Trombones</i>
Alfred Hornoff	N/A	<i>Suite für vier Posaunen</i>
George Hyde	N/A	<i>Suite for Four Trombones</i>
James Kazik	N/A	<i>Three Movements for Four Trombones</i>
Jan Koetsier	N/A	<i>5 Impromptus for 4 Trombones</i>
Thelonious Monk	Slide Hampton	<i>'Round Midnight</i>
Jean-Pierre Müller	N/A	<i>Chorale et Variations pour 4 Trombones</i>
Buxton Orr	N/A	<i>5 Sketches for 4 Trombones</i>
Anthony Plog	N/A	<i>Trombone Quartet No. 1 "Densities"</i>
Raymond Premru	N/A	<i>Tissington Variations for Four Trombones</i>
Folke Rabe & Jan Bark	N/A	<i>Bolos</i>
Walter Ross	N/A	<i>Trombone Quartet</i>
Kazimierz Serocki	N/A	<i>Suita na 4 Puzony</i>

While the data from this analysis initially appeared to fully support Rasmussen's claim that most works for trombone quartet are more advanced, the repertoire has moderately expanded at the intermediate (2) and early-advanced (3) levels since 1964—however, mainly achieved through arrangements rather than original compositions. Both of these lower levels had nine pieces, accounting for 30% ($n = 18$) of all analyzed quartets; almost half ($n = 8$) are arrangements or transcriptions mostly reflecting the intermediate level.

The information I outlined above is relevant for two reasons. The first is the disproportionate number of original works to arranged works and its effect on instruction. Earlier in this document I mentioned that thirty-four of the thirty-nine grade four and five quartets did not have an arranger, while nine of the twenty-one grade one, two and three works had arrangers. With this relatively small sample size of sixty quartets, there appears to be a correlation between difficulty level and the inclusion of an arranger (or lack thereof). I think this connection could become clearer by adding more works to this database and compiling a larger sample size. It also brings up several questions: (1) Why are original compositions for this ensemble almost 75.0% more likely to be grade four or grade five? (2) Do composers specifically choose to write this way or do piece dedications, among other factors such as competition regulations, impact the final form each work takes? (3) Is there merit in arranging music originally for other chamber ensembles for the trombone quartet, not necessarily to legitimize the repertoire, but to expand it beyond music of the twentieth century?

After reflecting upon these questions, I would argue that composers write music they want to be performed, and music written for developing ensembles may not receive mainstream performances or acquire the same amount of recognition. It may be that composing with specific parameters and boundaries is viewed by some composers as restricting their creative processes.

Additionally, I also would argue there is merit in arranging more music for the ensemble no matter the level, if only to expose students to music beyond the twentieth and twenty-first centuries. Many existing works—such as *Suite of Lieder* written by Franz Schubert (transcribed/arranged by Lewis Rowell) and *Excerpts from “The Damnation of Faust”* by Hector Berlioz (arranged by Allen Ostrander)—can provide opportunities to teach musical curricula beyond the instrument (e.g., historical context). This approach provides students with a space to learn and develop into advanced performers who are capable of more difficult (grade four and five) works original to the trombone quartet repertoire.

The second reason this information is relevant is the disproportionate distribution of grade levels, and its effect on the way the repertoire has moderately expanded. This project has shown that the majority of trombone quartets are written for developed and professional ensembles and looking at the lower three levels highlights this even more. Of the twenty-one works in the lower three levels, almost all in the third level require tenor clef and half are most likely beyond high school students. These more difficult works include *Choral pour 4 Trombones ou Violoncellos* by André Amellér, *Two Pieces for Trombone Quartet* by Alexander Arutiunian, *Suite for 4 Trombones* by James W. Langley, *Two Bagatelles for Four Trombones* by Alfred Reed, and *Three Miniatures*, Op. 29 by David Uber. Of these five, Amellér’s quartet has the least technical musical content but requires trombones one through three to read tenor clef. Arutiunian’s quartet is the most approachable when considering all the different elements of music (pitch, rhythm, melody, harmony, etc.). Additionally, the only work that I would consider accessible for middle school/junior high students is *Rondo* by Joel Cohen (potentially an advanced 8th grade ensemble). Outside collections such as *Trombone Symphony* by Newell H. Long, *Trombone Ensemble Folio* arranged by Edward McLin, and *Quartet Repertoire for*

Trombone by H. Voxman, there are few original (or arranged) works for younger students. Even resources that are attempting to rectify this gap, such as the Apprentice Series by Michael Davis, contain some works inaccessible to junior high ensembles and most likely some high school ensembles.

Concerning this disproportionate distribution of grade levels across the trombone quartet repertoire, I have several questions: (1) Why are there not more mainstream compositions suitable for both mature high school and mixed collegiate ensembles? (2) Why are there few original compositions, or even high-quality arrangements, accessible to middle school and young high school ensembles? (3) What might encourage more composers to write high-quality literature accessible to developing ensembles? I posit at least three possible solutions—two compositional and one pedagogical. The first potential solution is to commission composers to write works specifically for younger demographics through individual patronage, consortiums, or competitions that involve monetary prizes. Such competitions could be structured similarly to the NBA/Merrill Jones Memorial Young Band Composition Contest,⁴⁶⁸ which prioritizes young composers and medium-easy repertoire, or the NBA/Alfred Young Band Competition Contest,⁴⁶⁹ which focuses specifically on music written for grade levels one through three; ITA (International Trombone Association) could even be involved. The second solution is to conduct research similar to this project but solely focus on works that reflect grades one through three; this would help bring lesser-known works into the mainstream repertoire. The third solution is that educators (including myself) have a responsibility to prepare, challenge, and develop their students so that the more advanced, original trombone quartet music can become accessible.

⁴⁶⁸ “NBA/Merrill Jones Memorial Young Band Composition Contest,” Composition Contests, National Band Association, accessed July 20, 2025, <https://nationalbandassociation.org/composition-contests/>.

⁴⁶⁹ “NBA/Alfred Publishing Young Band Composition Contest,” Composition Contests, National Band Association, accessed July 20, 2025, <https://nationalbandassociation.org/composition-contests/>.

Instrumentation

As with any ensemble, having access to the necessary instrumentation (as prescribed by the score/composer) is essential for performing a specific work. Upon further examination of these sixty trombone quartets, I observed a variety of instrumental configurations, including works that were playable on four tenor trombones; three tenor trombones and a bass trombone; two tenor trombones and two bass trombones; an alto trombone, two tenor trombones, and bass trombone; and two alto trombones, tenor trombone, and bass trombone. The most important observation concerns the bass trombone. Of the sixty works, 50.0% required bass trombone based on the criteria established in the methodology (i.e., the fourth part needed to descend below D2); this accounts for thirty pieces. Thus, half (50.0%) of the works analyzed do not require a bass trombone for performance and are accessible to ensembles without a bass trombonist. I found this finding surprising because I expected the bass trombone to be necessary for at least two-thirds of the analyzed works due to the parameters I put in place for this study; I expected the number to be higher than it was. Conversely, I was pleased to see that much of the repertoire is accessible via an F-attachment tenor trombone; this reality means the repertoire is more readily available to all trombonists rather than only those with specific equipment (i.e., bass trombone). I believe it is imperative to keep this balance within the repertoire, ensuring access to aspiring musicians regardless of their socio-economic status. Table 8 shows all the works that require bass trombone; information included is composer, arranger (if applicable), compositional title, and lowest notated pitch.

Table 8: Works Requiring Bass Trombone

Composer	Arranger	Composition Title	Lowest Notated Pitch
André Amellér	N/A	<i>Choral pour 4 Trombones ou Violoncellos</i>	Bb1
Peter Atherton	N/A	<i>Suite for Trombone Quartet</i>	Bb1
Derek Bourgeois	N/A	<i>Trombone Quartet, Op. 117</i>	F#1
Eugene Bozza	N/A	<i>Trois Pieces pour Quatuor de Trombones</i>	Bb1
Anton Bruckner	Jay Friedman	<i>Adagio</i> from Symphony No. 7	B#1
Anton Bruckner	Ralph Sauer	<i>Three Motets</i>	Bb1
Jacques Charpentier	N/A	<i>Quatuor de Forme Liturgique pour Quatre Trombones</i>	A#1
Claude Debussy	Michael Levine	<i>Trois Chansons</i>	B1
Eric Ewazen	N/A	<i>Myths and Legends</i>	G1
Malcolm Forsyth	N/A	<i>Quartet '74 for Trombones</i>	F1
Arthur Frackenpohl	N/A	<i>Trombone Quartet</i>	G1
David Gow	N/A	<i>Suite for Four Trombones</i>	C#2
Friyges Hidas	N/A	<i>Scherzo e Corale per Quattro Trombone</i>	C#2
Alfred Hornoff	N/A	<i>Suite für vier Posaunen</i>	Bb1
George Hyde	N/A	<i>Suite for Four Trombones</i>	C2
James Kazik	N/A	<i>Three Movements for Four Trombones</i>	Gb1
Jan Koetsier	N/A	<i>5 Impromptus for 4 Trombones</i>	Bb1
Thelonious Monk	Slide Hampton	<i>'Round Midnight</i>	Ab1
Buxton Orr	N/A	<i>5 Sketches for 4 Trombones</i>	Bb1
Flor Peeters	N/A	<i>Suite for Trombone Quartet, Op. 82</i>	C2
Anthony Plog	N/A	<i>Trombone Quartet No. 1 "Densities"</i>	C2
Raymond Premru	N/A	<i>Tissington Variations for Four Trombones</i>	Ab1
William Presser	N/A	<i>Chaconne and March for Trombone Quartet</i>	Ab1
Alan Raph	N/A	<i>Burlesque for Trombone Quartet</i>	Bb1
Alfred Reed	N/A	<i>Two Bagatelles for Four Trombones</i>	C2
Walter Ross	N/A	<i>Trombone Quartet</i>	Ab1

Camille Saint-Saëns	Ken Murley	<i>Adagio</i> from Symphony No. 3	Ab1
Kazimierz Serocki	N/A	<i>Suita na 4 Puzony</i>	Bb1
Fisher Tull	N/A	<i>Concert Piece for Four Trombones</i>	C2
David Uber	N/A	<i>Three Miniatures</i> , Op. 29	F1

Using a “straight” tenor trombone may be advantageous when playing within a trombone quartet, particularly in cases where the first trombone part contains extreme range or has a high tessitura. Of the works examined in this analysis, 28.3% ($n = 17$) contained first trombone parts that ascended to at least C#5, meriting the use of a “straight” tenor trombone. Additionally, thirteen of these works ascend to D5 or higher. Although the first trombone part in *Suite pour Quatour de Trombones* by Désiré Dondeyne does not ascend to C#5, I determined a straight tenor would be imperative because of the composer's soloistic treatment of the first trombone in the piece's first and fifth movements. Within these seventeen works, fifteen works were level five works. While this finding is less surprising than the bass trombone data, it does corroborate that many of the grade five compositions ascend to a high pitch and that the small-bore tenor could assist first trombonists in executing their musical lines. Conversely, this reality does not mean that the “straight” tenor trombone cannot be used for pieces *not* on the list. As evidenced by my experience with Désiré Dondeyne’s *Suite*, this decision is up to the performer and his/her interpretation because the instrument could be used on any piece as long as the part does not descend below E2 (excluding pedal tones). Ultimately, this information can serve as a reminder that just because the genre is generally “classical” does not mean the small-bore tenor is not a viable option when developing musical interpretations. Table 9 provides information such as composer, arranger (if applicable), composition title, and highest notated pitch for each work.

Table 9: Works with a “Straight” Tenor Trombone Recommendation

Composer	Arranger	Composition Title	Highest Notated Pitch
Anton Bruckner	Jay K. Friedman	<i>Adagio</i> from Symphony No. 7	C#5
Derek Bourgeois	N/A	<i>Trombone Quartet</i> , Op. 117	E5
Roger Boutry	N/A	<i>Cinq Pièces a Quatre</i>	F5
Eugene Bozza	N/A	<i>Trois Pieces pour Quatuor de Trombones</i>	D5
Jacques Charpentier	N/A	<i>Quatuor de Forme Liturgique pour Quatre Trombones</i>	C#5
Claude Debussy	Michael Levine	<i>Trois Chansons</i>	D5
Jean-Michel Defaye	N/A	<i>Quatre Pieces pour Quatuor de Trombones</i>	Eb5
Désiré Dondeyne	N/A	<i>Suite pour Quatuor de Trombones</i>	C5
Eric Ewazen	N/A	<i>Myths and Legends</i>	D5 (Optional F5)
Malcolm Forsyth	N/A	<i>Quartet '74 for Trombones</i>	D5
David Gow	N/A	<i>Suite for Four Trombones</i>	Db5
George Hyde	N/A	<i>Suite for Four Trombones</i>	Eb5
James Kazik	N/A	<i>Three Movements for Four Trombones</i>	D5
Jan Koetsier	N/A	<i>5 Impromptus for 4 Trombones</i>	D5
Thelonious Monk	Slide Hampton	<i>'Round Midnight</i>	C#5 (Optional F5)
Jean-Pierre Müller	N/A	<i>Chorale et Variations pour 4 Trombones</i>	D5
Raymond Premru	N/A	<i>Tissington Variations for Four Trombones</i>	D5

Next, only two works required the use of an alto trombone, accounting for only 3.3% of all analyzed entries. These works include *Suite für vier Posaunen* by Alfred Hornoff and *Drei Equali für vier Posaunen*, WoO 30 by Ludwig van Beethoven (arr. by Keith Brown)—the latter of which requires two altos. This finding was noteworthy because I anticipated the alto trombone to be more prevalent in this project due to the “loose” SATB construction of the trombone quartet. The top part is typically the highest, with each part subsequently lower in terms of pitch

content. I question why the alto trombone (which is more suitable for the high register) is not more utilized by composers—aside from the fact that the instrument did not make a return to the common performance world until the 1970s. Additionally, the alto trombone provides a unique timbre that creates a distinct ensemble sound, requiring ensemble members to blend differently than the typical three tenor and one bass instrumentation. Composers should be educated on the alto trombone and its idiosyncrasies so that they feel more empowered to write for the instrument—particularly in the quartet setting. I also recommend commissioning works with an instrumentation that specifically utilizes the alto trombone. Finally, *Chaconne and March for Trombone Quartet* by William Presser was the only work that merited the inclusion of two bass trombones, despite some scores formally specifying their use (i.e., *5 Sketches for 4 Trombones* by Buxton Orr).

Mutes and Extended Techniques

Regarding the utilization of mutes, 26.67% ($n = 16$) of the quartets I analyzed required such equipment. I found this to be surprising due to the lack of newer compositions included in this analysis. In my experience, especially with trombone solo repertoire, newer works often take advantage of the various timbres created by mutes while early and mid-twentieth century works tend to be more conservative. I expected the trombone quartet repertoire to run parallel to this observation; however, upon closer examination, fourteen of the sixteen works were composed in the 1960s or 1970s. The only two works on this list not from those two decades were *Quatre Pieces pour Quatour de Trombones* by Jean-Michel Defaye (1954) and *Trombone Quartet No. 1 “Densities”* by Anthony Plog (1998/2002). Finally, 100.0% of the works that incorporated mutes were original compositions. This is interesting as it coincides with the increased prevalence and variety of mutes in the twentieth century via the traditional orchestra and jazz orchestra’s birth.

Different mute types emerged throughout my analysis at unique rates. The straight mute was the most common, occurring in each work that required a mute of any kind. The cup mute was the second most prevalent, present in three works; the Harmon mute appeared in two works; the plunger and whisper mute both appeared in one work each, accounting for 6.3% of the quartets each. Five (31.3%) of these sixteen works called for multiple mutes. Table 11 shows the works that incorporate mutes, including the composer(s), composition title, and type(s) of mute(s) used, and publication date in alphabetical order.

Table 10: Works with Mutes

Composer	Composition Title	Type(s) of Mute(s)	Publication Date
André Ameller	<i>Choral pour 4 Trombones ou Violoncellos</i>	Straight	1960
Eugene Bozza	<i>Trois Pieces pour Quatuor de Trombones</i>	Straight	1964
Jean-Michel Defaye	<i>Quatre Pieces pour Quatuor de Trombones</i>	Cup; Straight	1954
Malcolm Forsyth	<i>Quartet '74 for Trombones</i>	Straight	1978
David Gow	<i>Suite for Four Trombones</i>	Straight	1967
Gordon Jacob	<i>Suite for Four Trombones</i>	Cup; Straight	1968
Jan Koetsier	<i>5 Impromptus for 4 Trombones</i>	Straight	1970
Vaclav Nelhybel	<i>6 Pieces for 4 Trombones</i>	Straight	1966
Buxton Orr	<i>5 Sketches for 4 Trombones</i>	Straight	1972
Anthony Plog	<i>Trombone Quartet No. 1 "Densities"</i>	Whisper; Straight	1998/2002
Raymond Premru	<i>In Memoriam for Trombone Quartet</i>	Straight	1961
Raymond Premru	<i>Tissington Variations for Four Trombones</i>	Straight	1972
William Presser	<i>Chaconne and March for Trombone Quartet</i>	Straight	1973
Folke Rabe & Jan Bark	<i>Bolos</i>	Harmon; Cup; Straight; Plunger	1962/1964
Walter Ross	<i>Trombone Quartet</i>	Harmon; Straight	1977
Fisher Tull	<i>Concert Piece for Four Trombones</i>	Straight	1968/1996

As for extended techniques, Lang argues that *Bolos* is one of the few true avant-garde trombone quartets.⁴⁷⁰ This research substantiated that claim since the most common extended techniques across the sixty analyzed works were glissando, multiple tonguing, lip trilling, and flutter tonguing. While these may not be considered the most advanced techniques in the trombone community, identifying which were present within each work was essential for the grading process and the piece description, since their inclusion (or lack thereof) could influence an instructor's decision to program a piece.

Twenty-four works in this analysis (40.0%) contained "extended techniques." The glissando is typically considered a standard extended technique in the trombone community; however, it only occurred in 31.7% ($n = 19$) of the examined pieces. This finding was unexpected because the glissando is commonly used by performers and composers alike. Some works contained cross-harmonic and traditional glissandi, while others contained only one type. Multiple tonguing was the next most prominent extended technique, occurring in 20.0% ($n = 12$); double and triple tonguing occurred within this category. Unlike a glissando, which the composer either notates or does not, this technical aspect was more subjective because every player's tonguing ability is different; certain performers can likely single-tongue specific lines discussed in the "Technical Considerations" category, while others will need to multiple-tongue additional passages. As I stated in the methodology, I focused on subdivision level rather than a benchmark tempo to make a recommendation. The only time I considered eighth-note lines were when they occurred in pieces/movements that featured a compound meter as a faster tempo. Every other suggestion included sixteenth notes, thirty-second notes, and triplets. The third most prominent extended technique was ornamentation, which only occurred in five (8.3%) of the

⁴⁷⁰ Lang, "Folke Rabe's *Bolos*: A Reading and Performing Guide," 12:59.

analyzed works. Grace notes, mordents, turns, and other related ornaments were compiled into this category; the grace note was the most prominent, occurring in each work that required ornamentation. The fourth most prevalent extended technique was the lip trill, occurring in two pieces total. The least present extended technique in this analysis was flutter-tongue, which only occurred in one piece.

Next, only 45.8% ($n = 11$) of these twenty-four works contained multiple extended techniques. The most common pairing was glissando and multiple tonguing, which occurred together in eight pieces. Finally, extended techniques and difficulty level were closely associated, as the majority of the pieces containing these techniques were more advanced. Of the twenty-four works, 87.5% ($n = 21$) were grade four or five in difficulty. This connection seems plausible because the more techniques required to perform a piece generally results in a higher grade level assigned. Of the three works that were not grade four or grade five, each contained only one extended technique. Alexander Arutiunian's *Two Pieces for Trombone Quartet* only contained a cross-harmonic glissando, Alfred Reed's *Two Bagatelles for Four Trombones* only contained multiple tonguing, and Schubert/Rowell's *Suite of Lieder* only contained ornamentation. Table 11 shows the works with extended techniques, including glissando (normal), cross-harmonic glissando, multiple tonguing, ornamentation, lip trilling, and flutter tonguing. This information includes the composer, arranger, composition title, and types of extended techniques. The only work not included in this table is *Bolos* by Folke Rabe and Jan Bark, due to the numerous avant-garde techniques the composers require of each performer. For more information on its techniques, refer to the piece entry on *Bolos*, specifically Figure 3 on page 392, or Will Lang's video entitled "Folke Rabe's Bolos: A Reading and Performing Guide."

Table 11: Works with Extended Techniques

Composer	Arranger	Composition Title	Type(s) of Extended Technique(s)
Alexander Arutiunian	N/A	<i>Two Pieces for Trombone Quartet</i>	Cross-Harmonic Glissando
Peter Atherton	N/A	<i>Suite for Trombone Quartet</i>	Glissando
Derek Bourgeois	N/A	<i>Trombone Quartet, Op. 117</i>	Multiple Tonguing; Glissando; Ornamentation
Roger Boutry	N/A	<i>Cinq Pièces a Quatre</i>	Glissando; Ornamentation
Eugene Bozza	N/A	<i>Trois Pieces pour Quatuor de Trombones</i>	Glissando; Multiple Tonguing; Ornamentation
Désiré Dondeyne	N/A	<i>Suite pour Quatuor de Trombones</i>	Glissando; Multiple Tonguing
Pierre-Max Dubois	N/A	<i>Quatuor pour Trombones</i>	Multiple Tonguing
Eric Ewazen	N/A	<i>Myths and Legends</i>	Glissando; Multiple Tonguing
Malcolm Forsyth	N/A	<i>Quartet '74 for Trombones</i>	Glissando; Multiple Tonguing
Arthur Frackenpohl	N/A	<i>Trombone Quartet</i>	Glissando
David Gow	N/A	<i>Suite for Four Trombones</i>	Glissando
George Hyde	N/A	<i>Suite for Four Trombones</i>	Glissando
James Kazik	N/A	<i>Three Movements for Four Trombones</i>	Multiple Tonguing; Ornamentation
Jan Koetsier	N/A	<i>5 Impromptus for 4 Trombones</i>	Glissando; Lip Trill; Multiple Tonguing
Thelonious Monk	Slide Hampton	<i>'Round Midnight</i>	Glissando
Vaclav Nelhybel	N/A	<i>6 Pieces for 4 Trombones</i>	Glissando
Flor Peeters	N/A	<i>Suite for Trombone Quartet, Op. 82</i>	Multiple Tonguing
Raymond Premru	N/A	<i>Tissington Variations for Four Trombones</i>	Glissando
Alfred Reed	N/A	<i>Two Bagatelles for Four Trombones</i>	Multiple Tonguing
Walter Ross	N/A	<i>Trombone Quartet</i>	Cross-Harmonic Glissando; Ghosted Notes; Glissando; Slide Vibrato
Kazimierz Serocki	N/A	<i>Suita na 4 Puzony</i>	Glissando; Lip Trill; Multiple Tonguing
Franz Schubert	Lewis Rowell	<i>Suite of Lieder for Four Trombones</i>	Ornamentation
Fisher Tull	N/A	<i>Concert Piece for Four Trombones</i>	Flutter Tongue; Glissando; Multiple Tonguing

Suggestions for Future Study

Based on the information gathered in this project, I recommend four main topics for further investigation: (1) a database of new works focusing on composer diversity and representation; (2) a database of works for trombone quartet and rhythm section; (3) a search for high-quality, accessible works for trombone quartet; (4) a theoretical analysis of the sixty works included in this present study

New Works and Composer Diversity/Representation

Few works in this analysis were composed between 2000 and 2025 and few were from the 1990s or 1980s, yet I developed a specific criterion to include original works composed after 1970 that appeared in extant source material. This outcome results from many standard trombone pedagogical sources being written in the late 1960s and early 1970s, prior to more modern/current compositions. Many of the pedagogical sources written between 1975 and 2000, such as “New Techniques Required to Perform Recent Music for the Trombone” by Milton Stevens⁴⁷¹ (1976), *The Modern Trombone: A Definition of Its Idioms* by Stuart Dempster (1979), and *Practical Introduction to Contemporary Trombone Techniques* by Benny Sluchin⁴⁷² (1995), among others, specifically address new performance techniques rather than list and identify chamber ensemble repertoire. Also, this research methodology did not represent music created by composers of color, female composers, and LGBTQ+ composers due to the same publication issues. This outcome results from composer diversity not being a high priority by authors/pedagogues when earlier texts were published. A new methodology emphasizing one or multiple minorities would need to be developed if a similar study were conducted for late

⁴⁷¹ Milton Lewis Stevens, Jr. “New Techniques Required to Perform Recent Music for the Trombone (DMA Dissertation, Boston University, 1976).

⁴⁷² Benny Sluchin, *Practical Introduction to Contemporary Trombone Techniques* (Editions Musicales Europeennes, 1995).

twentieth and early twenty-first century quartets (i.e., selection of works not based on listings in existing publications). Such a study could use a similar structure as this analysis but require fewer citations for inclusion. Likewise, varied factors (composer characteristics, year of publication, etc.) could be considered when selecting works rather than appearance on prescribed music lists and citations in existing literature.

Trombone Quartet with Rhythm Section

Even though the genre has developed due to the work of composers such as Michael Davis, this research did not include any works for trombone quartet and rhythm section because they all include other instrumentation (e.g., piano, guitar, bass, drums—rhythm section) outside the four trombones of a quartet. This type of ensemble can serve as an excellent vehicle to introduce and/or develop improvisation techniques while simultaneously curating a typical jazz rhythm section. Additionally, rhythm section inclusion also can provide an ensemble with different listening challenges and increase exposure to prominent jazz artists of the twentieth and twenty-first centuries. Using a similar framework and methodology (to this study) for demographic information, but adding different criteria such (e.g., rhythm-section construction, improvisation (which part(s) solo(s)), form (i.e., abca, aaba, etc.), style (swing, shuffle, bossa nova, etc.)) could serve the trombone community greatly by highlighting a lesser known subsection of the repertoire and assist instructors in making informed decisions on jazz-focused repertoire selection.

Search for High-Quality, Accessible Repertoire

One of the primary gaps in the repertoire that the findings from this study illuminated is the lack of quality lower level (i.e., less technically advanced) repertoire. Of the sixty works I analyzed, only three merited a level one rating. Using a different research methodology to find

less familiar quality level-one works would benefit the trombone community—particularly instructors who often are tasked with selecting literature for their students to study.

In addition to researching the existing literature available to trombonists, there are two specific approaches to creating more accessible literature for the trombone quartet that I recommend. The first is to commission current composers to create more accessible works for the ensemble. Of the level one and two works in this analysis, only four were original compositions, which seems insufficient in any attempt to expand the available literature for more beginning and intermediate ensembles. The second approach is to enhance the availability of less difficult works for the trombone quartet through increased arrangements. As I stated earlier, nine of the twenty-one level one, two, and level three works had an arranger, accounting for almost half of the music available to this level of performer. Solely searching out arrangements and/or subsidizing arranging to help diversify the repertoire and provide a space for student development and music instruction off the instrument is a noble endeavor.

Theoretical Analysis of the Sixty Trombone Quartets from this Study

The analyses conducted for this document were pedagogical in nature, focusing on classroom instruction in public schools and higher education. The goal was to provide instructors with an overview of each piece so they could make an informed educational decision about literature selection; therefore, the product resulted in demographic descriptions explaining how the music progresses with brief references to harmony, motivic development, and form rather than full theoretical analyses. Such an approach might explain why a musical figure is occurring in a certain way, how it functions, and its significance toward advanced interpretation and performance technique. One of the defining characteristics of the *Teaching Music Through Performance Series* is the harmonic analysis of each work. These harmonic analyses describe

key moments of each work via a diagram, providing valuable harmonic information (such as the progression), motivic identification, and formal structure, among other items to be considered alongside other demographic information. Future researchers might embark on a theoretical/harmonic analysis of each of these works to provide instructors further educational resources for musical decision making.

Bibliography

Articles, Books, and Magazines

- Baker, Buddy. *The Buddy Baker Tenor Trombone Handbook*, edited by Kevin Carroll. International Trombone Association Manuscript Press, 2001.
- Battisti, Frank L. *The New Winds of Change: The Evolution of the Contemporary American Wind Band/Ensemble and Its Music*. Meredith Music Publications, 2018.
- Berlin, Irving. "Anything You Can Do (I Can Do Better)." In *Annie Go Get Your Gun Voice Selections*. Hal Leonard, 1990.
- Blocher, Larry, Eugene Migliaro Corporon, Ray Cramer, Tim Lautzenheiser, Edward S. Lisk, and Richard Miles. *Teaching Music through Performance in Band*, vol. 1, 2nd ed., edited by Richard Miles. GIA Publications, 2009.
- Bone Jr., Lloyd E., and Eric Paull. *Guide to Euphonium Repertoire: The Euphonium Source Book*. Indiana University Press, 2007.
- Clendinning, Jane Piper, and Elizabeth West Marvin. *The Musician's Guide to Theory and Analysis*, 4th ed. W.W Norton and Co., 2021.
- Coltman, Felicity Ann. "Enhancing the Music Experience Through Chamber Music." *American Music Teacher* 33, no. 3 (January 1984): 10-12.
- Dempster, Stuart. *The Modern Trombone: A Definition of Its Idioms*. University of California Press, 1979.
- Everett, Thomas. *Annotated Guide to Bass Trombone Literature*. The Brass Press, 1985.
- Fink, Reginald. *The Trombonist's Handbook: A Complete Guide to Playing and Teaching the Trombone*. Accura Music, 1977.
- Gregory, Robin. *The Trombone: The Instrument and its Music*. Praeger Publishers, 1973.
- Hofacre, Marta Jean. *Teaching Collegiate Trombone Or, What I Did Anyway*. Published by the author, 2002.
- Kidson, Frank. *Traditional Tunes: A Collection of Ballad Airs*. Charles Tap House and Son, 1891.
- Kleinhammer, Edward. *The Art of Trombone Playing*. Summy-Birchard, 1963.
- Knaub, Donald. *Trombone Teaching Technique*. Rev. ed. Accura Music, 1998.
- McGee, Timothy J. "Emphasis on Chamber Music in High School." *Music Educators Journal* 53, no. 3 (November 1966): 116.

- Mercer, Fred. "Midland Tragedy." *Crescendo International* 7, no. 11 (June 1969): 32.
<https://nationaljazzarchive.org.uk/explore/journals/crescendo/crescendo-1969-june/1272892?q=peter%20atherton>.
- Morris, R. Winston, and Daniel Perantoni. *Guide to the Tuba Repertoire: The New Tuba Source Book*. Indiana University Press, 2006.
- Poultney, David. *Studying Music History: Learning, Reasoning, and Writing About Music History and Literature*. 2nd ed. Prentice-Hall Inc, 1996.
- Randel, Don Michael, ed. *The New Harvard Dictionary of Music*. The Belknap Press of the Harvard University Press, 1986.
- Rasmussen, Mary. *A Teacher's Guide to the Literature of Brass Instruments*. Brass Quarterly, 1964.
- Schoenbach, Sol. "Chamber Music in Secondary Schools." *Music Educators Journal* 49, no. 4 (February-March 1963): 73-74.
- Sluchin, Benny. *Practical Introduction to Contemporary Trombone Techniques*. Editions Musicales Europeennes, 1995.
- Thompson, J. Mark, ed. *Solos for the Student Trombonist: An Annotated Bibliography*. 2nd ed. The Brass Press, 2004.
- Thompson, J. Mark, and Jeffrey Jon Lemke. *French Music for Low Brass Instruments*. Indiana University Press, 1994.
- Tucker, Wallace E. "The Trombone Quartet: Its Appearance and Development Throughout History." *ITA Journal* 7, no. 1 (January 1979): 2-7.
- Vygotsky, Lev S. *Mind in Society: The Development of Higher Psychological Processes*. Harvard University Press, 1978.
- Werden, David. *Euphonium Music Guide*. Cimarron Music Press, 2006.
- Wick, Denis. *Trombone Technique*, rev. ed. Oxford University Press, 1973.
- The Wire. "Folke Rabe has Died." September 29, 2017.
<https://www.thewire.co.uk/news/48236/folke-rabe-has-died#fa-2018>.

Dissertations

- Davidson, Michael M. "An Annotated Database of 102 Selected Works for Trombone Requiring Multiphonics." DMA Document, University of Cincinnati, 2005.

- Flanigan, Sean Gerard. "From Deux Danses to Fluctuations: Compositional Components and Innovations in Two Solos Trombone Works of Jean-Michel Defaye." DMA diss., University of North Texas, 2006.
- Hutson, Danny James. "The Trombone Choir in Colleges and Universities in the United States: Its Organization, Current Practice, and Repertoire." DMA Document, University of Oklahoma, 1992.
- Keeling, Bruce Nathan. "The Trombone Quartet: A Brief Historical Overview and a Discussion of Selected, Original Published Twentieth Century Quartets." DMA Document, University of Oklahoma, 1991.
- Kimball, Wilford. "Alto Trombone Solo Literature: An Annotated Bibliography." DMA Document, Arizona State University, Tempe, 2001.
- Mullins, Dustin Kyle. "A Comparison of Rhythm, Articulation, and Harmony in Jean-Michel Defaye's *A La Maniere de Stravinsky pour Trombone et Piano* to Common Compositional Strategies of Igor Stravinsky." DMA diss., University of North Texas, 2014.
- Parker, Robert Carlisle. "A Performance Guide for Trombone Quartet - An Application of Pedagogical Concepts and Techniques for Developing Ensembles." DMA Essay, University of Iowa, 2018.
- Stevens, Milton Lewis, Jr. "New Techniques Required to Perform Recent Music for the Trombone." DMA Dissertation, Boston University, 1976.
- Wilson, Stephen Lee. "An Annotated Bibliography of Original Trombone Quartets Published Between 1992 and 2022." Dissertation, University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign, 2004.

Musical Scores

- Amellér, André. *Choral pour 4 Trombones ou Violoncellos*. Hinrichsen Edition Ltd., 1960.
- Arutiunian, Alexander. *Two Pieces for Trombone Quartet*. Editions Bim, 1989.
- Atherton, Peter. *Suite for Trombone Quartet*. Studio Music Company, 1967.
- Bassett, Leslie. *Quartet for Trombones*. Robert King Music, 1954.
- Beethoven, Ludwig van. *Drei Equali für vier Posaunen*, WoO 30. Arranged by Keith Brown. International Music Company, 2000.
- Berlioz, Hector. *Excerpts from "The Damnation of Faust."* Transcribed by Allen Ostrander. Edition Musicus, 1951.
- Blazhevich, Vladislav. *Valse de Concert*. Ed. by Frank D. Cofield. Hal Leonard, 1957.
- Bourgeois, Derek. *Trombone Quartet*, Op. 117. Editions Marc Reift, 1993.

- Boutry, Roger. *Cinq Pieces a Quatre*. Alphonse Leduc Editions Musicales, 1961.
- Bozza, Eugene. *Trois Pièces pour Quatuor de Trombones*. Alphonse Leduc Editions Musicales, 1964.
- Bruckner, Anton. *Adagio from Symphony No. 7*. Arranged by Jay K. Friedman. Ensemble Publications, 1967.
- . *Three Motets*. Transcribed by Ralph Sauer. Western International Music, 1977.
- Butts, Carrol M. *Suite for Trombones*. Shawnee Press, 1966.
- Chapman, Roger. *Suite of Three Cities for Four Trombones*. Edition Peters, 1960.
- Charpentier, Jacques. *Quatuor de Forme Liturgique pour Quatre Trombones*. Alphonse Leduc Editions Musicales, 1960.
- Cohen, Joel. *Rondo for Trombone Quartet*. Wingert Jones Publications, 1961.
- Debussy, Claude. *Trois Chansons*. Arranged by Michael Levine. Virgo Music Publishers, 1986.
- Defaye, Jean-Michel. *Quatre Pièces pour Quatuor de Trombones*. Alphonse Leduc Edition Musicales, 1954.
- Dondeyne, Désiré. *Suite pour Quatuor de Trombones*. Editions Marc Reift, 1949.
- Dubois, Pierre-Max. *Quatuor pour Trombones*. Alphonse Leduc Editions Musicales, 1962.
- Ewazen, Eric. *Myths and Legends*. International Trombone Association Manuscript Press, 2001.
- Forsyth, Malcolm. *Quartet '74 for Trombones*. Counterpoint Musical Services, 2004.
- Frackenpohl, Arthur. *Trombone Quartet*. Ensemble Publications, 1968.
- Gow, David. *Suite for Four Trombones*. Musica Rara, 1967.
- Haydn, Franz Joseph. *Achieved is the Glorious Work*. Arr. by Donald G. Miller. Rep. ed. Ensemble Publications, 2022.
- Hidas, Frigyes. *Scherzo E Corale per Quattro Tromboni*. Editio Musica Budapest, 1979.
- Hornoff, Alfred. *Suite für vier Posaunen*. Eres Edition, 1953.
- Hyde, George. *Suite for Four Trombones*. Western International Music, 1970.
- Jacob, Gordon. *Suite for Four Trombones*. Boosey & Hawkes, 1968.
- . *Two Madrigals for Trombone Quartet*. Trombone Association Publishing, 1990.
- Kazik, James. *Three Movements for Four Trombones*. Kagarice Brass Editions, 2001.
- Koetsier, Jan. *5 Impromptus for 4 Trombones*. Editions Marc Reift, 1970.

- Langley, James W. *Suite for 4 Trombones*. Studio Music Company, 1989.
- McCarty, Patrick. *Recitative and Fugue for Trombone Quartet*. Robert King Music, 1960.
- Mendelssohn, Felix and Gustave Wittman. *Equale No. 3*. Revised by Glenn Smith. Ludwig Music Publishers, 1995.
- Meulemans, Arthur. *Suite voor Vier Bazuinen in Ut*. Musikproduktion Höflich, 2020.
- Monk, Thelonius, Cootie Williams, Bernie Hanighen. *'Round Midnight*. Arranged by Slide Hampton. Advance Music, 1962.
- Morley, Thomas. *Now is the Month of Maying*. Ensemble Publications, 1967.
- Muller, Jean-Pierre. *Chorale et Variations pour 4 Trombones*. J. Maurer Editions Musicales, 1959.
- Nelhybel, Vaclav. *6 Pieces for 4 Trombones*. General Music Publishing, 1966.
- Orr, Buxton. *5 Sketches for 4 Trombones*. Robert King Music, 1972.
- Peeters, Flor. *Suite for Four Trombones*, Op. 82. Edition Peters, 1959.
- Plog, Anthony. *Trombone Quartet No. 1*. Editions Bim, 2002.
- Premru, Raymond. *In Memoriam for Trombone Quartet*. Ensemble Publications, 1961.
- . *Tissington Variations for Four Trombones*. Musica Rara, 1972.
- Presser, Williams. *Chaconne and March for Trombone Quartet*. Tenuto Publications, 1973.
- Rabe, Folke and Jan Bark. *Bolos*. Edition Wilhelm Hansen, 1964.
- Raph, Alan. *Burlesque for Trombone Quartet*. Wiltshire Music Company, 1956.
- Reed, Alfred. *Two Bagatelles for Four Trombones*. C.L. Barnhouse Company, 1983.
- Reichenbach, Bill, arr. *Scarborough Fair*. Virgo Music Publishers, 1986.
- Ross, Walter. *Trombone Quartet*. Boosey & Hawkes, 1977.
- Saint-Saëns, Camille. *Adagio from Symphony No. 3*. Arr. by Kenneth Murley. Rep. ed. Ensemble Publications, 2022.
- Sanders, Robert L. *Scherzo and Dirge for Four Trombones*. Robert King Music, 1948.
- Schubert, Franz. *Suite of Lieder for Four Trombones*. Transcribed by Lewis Rowell. Ensemble Publications, 1961.

- Serocki, Kazimierz. *Suita na 4 Puzony*. Polskie Wydawnictwo Muzyczne, 1953.
- Spears, Jared. *A Kensington Portrait for Trombone Quartet*. Grand Mesa Music Publishers, 1997.
- Speer, Daniel. *Sonata à 4*. Arr. Donald G. Miller. Ensemble Publications, 2009.
- Tanner, Paul. *A Study in Texture*. Dorabet Music Company, 1965.
- Tull, Fisher. *Concert Piece for Trombone Quartet*. International Trombone Association Manuscript Press, 1996.
- Uber, David. *Three Miniatures*, Op. 29. Ensemble Publications, 1967.

Websites and Databases

- Alfred Music. "Dr. Jared Spears." Authors. Last modified 2025.
<https://www.alfred.com/authors/dr-jared-spears/>.
- . "'Round Midnight." Advanced Music. Accessed February 17, 2025.
<https://www.alfred.com/round-midnight/p/01-ADV3500/>.
- Allencares.com. "Vernon Keith Brown." Obituaries. Accessed April 6, 2025.
<https://www.allencares.com/obituaries/Vernon-Brown-6/#!/Obituary>.
- American Composers Orchestra. "Patrick McCarty." Orchestras Bios. Accessed April 1, 2025,
https://archive.americancomposers.org/orchestra-new/orchestra_bios-htm/.
- Angkor Database. "Lewis Rowell." Authors. Accessed April 21, 2025.
<https://angkordatabase.asia/authors/lewis-rowell>.
- Anthony plog.com. "Biography." About. Last modified 2025.
<https://anthony plog.com/about/biography>.
- Bach–Cantatas.com. "Flor Peeters." Biographies of Poets and Composers. Last modified June 20, 2017. <https://www.bach-cantatas.com/Lib/Peeters-Flor.htm>.
- BandWorld.org. "American Band College Music Grading Chart." Pdfs. Last modified March 1, 2000. <https://www.bandworld.org/pdfs/gradingchart.pdf>.
- Bark, Jan and Folke Rabe. "Bolos." Ghermans Musikförlag. Last modified December 28, 2005.
<https://gehrmans.se/en/products/n10029-bolos>.
- . "Bolos." Solo & Ensemble. HeBu Musikverlag. Last modified February 1997.
<https://www.hebu-music.com/en/article/folke-rabe/carl-gehrmans-musikverlag/bolos.893225/>.

- Bashford, Christina. "Chamber Music." In *Grove Music Online*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2001–. Accessed May 27, 2024. <https://www-oxfordmusiconline-com.ezproxy.lib.ou.edu/grovemusic/display/10.1093/gmo/9781561592630.001.0001/omo-9781561592630-e-0000005379?rskey=HY3RNU&result=1#omo-9781561592630-e-0000005379-div1-0000005379.5>.
- BnF Data. "Gustave Wittman (1843–1920)." Authors. Accessed April 24, 2025. <https://data.bnf.fr/en/ark:/12148/cb148436814>.
- Boosey & Hawkes. "Gordon Jacob." Composer Index. Last modified 2025. <https://www.boosey.com/composer/Gordon+Jacob?tttype=BIOGRAPHY>.
- Brett, Philip and Tessa Muray. "Morely, Thomas." In *Grove Music Online*. Oxford University Press, 2001–. Accessed April 22, 2025. <https://www.oxfordmusiconline.com/grovemusic/display/10.1093/gmo/9781561592630.01.0001/omo-9781561592630-e-0000019147?rskey=Vnnm11&result=1>.
- British Music Collection. "Buxton Orr." Composers. Accessed March 11, 2025. <https://britishmusiccollection.org.uk/composer/buxton-orr>.
- . "David Gow." Composers. Accessed March 8, 2025. <https://britishmusiccollection.org.uk/composer/david-gow>.
- . "James Langley." Composers. Accessed April 20, 2025. <https://britishmusiccollection.org.uk/composer/james-langley>.
- Burlingame, Sandra. "Bernie Hanighen." Biographies. Jazzstandards.com. Accessed February 17, 2025. https://www.jazzstandards.com/biographies/biography_51.htm.
- Cherry Classics. "Forsyth." Accessed April 22, 2025. <https://cherryclassics.com/pages/Forsyth>.
- Chicago Symphony Orchestra. "Jay Friedman." Chicago Symphony Orchestra Musicians. Performers. Accessed April 9, 2025. <https://cso.org/about/performers/cso-musicians/brass/trombone/jay-friedman/>.
- Chromatone Center. "Standard Pitch Notation." Alternative Notation Systems. Notes. Theory. April 19, 2025. <https://chromatone.center/theory/notes/alternative/scientific/>.
- C. L. Barnhouse Company. "Jared Spears." Our Composers. Accessed February 10, 2025. <https://barnhouse.com/composer/jared-spears/>.
- Columbia University. "Joel E. Cohen." Faculty. Accessed February 10, 2025. <https://eesc.columbia.edu/content/joel-e-cohen>.
- CounterPoint Music Library Services. "Malcolm (Dennis) Forsyth." Featured Composers. Accessed April 22, 2025. https://cpmusiclibrary.ca/library_composer.php?cKey=FORMAL.

- Culbot, Hubert. "Arthur Meulemans (1884–1966)." Music Web International. Last Modified October 2002. https://www.musicweb-international.com/classrev/2002/Oct02/Meulemans_Culot.htm.
- Dallas Symphony Orchestra. "Malcolm Forsyth." Composers. Listen & Watch. DSO Kids. Community & Education. Accessed April 22, 2025. <https://www.dallassymphony.org/community-education/dso-kids/listen-watch/composers/malcolm-forsyth/>.
- Danbury News Times. "Alan Raph Obituary." Last modified December 10, 2023. <https://www.legacy.com/us/obituaries/newstimes/name/alan-raph-obituary?id=53804454>.
- Dallasbrass.com. "Michael Levine." Ensemble. Last modified 2016. <https://www.dallasbrass.com/michael-levine>.
- Derekbourgeois.com. "Biography." Accessed February 24, 2025. <https://www.derekbourgeois.com/biograph.htm>.
- Discogs.com. "Jan Bark." Artists. Accessed April 17, 2025. <https://www.discogs.com/artist/546086-Jan-Bark?srsltid=AfmBOorXeDBCCnyWSHwpMj3IgC5-tE8ReUcnXaRWXcqyaLehg46kuaUV>.
- Distler, Jed. "Jacques Charpentier's Etudes Karnatiques." Classicstoday.com. Accessed March 4, 2025. <https://www.classicstoday.com/review/jacques-charpentiers-etudes-karnatiques/>.
- Drobnakbrass.com. "Jan Koetsier (1911–2006)." ITEA Lifetime Achievement Recipients. ITEA Historian. Research. Accessed April 14, 2025. <https://redevelop.drobnakbrass.com/conc8/index.php/features/ITEA-Historian/itea-lifetime-achievement-recipients/jan-koetsier>.
- Dupaquier, Bernard. "An Exceptional Figure." The Man. Ameller.org. Last modified February 12, 2025. <https://ameller.org/en/homme01.php>.
- Editio Musica Budapest. "Hidas Frigyes." Composers. Accessed March 10, 2025. <https://www.umpemb.com/en-US/Composers/H/Hidas-Frigyes.aspx>.
- Editions Bim & The Brass Press. "Alexander Arutiunian." Composers. Last modified 2025. <https://www.editions-bim.com/composers/alexander-arutiunian>.
- . "Vladislav Blazhevich." Composers. Accessed March 30, 2025. <https://www.editions-bim.com/composers/vladislav-blazhevich>.
- Editors of Encyclopedia Britannica. "Cootie Williams." In *Encyclopedia Britannica*. Encyclopedia Britannica, Inc., 1994–. Article published on January 12, 2000; last modified September 11, 2024. <https://www.britannica.com/biography/Cootie-Williams>.

- . “Thelonious Monk. In *Encyclopedia Britannica*. Encyclopedia Britannica, Inc., 1994—. Article published on May 4, 1999; last modified on June 4, 2025. <https://www.britannica.com/biography/Thelonious-Monk>.
- . “Thomas Morley.” In *Encyclopedia Britannica*. Encyclopedia Britannica, Inc., 1994—. Article published on Jul 20, 1998; last modified on September 27, 2024. <https://www.britannica.com/biography/Thomas-Morley>.
- Ensemble Publications. “Achieved is the Glorious Work.” Trombone Quartets. Accessed February 24, 2025, <http://www.enspub.com/pages/04/04060.htm>.
- . “Excerpts from Damnation of Faust.” Trombone Quartets. Accessed April 13, 2025. <http://www.enspub.com/pages/43/43010.htm>.
- . “In Memoriam.” Trombone Quartets. Accessed April 13, 2025. <http://www.enspub.com/pages/04/04290.htm>.
- . “Miniatures (3), Op. 29.” Trombone Quartets. Accessed April 13, 2025. <http://www.enspub.com/pages/04/04320.htm>.
- . “Sonata à 4.” Trombone Quartets. Accessed March 29, 2025. <http://www.enspub.com/pages/04/04090.htm>.
- . “Suite of Lieder.” Trombone Quartets. Accessed April 21, 2025. <http://www.enspub.com/pages/04/04100.htm>.
- . “Trombone Quartet.” Trombone Quartets. Accessed April 6, 2025. <http://www.enspub.com/pages/04/04330.htm>.
- Ericwazen.com. “About the Composer.” Accessed March 3, 2025. <https://www.ericwazen.com/about.php>.
- Eugenebozza.com. “Biography.” Last modified December 17, 2006. <https://www.eugenebozza.com/index.php>.
- Ewazen, Eric. “Eric Ewazen: Myths and Legends – Trombone Quartets.” ITA Press. Warwick Music. Accessed March 3, 2025. <https://www.warwickmusic.com/p/ukse/>.
- Folkerabe.se. “Folke Rabe and General Entertainment.” Home Page. Accessed April 26, 2025. <https://folkerabe.se/>.
- Freidman, Jay. “Biography.” About. Jayfriedman.com. Last modified August 5, 2020, <https://www.jayfriedman.net/biography/>.
- Gillespie, John, Wendell Nelson, Carl Zytowski. “Roger Chapmen, Music: Santa Barbara.” In *University of California: In Memoriam*. Berkeley, CA: University of California Regents, 1990. <https://oac.cdlib.org/view?docId=hb5f59n9gs;NAAN=13030&doc.view=frames&chunk.id=div00007&toc.depth=1&toc.id=&brand=oac4>.

- Grand Mesa Music Publishers. "A Kensington Portrait." Solo and Ensemble. Last modified 2025. https://www.grandmesamusic.com/component/musicpublisher/song_view/523.
- Griffith, Paula. "Atherton, Peter." Music Teachers. Staff. Aymestreyschool.com. Accessed April 24, 2025. <https://www.aymestreyschool.com/music-teachers.html>.
- Griffiths, Paul. "Six, Les." *Grove Music Online*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2001—. Accessed April 4, 2025. <https://www-oxfordmusiconline-com.ezproxy.lib.ou.edu/grovemusic/display/10.1093/gmo/9781561592630.001.0001/omo-9781561592630-e-0000025911?rskey=qFCQib&result=1>.
- HeBu Musikverkag. "Carrol Butts." Musicians. Accessed April 3, 2025. <https://www.hebu-music.com/en/musician/carrol-butts.18825/?page=1>.
- Heritage Encyclopedia of Band Music. "McCarty, Patrick." Accessed April 1, 2025. <https://hebm.info/SearchResults.aspx?ID=16567>.
- Hickeys.com. "Bassett, Leslie Quartet." Trombone Quartets. Accessed March 27, 2025. <https://www.hickeys.com/search/products/sku007843.php>.
- . "Bruckner, Anton (Friedman) Adagio, from Symphony No. 7." Trombone Quartets. Accessed April 10, 2025. <https://www.hickeys.com/search/products/sku011962.php>.
- . "Bruckner, Anton (Sauer) Motets (3)." Trombone Quartets. Accessed April 8, 2025. <https://www.hickeys.com/search/products/sku013361.php>.
- . "Chapman Suite of Three Cities." Trombone Quartets. Accessed February 17, 2025. <https://www.hickeys.com/search/products/sku018240.php>.
- . "Charpentier, Jacques Quatuor de Forme Liturgique – Score and Parts." Trombone Quartets. Accessed March 4, 2025. <https://www.hickeys.com/search/products/sku021607.php>.
- . "Debussy, Claude (Levin) Chansons (3)." Trombone Quartets. Accessed March 5, 2025. <https://www.hickeys.com/search/products/sku000183.php>.
- . "Ewazen, Eric Myths & Legends." Trombone Quartets. Accessed March 3, 2025. <https://www.hickeys.com/search/products/sku038522.php>.
- . "Jacob, Gordon Madrigals (2)." Trombone Quartets. Accessed February 10, 2025. <https://www.hickeys.com/search/products/sku079181.php>.
- . "McCarty, Patrick Recitative and Fugue." Trombone Quartets. Accessed April 1, 2025. <https://www.hickeys.com/search/products/sku007852.php>.
- . "Morley, Thomas (Myers) Now is the Month of Maying." Trombone Quartets. Accessed April 22, 2025. <https://www.hickeys.com/search/products/sku011967.php>.

- . “NYSSMA Solo & Ensemble Catalog.” Contests Catalog. Last modified July 2022. <https://www.hickeys.com/music/contests/NYSSMA/>.
- . “Orr, Buxton Sketches (5).” Trombone Quartets. Accessed March 11, 2025. https://www.hickeys.com/music/chamber_music/brass_ensembles/trombone_quartets/products/sku014362-orr-buxton-sketches-5.php.
- . “Plog, Anthony Quartet No. 1 – Densities.” Trombone Quartets. Accessed February 27, 2025. <https://www.hickeys.com/search/products/sku055529.php>.
- . “Reed, Alfred Bagatelles (2).” Trombone Quartets. Accessed February 17, 2025. <https://www.hickeys.com/search/products/sku018333.php>.
- . “Serocki, Kazimierz Suite na 4 Puzony.” Trombone Quartets. Accessed March 9, 2025. <https://www.hickeys.com/search/products/sku026104.php>.
- Hopkins, Kate. “What You Should Know About Anton Bruckner.” News. London Symphony Orchestra. Last modified August 23, 2023. <https://www.lso.co.uk/what-you-should-know-about-anton-bruckner/>.
- Indiana Band Masters Association. “Frank D. Cofield Obituary.” Accessed March 30, 2025. https://www.indianabandmasters.org/pbm_obits/COFIELD.Obit.pdf.
- Indiana University Bloomington. “Lewis Rowell.” Faculty. Jacobs School of Music. Accessed April 21, 2025. <https://music.indiana.edu/faculty/emeritus/rowell-lewis-e.html>.
- International Music Score Library Project. “Wittmann, Gustave/Arranger.” All People. Accessed April 24, 2025. https://imslp.org/wiki/Category:Wittmann,_Gustave/Arranger.
- Johnson, Martin. “Slide Hampton, trombonist who also made a lasting impression as a master arranger, is dead at 89.” WGBO. Last modified November 22, 2021. <https://www.wbgo.org/2021-11-22/slide-hampton-trombonist-who-also-made-a-lasting-impression-as-a-master-arranger-is-dead-at-89>.
- JWPepper.com. “Suite for Trombones.” Instrumental Music. Accessed April 3, 2025. https://www.jwpepper.com/suite-for-trombones-998989-1582318/p?srsId=AfmBOooPrepRL2kdQqfVwvZB9x0VESH_VObzX6H2K0WMeJUfCTYG8ckc.
- Kazik, James. “Home.” Jameskazik.com. Accessed February 17, 2025. <https://www.jameskazik.com/>.
- Kendor Music Publishing. “David Uber.” Composers. Accessed April 13, 2025. <https://kendormusic.com/product-category/composers/david-a-uber/>.
- Kimball, Wilford. “Home.” Kimballtrombone.com. Last modified 2020. <https://kimballtrombone.com>.

- . “Top 40 Trombone Quartets.” Entertainment. HubPages.com. last modified January 4, 2019. <https://discover.hubpages.com/entertainment/Top-30-Trombone-Quartets>.
- Landon, H.C. Robbins and Karl Geiringer. “Joseph Haydn.” In *Encyclopedia Britannica*. Encyclopedia Britannica, Inc., 1994–. Article Published July 20, 1998; last modified May 27, 2025. <https://www.britannica.com/biography/Joseph-Haydn>.
- Lesliebassett.com “Biography.” Accessed March 27, 2025. <https://lesliebassett.com/biography/>.
- Lindstedt, Iwona. “Casimir Serocki – Suite for 4 Trombones.” PWM. Accessed March 9, 2025. <https://pwm.com.pl/pl/sklep/publikacja/suita,kazimierz-serocki,12300,ksiegarnia.htm>.
- Loadbang.com. “Bios.” About. Accessed June 2, 2025. <https://www.loadbang.com/bios.html>.
- Lockspeiser, Edward. “Felix Mendelssohn.” In *Encyclopedia Britannica*. Encyclopedia Britannica, Inc., 1994–. Article published July 20, 1998; last modified June 4, 2025. <https://www.britannica.com/biography/Felix-Mendelssohn>.
- McLeod, Sam. “Vygotsky’s Zone of Proximal Development.” Child Psychology. Simple Psychology. Last modified August 9, 2024. <https://www.simplypsychology.org/zone-of-proximal-development.html>.
- Midland Youth Orchestra. “The James Langley Memorial Trust.” Accessed April 21, 2025. <http://www.mlyo.org.uk/jlmt/jlmt.html>.
- Murphy-Manley, Sheryl K. “A Tribute to Fisher Tull (1934 – 94).” Biography. Fishertull.com. Accessed April 8, 2025. <http://fishertull.com/bio/>.
- Music Academy of the West. “Ralph Sauer.” Profiles. Last modified April 7, 2018. <https://musicacademy.org/profile/ralph-sauer/>.
- Music Library. “Buffalo Musician Results.” Collections. Accessed February 25, 2025. <https://library2.buffalo.edu/music/collections/buffalo-musicians/results.html?lastname=m>.
- Musk, Andrea. “Dubois, Pierre Max.” *Grove Music Online*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2001–. Accessed April 4, 2025. <https://www-oxfordmusiconline-com.ezproxy.lib.ou.edu/grovemusic/display/10.1093/gmo/9781561592630.001.0001/omo-9781561592630-e-0000008231?rskey=hV0rOI&result=1>.
- National Endowment for the Arts. “Slide Hampton, Trombonist, Arranger, Composer, Educator.” Honors. NEA Jazz Masters Fellowships. Accessed February 17, 2025. <https://www.arts.gov/honors/jazz/slide-hampton>.
- National Band Association. “NBA/Alfred Publishing Young Band Composition Contest.” Composition Contests. Accessed July 20, 2025. <https://nationalbandassociation.org/composition-contests/>.

- . “NBA/Merrill Jones Memorial Young Band Composition Contest.” Composition Contests. Accessed July 20, 2025. <https://nationalbandassociation.org/composition-contests/>.
- Naxos. “Arthur Meulemans.” Composers. Accessed April 19, 2025. https://www.naxos.com/Bio/Person/Arthur_Meulemans/24630.
- Polish Music Center. “Kazimierz Serocki.” Composers. Research. Accessed March 9, 2025. <https://polishmusic.usc.edu/research/composers/kazimierz-serocki/>.
- Rabe, Folke and the New Culture Quartet. “Nya Kulturkvartetten.” Projects. Fuzzy.dk. Accessed April 27, 2025. <https://www.fuzzy.dk/kulturkvartetten.php>.
- “Raymond Premru, Professor of Trombone and Esteemed Colleague, Dies at Age 63.” Featured Stories. Oberlin College and Conservatory. Last modified 1998. <https://www2.oberlin.edu/consrv/connews/current/premru.html>.
- RBC Publications. “Paul Tanner.” Composers. Accessed March 30, 2025. <https://rbcmusic.com/product-category/composers/paul-tanner/>.
- Reynolds, Brian. “The BBC Midland Light Orchestra.” Masters of Melody. Accessed April 24, 2025. <http://www.mastersofmelody.co.uk/bbcmlo.htm>.
- Richard Myers Memorial Trombone Trio Composition Contest. “Richard Myers Biography.” Accessed April 22, 2025. <https://myerstrombonetrio.wordpress.com/about/richard-myers-biography/>.
- Robert, Rosemary and John Butts. “Speer, Daniel.” In *Grove Music Online*. Oxford University Press, 2001–. Accessed March 29, 2025. <https://www-oxfordmusiconline-com.ezproxy.lib.ou.edu/grovemusic/display/10.1093/gmo/9781561592630.001.0001/omo-9781561592630-e-0000026380?rskey=9MNZqC&result=1>.
- Roy, Klaus G. “Raymond Premru.” Clevelandartsprize.org. Last modified 1997. <https://clevelandartsprize.org/artistlist/raymond-premru/>.
- Sofiaphilharmonic.com. “Georg Daniel Speer.” Authors. Accessed March 27, 2025. <https://sofiaphilharmonic.com/en/authors/georg-daniel-speer-en/>.
- . “Vladislav Blazhevich. Authors. Accessed March 30, 2025. <https://sofiaphilharmonic.com/en/authors/vladislav-blazhevich-en/>.
- State University of New York Potsdam. “Art Frackenpohl, Renowned Composer and Professor Emeritus at SUNY Potsdam’s Crane School of Music, Passes Away.” News. Last modified June 17, 2019. <https://www.potsdam.edu/news/suny-potsdam-community-mourns-passing-crane-professor-emeritus-arthur-frackenpohl>.
- Studio Music Company. “Suite for Trombone Quartet.” Instrumental. Accessed April 22, 2025. <https://www.studio-music.co.uk/m050034698>.

- The Editorial Staff. "Death of Conductor and Composer Désiré Dondeyne." Resmusica.com. Last modified February 12, 2015. <https://www.resmusica.com/2015/02/12/deces-du-chef-et-compositeur-desire-dondeyne/>.
- The Kennedy Center. "Robert L. Sanders." Artists. Accessed January 25, 2025. <https://www.kennedy-center.org/artists/s/sa-sn/robert-sanders/>.
- The Spokesman-Review. "Obituary: Hyde, George Winslow." Obituaries. Last modified March 30, 2014. <https://www.spokesman.com/stories/2014/mar/30/obituary-hyde-george-winslow/>.
- The University of Southern Mississippi. "William Presser Original Music Scores." Collections. Last modified January 17, 2020. <https://specialcollections.usm.edu/repositories/3/resources/574>.
- Trombonechat.org. "10 Best Trombone Quartets." Forums. Last modified October 26, 2021, <https://trombonechat.com/viewtopic.php?t=22232>.
- Trombone Page of the World. "Alan Raph." Last modified October 15, 2020. http://www.trombone-usa.com/raph_alan_bio.htm.
- . "Glenn P. Smith 1912–1917." Last modified October 14, 2020. http://www.trombone-usa.com/smith_glenn_bio.htm.
- Tull, Fisher. "Fisher Tull: Concert Piece – Trombone Quartet." ITA Press. Warwick Music. Accessed April 8, 2025. <https://www.warwickmusic.com/p/iewc/>.
- United Music & Media Publishers. "Uber, David." Composers/Arrangers. Accessed April 13, 2025. <https://ummpstore.com/collections/uber-david>.
- University Interscholastic League. "345 Trombone Quartet." 2024-2025 Prescribed Music List. Last modified September 1, 2024. <https://www.uiltexas.org/pml/>.
- University of Michigan News. "Music Prof. Emeritus Glenn Smith died June 16." Last modified July 10, 1997. <https://news.umich.edu/music-prof-emeritus-glenn-smith-died-june-16/>.
- University of Scranton. "Vaclav Nelhybel Biography." Academics. Accessed March 10, 2025, <https://www.scranton.edu/academics/performance-music/nelhybel/bio.shtml>.
- Virgo Music Publishers. Scarborough Fair (arr. Bill Reichenbach) for Trombone Quartet." Products. Last modified 2023, <https://www.virgomusicpublishers.com/shop/scarborough-fair-arr-bill-reichenbach-vo09/>.
- . "Trois Chansons (Claude Debussy / arr. Michael Levin) for Trombone Quartet." Products. Last modified 2023. <https://www.virgomusicpublishers.com/shop/trois-chansons-claude-debussy-arr-michael-levin-vo08/>.

- Walterross.com. "Biography." Accessed March 12, 2025.
<https://www.walterross.com/biography.html>
- Watson, Derek. "Anton Bruckner." In *Encyclopedia Britannica*. Encyclopedia Britannica, Inc., 1994—. Article published July 20, 1998; last modified October 7, 2024.
<https://www.britannica.com/biography/Anton-Bruckner>.
- Whitlock Mortuary, Inc. "Kenneth Murley Obituary." Last modified February 9, 2014.
<https://www.legacy.com/us/obituaries/name/kenneth-murley-obituary?pid=179183889>.
- Wiktionary. "Campane." Last modified June 25, 2025. <https://en.wiktionary.org/wiki/campane>.
- Wind Repertory Project. "Alfred Reed." Composers. Last modified February 1, 2025.
https://www.windrep.org/Alfred_Reed.
- WindSong Press. "Allen E. Ostrander." Trombone Legends. Brass Legends. Accessed April 13, 2025. <https://www.windsongpress.com/brass%20players/trombone/Ostrander.pdf>.
- Wingertjones.com. "Joel Cohen." Composers. Accessed February 10, 2025.
<https://wingertjones.com/product-category/composers/joel-cohen/>.
- . Rondo. Brass Ensembles. Accessed February 10, 2025.
<https://wingertjones.com/product/9051860-rondo-joel-cohen/>.
- Wise Music Classical. "Eugene Bozza." Composers. Accessed January 30, 2025.
<https://www.wisemusicclassical.com/composer/3404/Eug%C3%A8ne-Bozza/>.
- . "Jacques Charpentier." Composers. Accessed March 3, 2025.
<https://www.wisemusicclassical.com/composer/4393/Jacques-Charpentier/>.
- . "Jean-Michel Defaye." Composers. Accessed February 13, 2025.
<https://www.wisemusicclassical.com/composer/4403/Jean-Michel-Defaye/>.
- . "Pierre-Max Dubois." Composers. Accessed April 4, 2025.
<https://www.wisemusicclassical.com/composer/3648/Pierre-Max-Dubois/>.
- . "Roger Boutry." Composers. Accessed April 1, 2025.
<https://www.wisemusicclassical.com/composer/4384/Roger-Boutry/>.
- Yeo, Douglas. "Keith Brown (1933 – 2018)." *The last trombone*.com. Last modified May 10, 2018. <https://thelasttrombone.com/2018/05/10/keith-brown-1933-2018/>.

Discography

- Ahle, Johann Rudolf, Ludwig van Beethoven, Anton Bruckner, Giovanni Martino Cesare, Heinrich Isaac, Johann Erasmus Kindermann, Wenzel Lambel, Samuel Scheidt, Johann Hermann Schein, Heinrich Schütz, Thomas Selle, Daniel Speer. *German Music for Trombones*. Recorded by the Triton Trombone Quartet, 1994. BIS CD-644, CD. <https://music.apple.com/us/album/triton-trombone-quartet-german-trombone-music/1727121231>.
- Andresen, Mogens, Hermann Bäumer, Derek Bourgeois, Brett Dean, Ulrich Dieckmann, Alfonso Ferrabosco II, Charles Ives, Raymond Premru, Nick Woud. *Triton's Journey*. Recorded by the Triton Trombone Quartet, Bjørn Kåre Moe, Ingo Petry, and Dick van Dijk, 1998. BIS CD-884, CD. <https://music.apple.com/us/album/woud-serenade-bourgeois-fantasia-on-the-hexachord/1727117000>.
- Apon, Saskia, Jan Bark, Derek Bourgeois, Chirstian Lindberg, Folke Rabe, Danile Schnyder. *Full Power*. Recorded by Trombone Unit Hanover, 2013. Genuin, CD. <https://classical.music.apple.com/in/album/634116486>.
- Arlen, Harold, J.S. Bach, J.B. de Boismortier, Jean-Michel Defaye, Arthur Herzog Jr. Billie Holiday, Jan Koetsier, Felix Mendelssohn, Jack Nortworth, Gioachino Rossini, Alber von Tizler. *Four of a Kind 2*. Recorded by Joseph Alessi, Scott A. Harmon, Mark H. Lawrence, and Blair Bollinger, 2003. Summit Records DCD345, CD. <https://music.apple.com/us/album/four-of-a-kind-2/70710356>.
- Arensky, Anton, Ludwig van Beethoven, Irving Berlin, Anton Bruckner, Frigyes Hidas, A Leontyev, Brian E. Lynn, Patrick McCarty, Flore Peeters, Walter Ross, Erik Satie, Johann Hermann Schein, Daniel Speer, Garth Wood. *Quatuor De Trombones*. Recorded by The Liege Trombone Quartet, 2012. Cascade – X5 Music Group, CD. <https://music.apple.com/us/album/quatuor-de-trombones/504896247>.
- Arutiunian, Alexander, Ludwig van Beethoven, Désiré Dondeyne, Karl Heinrich Graun, Robert Müller, Alexander Tcherepnin, Richard Wagner. *Latex Trombones*. Recorded by the Latex Trombone Quartet, 2002. Trimble Productions, CD.
- Bach, Johann Sebastian, Béla Bartók, Claude Debussy, E.B. Edwards, Gordon Jacob, Georg Lohman, Ingo Luis, Jérôme Naulais, Vaclav Nelhybel, Francis Poulenc, Gioachino Rossini, A Sbarbaro. *Posaunen Teufel*. Recorded by Hiroyuki Odagiri, Shinji Koga, Yuri Iguchi, and Jyunpei Inoue, 2006. Mesiter Music, CD. <https://music.apple.com/us/album/posaunen-teufel/635243079>.
- Bach, Johann Sebastian, Joahannes Brahms, Roger Chapman, Claude Debussy, Arthur Frackenpohl, J. Gale, Lew Gillis, Ernst-Thilo Kalk, John Kander, H. Odagir, Flor Peeters, Lew Pollack, E. Williams. *Suite of Three Cities*. Recorded by the Tokyo Metropolitan Trombone Quartet, 2009. Meister Music, CD. <https://music.apple.com/us/album/suite-of-three-cities/356027783>.

- Bach, J.S., Ludwig van Beethoven, Claude Debussy, Désiré Dondeyne, F. J. Haydn, Heinrich Isaac, Antonio-Carlos Jobim, Felix Mendelssohn, Samuel Scheidt, Kazimierz Serocki, Giuseppe Verdi, Anton von Webern. *Four of a Kind*. Recorded by Joseph Alessi, Scott A. Harmon, Mark H. Lawrence, and Blair Bollinger, 1991. Summit Records DCD123, CD. <https://music.apple.com/us/album/four-of-a-kind/78984971>.
- Bach, J.S., Anton Brucker, Pierre Max Dubois, Steve Green, Edvard Grieg, Hans Leo Hassler, James Kazik, Giselher Klebe, Koji Kondo, Gioachino Rossini. *The Lexingport Project*. Recorded by the Momus Trombone Quartet, 2002. Published by the ensemble, CD. <https://music.apple.com/us/album/the-lexingport-project/6195218>.
- Bach, J.S., Anton Bruckner, Gustav Mahler, Olivier Messiaen, Dmitri Shostakovich, Jean Sibelius, Ralph Vaughn Williams. *Departure*. Recorded by Gerry Pagano, 2009/2011. Published by the performer, CD. <https://music.apple.com/us/album/departure/454542362>.
- Bach, J.S., Stephen Bulla, John Cheetham, Arthur Frackenpohl, Jimmy van Heusen, James Hook, Scott Joplin, Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart, Nikolai Risky-Korsakov, Camille Saint-Saëns, John Philip Sousa. *In at the Deep End*. Recorded by The British Tuba Quartet, 1991. Heavyweight Records, CD. <https://music.apple.com/us/album/in-at-the-deep-end/258836932>.
- Barber, Samuel, Roger Chapman, Claude Debussy, Arthur Frackenpohl, Frigyes Hidas, Vaclav Nelhybel, David Uber. *Four in Hand*. Recorded by the Japan XO Quartet and Masakatsu Kurita, 2009. Meister Music, CD. <https://music.apple.com/us/album/four-in-hand/1130820742>.
- Bassett, Leslie, Eric Ewazen, John La Montaine, Phillip Schroeder, Phil Snedecor, Fisher Tull, Charles Wuorinen. *Myths and Legends*. Recorded by Stentorian Consort, 2008. Albany Records TROY 948, CD. <https://music.apple.com/us/album/myths-and-legends/288678525>.
- Bikkembergs, Kurt, Anton Bruckner, Ludo Claesen, Arthur Meulemans, Herman Meulemans, Jules van Nufel, Paul Schollaert, Paul Steegmans, Rene Vanstreels. *Anton Bruckner – Choral Masse: Flamish Sacred Music*. Recorded by Ludo Claesen and the Choir of Saint Martin, Hasselt, 2021. Digital Masterworks, digital. <https://open.spotify.com/album/14ea4TbACfZSnsel3xYTzk>.
- Bolter, Norman, Marc-Antoine Charpentier, Eric Ewazen, Alfred Hornoff, Hannes Meyer, Leopold Mozart, Corrado Saglietti. *The Return of the Alto*. Recorded by Ronald Barron, 2004. Boston Brass Series BB-1008CD, CD.
- Bozza, Eugene, Anton Bruckner, Kazimierz Serocki, Johann Staden, Jan Pierszoon Sweelinck. *Posaunen Quartette*. Recorded by Westfälisches Posaunenquartette, 1984. Dabringhaus und Grimm, MD + G L 3094, CD.
- Bozza, Eugene, Claude Debussy, Fernand Desprez, Pierre Max Dubois, Paul Dukas, Michael Praetorius. *French Music for Trombones*. Recorded by the Triton Trombone Quartet,

1993. BIS CD-604, CD. <https://music.apple.com/us/album/desprez-f-bozza-praetorius-trombone-music/1727208678>.
- Braun, Peter Michael. Gunnar Jansson, Johannes Kretz, Tadesz Maklakiewicz, Flor Peeters, Kazimierz Serocki. *Trombone Angels*. Recorded by the Triton Trombone Quartet, 1996. BIS CD-694, CD. <https://music.apple.com/us/album/triton-trombone-quartet-trombone-angels/1727197734>.
- Bruckner, Anton, Jacques Charpentier, Paul Dukas, George Gershwin, P. Thomas Hanson, Paul Hindemith, Martin Kennedy, Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart. *Fleur De Lis*. Recorded by The Trombones of the Saint Louis Symphony, 2013. Published by the ensemble, CD. <https://music.apple.com/us/album/fleur-de-lis/700421085>.
- Bruckner, Anton, David Gow, Jean Baptiste Loeillet, Ingo Luis, Goff Richards, Henri Tomasi. *Lullaby*. Recorded by the Tokyo Metropolitan Trombone Quartet, 2011. Meister Music, CD. <https://open.spotify.com/album/4gNP886UNivMg6ykcdqQEk>.
- Corelli, Arcangelo, Eric Ewazen, Giovanni Gabrielli, Frigyes Hidas, Anthony Plog, Francis Poulenc, Raymond Premru, Daniel Speer. *The Trombones of the Saint Louis Symphony*. Recorded by The Trombones of the Saint Louis Symphony, 2010. Published by the ensemble, CD. <https://music.apple.com/us/album/4-1/367130327>.
- Dubois, Jean, Edvard Grieg, George Frideric Handel, Jimmy van Heusen, Alfred Hornoff, Clement Jannequin, Raymond Premru, Walter Ross, Jules Selmer-Colley. *High Anxiety Bones*. Recorded by Steven Witser, Edward Zadronzny, Paul Ferguson, and Raymond Premru, 1999/2006. Albany Records, CD. <https://music.apple.com/us/album/high-anxiety-bones/199389434>.
- Ewazen, Eric, Dan Jenkins, Brian Lynn, Simon Willis. *Four4Four*. Recorded by Bones Apart, 2009. Published by the ensemble, CD. <https://open.spotify.com/album/1WBMkthVWcknQcAiaaPJXr>.
- Haydn, Franz Joseph, Claire Haas, Donald Miller, Henry Purcell, Rocky J. Reuter, Jared Spears, Leo Weiner, Tony Zilincik, Thomas W. Zugger. *Ohio Music Education Association 2006 Capital University Trombone Choir*. Recorded by the Capital University Trombone Choir and Dr. Thomas W. Zugger, 2006/2011. Soundwaves Recordings, CD. <https://music.apple.com/us/album/ohio-music-education-association-2006-capital-university/442091936>.
- Nelhybel, Vaclav. *Counterpoint: Trombone Chamber Music of Vaclav Nelhybel*. Recorded by Nathan Siler and the Elysian Trombone Consort, 2020. Nathan Siler, CD. <https://music.apple.com/us/album/counterpoint-trombone-chamber-music-of-vaclav-nelhybel/1551923151>.
- Rabe, Folke and Jan Bark. *Argh!*. Recorded by the artists, 2006. Kning Disk, CD. <https://open.spotify.com/album/4qkavdrf424UvM8K8PMW7T>.

Lectures, Liner Notes, and Videos

“About the Composers.” Liner notes for *The Return of the Alto*. Recorded by Ronald Barron, 2004. Boston Brass Series BB-10008CD, CD.

“About the Music.” Liner notes for *The Return of the Alto*. Recorded by Ronald Barron, 2004. Boston Brass Series BB-10008CD, CD.

Burton, Thierry. “Cinq Pieces a Quatre: Roger Boutry.” Daniel Speer Trombone Consort. April 28, 2019. Musical Performance, 10:00.
<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Tg8V6rzZlBE>.

Charles Bradley II: Memories & Commemorations. “Trombonissimo – The Trombonists of the State Philharmonic of Rhineland-Palatinate (1991).” March 25, 2005. Trombone Quartet Album, 47:44. <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=p5KlhVBHdoo&t=741s>.

Cohen, Jane. “Suite of Lieder by Schubert arr. Rowell (Trombone Ensemble).” Leon High School Trombone Choir. April 17, 2022. Musical Performance, 6:08.
https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=VfA2Ub_ziGk.

Coscyl Brass. “Pange Lingua Bruckner – Cuarteto de Trombones.” Cuarteto de Trombones del Coscyl. February 14, 2014. Musical Performance, 2:09.
<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=yrdYB3iDPDs>.

CPMusicLibrary. “Quartet ’74 for brass quartet by Malcolm Forsyth.” December 15, 2018. Musical Performance, 11:24. <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=b2gvX9STL6g>.

Forcesinmotion. “‘Suite for Trombones’ by Peter Atherton.” Cincinnati Trombone Quartet. November 11, 2024. Musical Performance, 6:53.
<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=sfB9Lpunwko>.

Horn, Carson. “The damnation of Faust Trombone Quartet.” Spring Hill High School Trombone Quartet. June 3, 2019. Musical Performance, 8:50.
<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=beDDsVH6gO0>.

Lang, William. “Folke Rabe’s Bolos: A Reading and Performing Guide.” May 23, 2025. Educational Video, 12:59. <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=trvdg-6S1UY&t=1s>.

Mugan, Nathan. “Suite for Trombones (Carrol M. Butts) – MG Johnson High School Trombone Quartet.” May 27, 2024. Musical Performance, 3:45.
<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=vDNKOw04T94>.

Nedbal, Martin. “The French Symphony.” Musicology 767: History of the Symphony. Class lecture at the University of Kansas, Lawrence, KS, April 2, 2001.

“Ralph Sauer.” Liner notes for *Orchestral Excerpts for Trombone*. Recorded by Ralph Sauer, 1993. Summit Records, DCD143, CD.

Singapore National Youth Orchestra. “Mendelssohn (arr. Smith and Wittmann): Equale No. 3 – SNYO Digital Concert 2022.” August 19, 2022. Musical Performance, 5:45. <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=agw3cXd1RcQ>.

Skoczylas, Marlena. “Bolos – Trombone Quartet by F. Rabe & Jan Bark.” Marlena Skoczylas, Lucas Tiefenthaler, Carlos Ferrar Romero, and Kristine Solli Oppegaard. May 28, 2019. Musical Performance, 9:02. <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=zV9JoayNBiM>.

Stellenbosch University Music. “SU Trombone Ensemble performs Now is the Month of Maying – Thomas Morley.” Stellenbosch University Trombone Ensemble and Nicholas Green. November 30, 2021. Musical Performance, 1:56. <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=-h3bwUHaeO4>.

Trombone Master. “Valse de Concert: V. Blazhevich.” February 8, 2024. Musical Performance, 4:28. <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=vbYPUSFWX20>.

Appendix A: Online Database

The following link: https://docs.google.com/spreadsheets/d/10-K4t_dEMk4WMQxMNqQSzY5BdUoToPn9JqGUxqelNyk/edit?usp=sharing, provides access to an online database that includes the demographic information (title, composer, arranger/editor, publisher, year, number of pedagogical sources, number of lists/forums, number of state lists, total number of sources, difficulty level, number of movements, duration, overall lowest pitch, overall highest pitch, bass trombone requirement, small-bore tenor recommendation, alto trombone requirement, C clefs, mutes, and extended techniques) for all sixty trombone quartets. I created this resource so all the information could be in one location rather than across twenty appendices. Pieces are listed in alphabetical order by composer last name.